





PLEASE HANDLE
WITH CARE

University of
Connecticut Libraries



hbl, stx

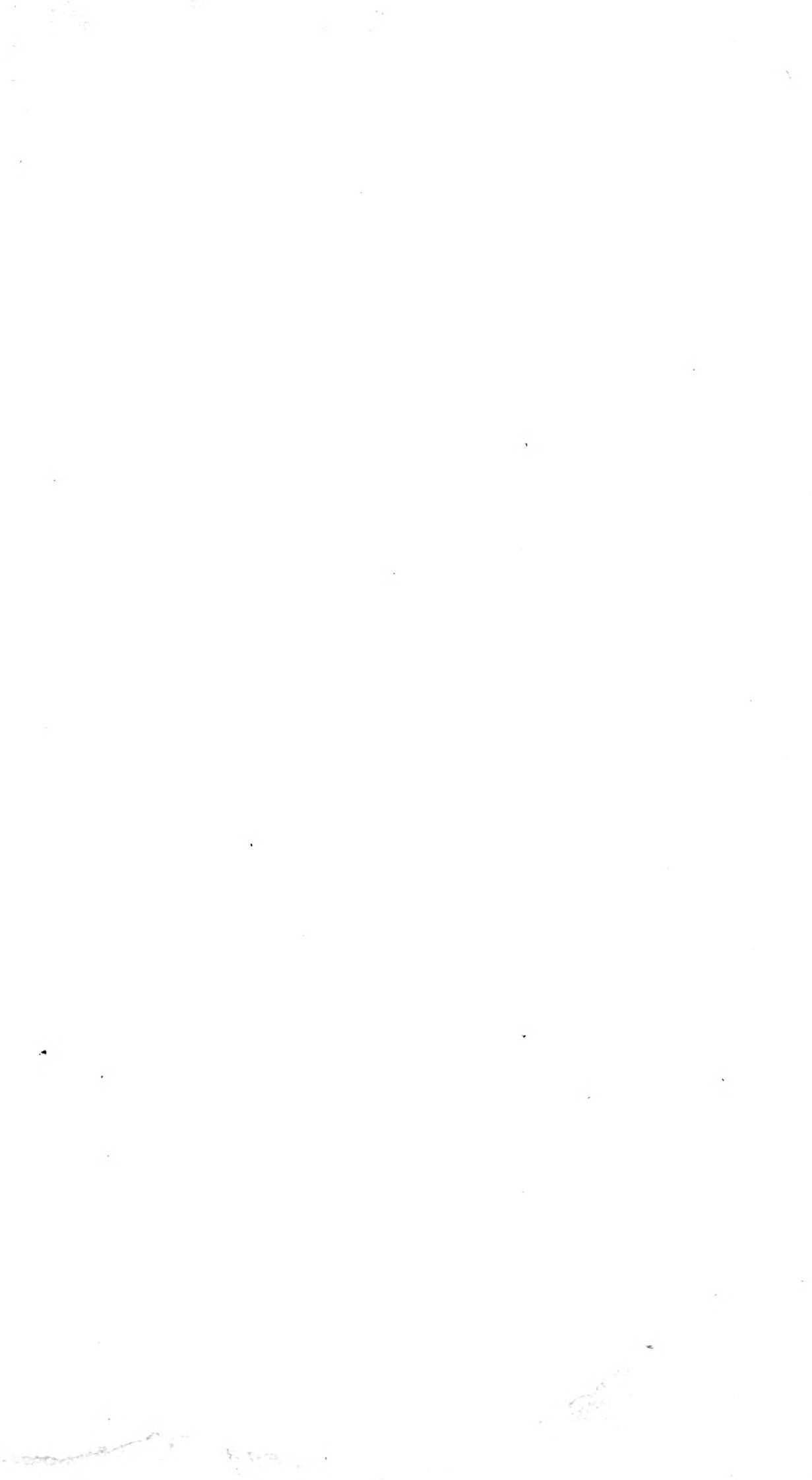


Swiss family Robinson; or, The adv



3 9153 00610155 6

PZ/7/W996/S





“He tied the monkey with a cord to Turk’s back, leading the dog by another cord, as he was very rebellious at first.”



THE

SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON ;

OR,

ADVENTURES IN A DESERT ISLAND.

A NEW EDITION,

WITH TEN ILLUSTRATIONS BY JOHN GILBERT



NEW YORK :
THE WORLD PUBLISHING HOUSE,
21 ASTOR PLACE AND 142 EIGHTH ST.

1877.

PZ

7

W996

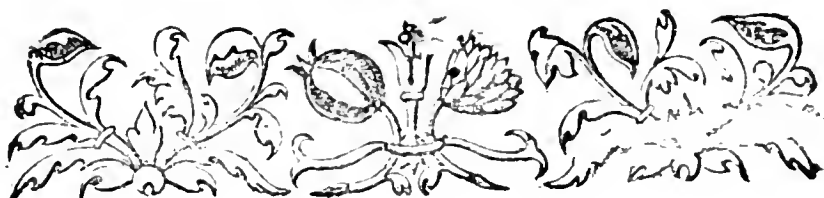
S

7/26/67



CONTENTS.

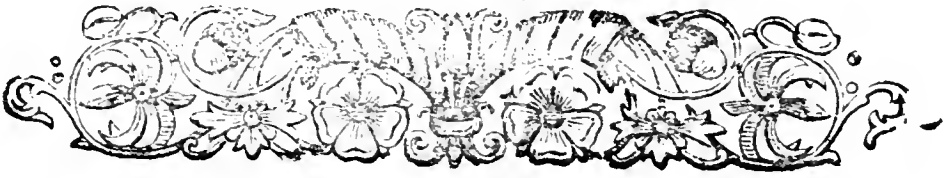
CHAP.	Page
1. A Shipwreck, and Preparations for Deliverance.	11
2. A Landing, and consequent Occupations	20
3. Voyage of Discovery.	48
4. Return from the Voyage of Discovery ;—a Nocturnal Alarm.	82
5. Return to the Wreck.	109
6. A Troop of Animals in Cork Jackets.	127
7. Second Journey of Discovery, performed by the Mother of the Family.	145
8. Construction of a Bridge.	167
9. Change of Abode.	186
10. Construction of a Ladder.	207
11. The Settling in the Giant Tree	223
12. The Sabbath and the Parable.	230
13. Conversation, a Walk, and Important Discoveries	254
14. Continuation of the preceding Chapter, and more Discoveries.	267
15. Hopes of a Sledge ;—some Short Lessons in Useful Things.	284
16. A Bathing, a Fishing, the Jumping Hare, and a Masquerade	290
17. More Stores from the Wreck.	305
18. The Tortoise Harnessed.	312
19. Another Trip to the Wreck.	324
20. The Cracker and the Pinnacle.	339



CHAP.	PAGE
21. Gymnastic Exercises ;—Various Discoveries ;— Singular Animals, &c.....	361
22. Excursion into Unknown Tracts.....	384
23. Useful Occupations and Labors ;—Embellish- ments ;—a Painful but Natural Sentiment..	404
24. A new Domain ;—the Troop of Buffalos ;—the Vanquished Hero.....	418
25. The Ass returns with a Companion ;—Flax ;— Preparing for Winter.....	419
26. The Grotto ;—Herring Fishery.....	426
27. A new Establishment ;—The Cave ;—Winter in the Grotto.....	434
Postscript by the Editor.....	442

CONTINUATION OF THE JOURNAL.

28. The Adventurer ;—my Wife's Accident ;—the Storm and its Results.....	443
29. Search for the Adventurer ;—the Franciade, Fritzia, and Jackia ;—the Blacksmith.....	455
30. The Ernestine Grotto ;—the Mother's Holiday ; —Mills ;—an Exploration.....	470
31. The Mother Lost and Found ;—Jack ;—the Mis- sionary and his Flock ;—Madame Hirtel and her Family.....	498
Conclusion.....	526
Postscript Two Years After.....	531



THE
SWISS FAMILY ROBINSON.

CHAPTER I.

A Shipwreck, and Preparations for Deliverance.

. . . . ALREADY the tempest had continued six days; on the seventh its fury seemed still increasing; and the morning dawned upon us without a prospect of hope, for we had wandered so far from the right track, and were so forcibly driven toward the southeast, that none on board knew where we were. The ship's company were exhausted by labor and watching, and the courage which had sustained them, was now sinking. The shivered masts had been cast into the sea; several leaks appeared, and the ship began to fill. The sailors forebore from swearing; many were at prayer on their knees, while others



offered miracles of future piety and goodness, as the condition of their release from danger. "My beloved children," said I to my four boys, who clung to me in their fright, "God can save us, for nothing is impossible to him. We must however hold ourselves resigned, and instead of murmuring at his decree, rely that what he sees fit to do is best, and that should he call us from this earthly scene, we shall be near him in heaven, and united through eternity. Death may be well supported when it does not separate those who love."

My excellent wife wiped the tears which were falling on her cheeks, and from this moment became more tranquil: she encouraged the youngest children, who were leaning on her knees; while I, who owed them an example of firmness, was scarcely able to resist my grief at the thought of what would most likely be the fate of beings so tenderly beloved. We all fell on our knees, and supplicated the God of Mercy to protect us; and the emotion and fervor of the innocent creatures, are a convincing proof that, even in childhood, devotion may be felt and under-



stood, and that tranquillity and consolation, its natural effects, may at that season be no less certainly experienced. Fritz, my eldest son, implored in a loud voice, that God would deign to save his dear parents and his brothers, generously unmindful of himself: the boys rose from their posture with a state of mind so improved, that they seemed forgetful of the impending danger. I myself began to feel my hopes increase as I beheld the affecting group. Heaven will surely have pity on them, thought I, and will save their parents to guard their tender years!

At this moment a cry of "Land, Land!" was heard through the roaring of the waves, and instantly the vessel struck against a rock with so violent a motion as to drive every one from his place; a tremendous cracking succeeded, as if the ship was going to pieces; the sea rushed in, in all directions; we perceived that the vessel had grounded, and could not long hold together. The captain called out that all was lost, and bade the men lose not a moment in putting out the boats. The sounds fell on my heart like a thrust from a dagger; "We are lost!" I exclaimed; and



the children broke out into piercing cries. I then recollected myself, and addressing them again, exhorted them to courage, by observing that the water had not yet reached us, that the ship was near land, and that Providence would assist the brave. "Keep where you are," added I, "while I go and examine what is best to be done."

I now went on the deck. A wave instantly threw me down, and wetted me to the skin; another followed, and then another. I sustained myself as steadily as I could; and looking around, a scene of terrific and complete disaster met my eyes; the ship was shattered in all directions, and on one side there was a complete breach. The ship's company crowded into the boats till they could contain not one man more, and the last who entered, were now cutting the ropes to move off. I called to them with almost frantic entreaties to stop and receive us also, but in vain; for the roaring of the sea prevented my being heard, and the waves, which rose to the height of mountains, would have made it impossible to return. All hope from this source was over, for while I spoke, the boats, and all



they contained, were driving out of sight. My best consolation now was to observe, that the slanting position the ship had taken, would afford us present protection from the water; and that the stern, under which was the cabin that inclosed all that was dear to me on earth, had been driven upwards between two rocks, and seemed immovably fixed. At the same time, in the distance southward, I descried through clouds and rain several nooks of land, which, though rude and savage in appearance, were the objects of every hope I could form in this distressing moment.

Sunk and desolate from the loss of all chance of human aid, it was yet my duty to appear serene before my family: "Courage, dear ones," cried I, on entering their cabin, "let us not desert ourselves: I will not conceal from you that the ship is aground; but we are at least in greater safety than if she were beating upon the rocks: our cabin is above water; and should the sea be more calm to-morrow, we may yet find means to reach the land in safety."

What I had just said, appeased their fears; for my family had the habit of confiding in



my assurances. They now began to feel the advantage of the ship's remaining still; for its motion had been most distressing, by jostling them one against another, or whatever happened to be nearest. My wife, however, more accustomed than the children to read my inmost thoughts, perceived the anxiety which devoured me. I made her a sign which conveyed an idea of the hopelessness of our situation, and I had the consolation to see that she was resolved to support the trial with resignation: "Let us take some nourishment," said she, "our courage will strengthen with our bodies; we shall perhaps need this comfort to support a long and melancholy night."

Soon after, night set in: the fury of the tempest had not abated; the planks and beams of the vessel separated in many parts with a horrible crash. We thought of the boats, and feared that all they contained must have sunk under the foaming surge.

My wife had prepared a slender meal, and the four boys partook of it with an appetite to which their parents were strangers. They went to bed, and exhausted by fatigue, soon

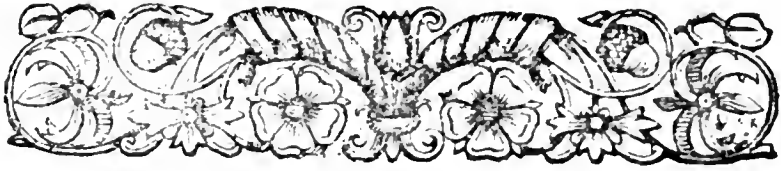


were snoring soundly. Fritz, the eldest, sat up with us: "I have been thinking," said he, after a long silence, "how it may be possible to save ourselves. If we had some bladders or cork-jackets for my mother and my brothers, you and I, father, would soon contrive to swim to land."

"That is a good thought," said I: "we will see what can be done."

Fritz and I looked about for some small empty firkins: these we tied two and two together with handkerchiefs or towels, leaving about a foot distance between them, and fastened them as swimming-jackets under the arms of each child, my wife at the same time preparing one for herself. We provided ourselves with knives, some string, some turfs, and other necessaries which could be put into the pocket, proceeding upon the hope, that if the ship went to pieces in the night, we should either be able to swim to land, or be driven thither by the waves.

Fritz, who had been up all night, and was fatigued with his laborious occupations, now lay down near his brothers, and was soon asleep; but their mother and I, too anxious



to close our eyes, kept watch, listening to every sound that seemed to threaten a further change in our situation. We passed this awful night in prayer, in agonizing apprehensions, and in forming various resolutions as to what we should next attempt. We hailed with joy the first gleam of light which shot through a small opening of the window. The raging of the winds had begun to abate, the sky was become serene, and hope throbbed in my bosom, as I beheld the sun already tinging the horizon. Thus revived, I summoned my wife and the boys to the deck, to partake of the scene. The youngest children, half forgetful of the past, asked with surprise why we were there alone, and what had become of the ship's company? I led them to the recollection of our misfortune, and then added: "Dearest children, a Being more powerful than man has helped us, and will, no doubt, continue to help us, if we do not abandon ourselves to a fruitless despair. Observe, our companions, in whom we had so much confidence, have deserted us, and that Divine Providence, in its goodness, has given us protection! But, my dear ones, let us show



ourselves willing in our exertions, and thus deserve support from Heaven. Let us not forget this useful maxim, and let each labor according to his strength."

Fritz advised that we should all throw ourselves into the sea, while it was calm, and swim to land.—“Ah! that may be well enough for you,” said Ernest, “for you can swim; but we others should soon be drowned. Would it not be better to make a float of rafts, and get to land altogether upon it?”


“Vastly well,” answered I, “if we had the means for contriving such a float, and if, after all, it were not a dangerous sort of conveyance. But come, my boys, look each of you about the ship, and see what can be done to enable us to reach the land.”

They now all sprang from me with eager looks, to do as I desired. I, on my part, lost no time in examining what we had to depend upon as to provisions and fresh water. My wife and the youngest boy visited the animals, whom they found in a pitiable condition, nearly perishing with hunger and thirst. Fritz repaired to the ammunition room; Ernest to the carpenter's cabin, and Jack to the apart-



ment of the captain; but scarcely had he opened the door, when two large dogs sprang upon him, and saluted him with such rude affection, that he roared for assistance, as if they had been killing him. Hunger, however, had rendered the poor creatures so gentle, that they licked his hands and face, uttering all the time a low sort of moan, and continuing their caresses till he was almost suffocated. Poor Jack exerted all his strength in blows to drive them away; at last he began to understand, and to sympathize in their joyful movements, and put himself upon another footing: he got upon his legs; and gently taking the largest dog by the ears, sprang upon his back, and with great gravity presented himself thus mounted before me, as I came out of the ship's hold. I could not refrain from laughing, and I praised his courage: but I added a little exhortation to be cautious, and not go too far with animals of this species, who, in a state of hunger, might be dangerous.

By and by my little company were again assembled round me, and each boasted of what he had to contribute. Fritz had two



fowling-pieces, some powder, and small shot, contained in horn flasks, and some bullets in bags.

Ernest produced his hat filled with nails, and held in his hands a hatchet and a hammer; in addition, a pair of pincers, a pair of large scissors, and an auger, peeped out at his pocket-hole.

Even the little Francis carried under his arm a box of no very small size, from which he eagerly produced what he called some little sharp-pointed hooks. His brothers smiled scornfully. "Vastly well, gentlemen," said I; "but let me tell you that the youngest has brought the most valuable prize: and this is often the case in the world; the person who least courts the smiles of Fortune, and in the calm of his heart is scarcely conscious of her existence, is often he to whom she most readily presents herself. These little sharp-pointed hooks, as Francis calls them, are fishing-hooks, and will probably be of more use in preserving our lives, than all we may find besides in the ship. In justice, however, I must confess, that what Fritz and Ernest have contributed, will also afford essential service."



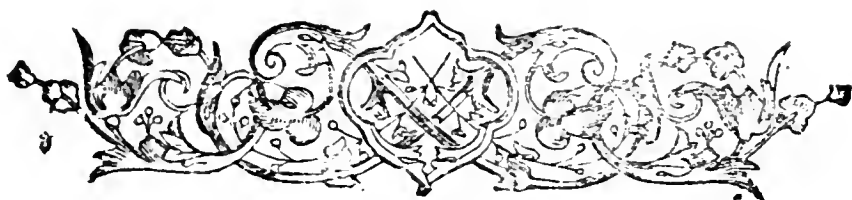
“I, for my part,” said my wife, “have brought nothing; but I have some tidings to communicate which I hope will secure my welcome: I have found on board, a cow and an ass, two goats, six sheep, and a sow pig with young: I have just supplied them with food and water, and I reckon on being able to preserve their lives.”

“All this is admirable,” said I to my young laborers; “and there is only master Jack, who, instead of thinking of something useful, has done us the favor to present us two personages, who, no doubt, will be principally distinguished by being willing to eat more than we shall have to give them.”

“Ah! replied Jack, “but if we can once get to land, you will see that they will assist us in hunting and shooting.”

“True enough,” said I, “but be so good as to tell us how we are to get to land, and whether you have contrived the means?”

“I am sure it cannot be very difficult,” said Jack, with an arch motion of his head. “Look here at these large tubs. Why cannot each of us get into one of them, and float to the land? I remember I succeeded very



well in this manner on the water, when I was visiting my godfather at S***."

"Every one's thought is good for something," cried I, "and I begin to believe that what Jack has suggested is worth a trial: quick! then, boy, give me the saw, the auger, and some nails; we will see what is to be done." I recollected having seen some empty casks in the ship's hold: we went down, and found them floating in the water which had got into the vessel; it cost us but little trouble to hoist them up, and place them on the lower deck, which was at this time scarcely above water. We saw with joy, that they were all sound, well guarded by iron hoops, and in every respect in good condition; they were exactly suited for the object; and, with the assistance of my sons, I instantly began to saw them in two. In a short time I had produced eight tubs, of equal size, and of the proper height. We now allowed ourselves some refreshment of wine and biscuit. I viewed with delight my eight little tubs, ranged in a line. I was surprised to see that my wife did not partake our eagerness; she sighed deeply as she looked at them: "Never,



never," cried she, "can I venture to get into one of these."

"Do not decide so hastily, my dear," said I: "my plan is not yet complete; and you will see presently, that it is more worthy of our confidence than this shattered vessel, which cannot move from its place."

I then sought for a long pliant plank, and placed my eight tubs upon it, leaving a piece at each end, reaching beyond the tubs; which, bent upward, would present an outline like the keel of a vessel: we next nailed all the tubs to the plank, and then the tubs to each other, as they stood, side by side, to make them the firmer, and afterwards two other planks, of the same length as the first, on each side of the tubs. When all this was finished, we found we had produced a kind of narrow boat, divided into eight compartments, which I had no doubt would be able to perform a short course, in calm water.

But now we discovered that the machine we had contrived was so heavy, that with the strength of all united, we were not able to move it an inch from its place. I bade Fritz fetch me a crow, who soon returned with it:

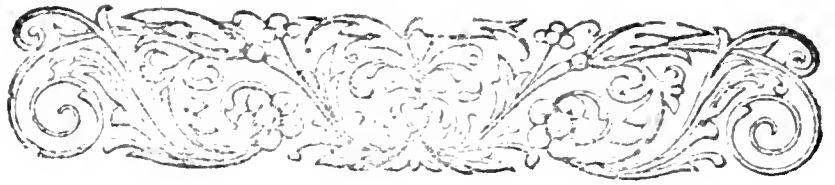


in the meanwhile, I sawed a thick round pole into several pieces, to make some rollers. I then, with the crow, easily raised the foremost part of my machine, while Fritz placed one of the rollers under it.

“How astonishing,” cried Ernest, “that this engine, which is smaller than any of us, can do more than our united strength was able to effect! I wish I could know how it is constructed.”

I explained to him as well as I could, the power of Archimedes’s lever, with which he said he could move the world, if you would give him a point from which his mechanism might act, and promised to explain the nature of the operation of the crow when we should be safe on land.

One of the points of my system of education for my sons was, to awaken their curiosity by interesting observations, to leave time for the activity of the imagination, and then to correct any error they might fall into. I contented myself now, however, with this general remark, that God sufficiently compensated the natural weakness of man by the gifts of reason, of invention, and the



adroitness of the hands; and that human meditation and skill had produced a science, called mechanics, the object of which was, to teach us how to make our own natural strength act to an incredible distance, and with extraordinary force, by the intervention of instruments.

Jack here remarked, that the action of the crow was very slow.

“Better slow than never, Jack,” replied I. “Experience has ever taught, and mechanical observations have established as a principle, that what is gained in speed, is lost in strength: the purpose of the crow is not to enable us to raise any thing rapidly, but to raise what is exceedingly heavy; and the heavier the thing we would move, the slower is the mechanical operation. But are you aware what we have at our command, to compensate this slowness?” •

“Yes, it is turning the handle quicker?”

“Your guess is wrong; that would be no compensation; the true remedy, my boy, is to call in the assistance of patience and reason: with the aid of these two fairy powers, I am in hopes to set my machine afloat.” As



I said this, I tied a long cord to its stern, and the other end of it to one of the timbers of the ship, which appeared to be still firm, so that the cord being left loose, would serve to guide and restrain it when launched. We now put a second and a third roller under, and applying the crow, to our great joy our machine descended into the water with such a velocity, that if the rope had not been well fastened, it would have gone far out to sea. But now a new difficulty presented itself: the boat leaned so much on one side, that the boys all exclaimed they could not venture to get into it. I was for some moments in the most painful perplexity; but it suddenly occurred to me, that ballast only was wanting to set it straight. I drew it near, and threw all the useless things I could find into the tubs, so as to make weight on the light side: by degrees the machine became quite straight and firm in the water, seeming to invite us to take refuge in its protection. All now would get into the tubs, and the boys began to dispute which should be first. I drew them back, and seeking a remedy for this kind of obstacle, I recollected that savage nations



make use of a paddle for preventing their canoes from upsetting. I once more set to work, to make one of these.

I took two poles of equal length, upon which the sails of the vessel had been stretched, and having descended into the machine, fixed one of them at the head, and the other at the stern, in such a manner as to enable us to turn them at pleasure to right or left, as should best answer the purpose of guiding and putting it out to sea. I stuck the end of each pole, or paddle, into the bung-hole of an empty brandy-keg, which served to keep the paddles steady, and to prevent any interruption in the management of our future enterprise.

There remained nothing more to do, but to find in what way I could clear out from the incumbrance of the wreck. I got into the first tub, and steered the head of the machine, so as to make it enter the cleft in the ship's side, where it could remain quiet. I then remounted the vessel, and sometimes with the saw, and sometimes with the hatchet, I cleared away to right and left, every thing that could obstruct our passage; and that being



effected, we next secured some oars for the voyage we resolved on attempting.

We had spent the day in laborious exertions; it was already late; and as it would not have been possible to reach the land that evening, we were obliged to pass a second night in the wrecked vessel, which at every instant, threatened to fall to pieces. We next refreshed ourselves by a regular meal; for, during the day's work, we had scarcely allowed ourselves to take a bit of bread, or a glass of wine. Being now in a more tranquil and unapprehensive state of mind than the day before, we all abandoned ourselves to sleep; not, however, till I had used the precaution of tying the swimming apparatus round my three youngest boys and my wife, in case the storm should again come on. I also advised my wife to dress herself in the clothes of one of the sailors, which were so much more convenient for swimming, or any other exertions she might be compelled to engage in. She consented, but not without reluctance, and left us to look for some that might best suit her size. In a quarter of an hour she returned, dressed in the clothes of



a young man who had served as volunteer on board the ship. She could not conceal the timid awkwardness so natural to her sex in such a situation: but I soon found means to reconcile her to the change, by representing the many advantages it gave her, till at length she joined in the merriment her dress occasioned, and one and all crept into our separate hammocks, where a delicious repose prepared us for the renewal of our labors.

CHAPTER II.

A Landing, and consequent Occupations.

BY break of day we were all awake and alert, for hope as well as grief is unfriendly to lengthened slumbers. When we had finished our morning prayer, I said, "We now, my best beloved, with the assistance of Heaven, must enter upon the work of our deliverance. The first thing to be done, is to give to each poor animal on board a hearty meal; we will



then put food enough before them for several days; we cannot take them with us; but we will hope it may be possible, if our voyage succeeds, to return and fetch them. Are you now all ready? Bring together whatever is absolutely necessary for our wants. It is my wish that our first cargo should consist of a barrel of gunpowder, three fowling-pieces, and three carbines, with as much small shot and lead, and as many bullets as our boat will carry; two pair of pocket-pistols, and one of large ones, not forgetting a mould to cast balls in; each of the boys, and their mother also, should have a bag to carry game in; you will find plenty of these in the cabins of the officers." — We added a chest containing cakes of portable soup, another full of hard biscuits, an iron pot, a fishing-rod, a chest of nails, and another of different utensils, such as hammers, saws, pincers, hatchets, augers, &c., and lastly, some sail-cloth to make a tent. Indeed, the boys brought so many things, that we were obliged to reject some of them, though I had already exchanged the worthless ballast for articles of use in the question of our subsistence.



When all was ready, we stepped bravely each into a tub. At the moment of our departure the cocks and hens began to cluck, as if conscious that we had deserted them, yet were willing to bid us a sorrowful adieu. This suggested to me the idea of taking the geese, ducks, fowls, and pigeons with us; observing to my wife, that if we could not find means to feed them, at least they would feed us.

We accordingly executed this plan. We put ten hens and an old and a young cock into one of the tubs, and covered it with planks; we set the rest of the poultry at liberty, in the hope that instinct would direct them towards the land, the geese and the ducks by water, and the pigeons by the air.

We were waiting for my wife, who had the care of this last part of our embarkation, when she joined us loaded with a large bag, which she threw into the tub that already contained her youngest son. I imagined that she intended it for him to sit upon, or perhaps to confine him so as to prevent his being tossed from side to side. I therefore asked no questions concerning it. The order of our departure was as follows:



In the first tub, at the boat's head, my wife, the most tender and exemplary of her sex, placed herself.

In the second, our little Francis, a lovely boy, six years old, remarkable for the sweetest and happiest temper, and for his affection to his parents.

In the third, Fritz, our eldest boy, between fourteen and fifteen years of age, a handsome curl-pated youth, full of intelligence and vivacity.

In the fourth was the barrel of gunpowder, with the cocks and hens and the sail-cloth.

In the fifth, the provisions of every kind.

In the sixth, our third son Jack, a light-hearted, enterprising, audacious, generous lad, about ten years old.

In the seventh, our second son Ernest, a boy of twelve years old, of a rational, reflecting temper, well informed for his age, but somewhat disposed to indolence and the pleasures of the senses.

In the eighth, a father, to whose paternal care the task of guiding the machine for the safety of his beloved family was intrusted. Each of us had useful implements within



reach; the hand of each held an oar, and near each was a swimming apparatus in readiness for what might happen. The tide was already at half its height when we left the ship, and I had counted on this circumstance as favorable to our want of strength. We held the two paddles longways, and thus we passed without accident through the cleft of the vessel into the sea. The boys devoured with their eyes the blue land they saw at a distance. We rowed with all our strength, but long in vain, to reach it; the boat only turned round and round: at length I had the good fortune to steer in such a way that it proceeded in a straight line. The two dogs perceiving we had abandoned them, plunged into the sea and swam to the boat; they were too large for us to think of giving them admittance, and I dreaded lest they should jump in and upset us. Turk was an English dog, and Flora a bitch of the Danish breed. I was in great uneasiness on their account, for I feared it would not be possible for them to swim so far. The dogs, however, managed the affair with perfect intelligence. When fatigued, they rested their fore-paws on one



of the paddles, and thus with little effort proceeded.

Jack was disposed to refuse them this accommodation, but he soon yielded to my argument, that it was cruel and unwise to neglect creatures thrown on our protection, and who indeed might hereafter protect us in their turn, by guarding us from harm, and assisting in our pursuit of animals for food. "Besides," added I, "God has given the dog to man to be his faithful companion and friend."

Our voyage proceeded securely, though slowly; but the nearer we approached the land, the more gloomy and unpromising its aspect appeared. The coast was clothed with barren rocks, which seemed to offer nothing but hunger and distress. The sea was calm; the waves, gently agitated, washed the shore, and the sky was serene; in every direction we perceived casks, bales, chests, and other vestiges of shipwrecks, floating round us. In the hope of obtaining some good provisions, I determined on endeavoring to secure some of the casks. I bade Fritz have a rope, a hammer, and some nails ready, and to try



to sieze them as we passed. He succeeded in laying hold of two, and in such a way that we could draw them after us to the shore. Now that we were close on land, its rude outline was much softened; the rocks no longer appeared one undivided chain; Fritz with his hawk's eye already descried some trees, and exclaimed that they were palm-trees. Ernest expressed his joy that he should now get much larger and better cocoa nuts than those of Europe. I, for my part, was venting audibly my regret, that I had not thought of bringing a telescope that I knew was in the captain's cabin, when Jack drew a small one from his pocket, and with a look of triumph presented it to me.

The acquisition of the telescope was of great importance; for with its aid I was able to make the necessary observations, and was more sure of the route I ought to take. On applying it to my eye, I remarked that the shore before us had a desert and savage aspect, but that towards the left the scene was more agreeable; but when I attempted to steer in that direction, a current carried me irresistibly towards the coast that was rocky



and barren. By and by we perceived a little opening between the rocks, near the mouth of a creek, towards which all our geese and ducks betook themselves; and I, relying on their sagacity, followed in the same course. This opening formed a little bay; the water was tranquil, and neither too deep nor too shallow to receive our boat. I entered it, and cautiously put on shore on a spot where the coast was about the same height above the water as our tubs, and where, at the same time, there was a quantity sufficient to keep us afloat. The shore extended inland in something of the form of an isosceles triangle, the upper angle of which terminated among the rocks, while the margin of the sea formed the basis.

All that had life in the boat jumped eagerly on land. Even little Francis who had been wedged in his tub like a potted herring, now got up and sprang forward; but, with all his efforts, he could not succeed without his mother's help. The dogs, who had swam on shore, received us as if appointed to do the honors of the place, jumping round us with every demonstration of joy: the geese kept



up a loud cackling, to which the ducks, from their broad yellow beaks, contributed a perpetual thorough-bass: the cocks and hens, which we had already set at liberty, clucked: the boys chattering all at once, produced altogether an overpowering confusion of sounds: to this was added the disagreeable scream of some penguins and flamingos, which we now perceived, some flying over our heads, others sitting on the points of the rocks at the entrance of the bay. By and by the notes of the latter had the ascendant, from their numbers; and our annoyance was increased by a comparison we could not avoid making, between the sounds they uttered, and the harmony of the feathered musicians of our own country. I had however one advantage in perspective;—it was that, should we hereafter be short of food, these very birds might serve for our subsistence.

The first thing we did on finding ourselves safe on *terra firma*, was to fall on our knees, and return thanks to the Supreme Being who had preserved our lives, and to recommend ourselves with entire resignation to the care of his paternal kindness.



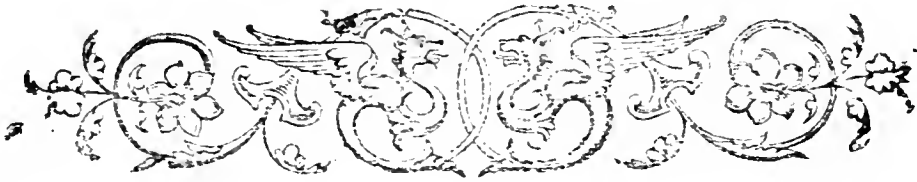
We next employed our whole attention in unloading the boat. Oh! how rich we thought ourselves in the little we had been able to rescue from the merciless abyss of waters! We looked about for a convenient place to set up a tent under the shade of the rocks; and having all consulted and agreed upon a place, we set to work. We drove one of our poles firmly into a fissure of the rock; this rested upon another pole, which was driven perpendicularly into the ground, and formed the ridge of our tent. A frame for a dwelling was thus made secure. We next threw some sail-cloth over the ridge, and stretching it to a convenient distance on each side, fastened its extremities to the ground with stakes. Lastly, I fixed some tenter-hooks along the edge of one side of the sail-cloth in front, that we might be able to enclose the entrance during night, by hooking in the opposite edge. The chest of provisions and other heavy matters we had left on the shore. The next thing was to desire my sons to look about for grass and moss, to be spread and dried in the sun, to serve us for beds. During this occupation, in which even the little



Francis could take a share, I erected near the tent a kind of little kitchen. A few flat stones, I found in the bed of a fresh-water river, served for a hearth. I got a quantity of dry branches; with the largest I made a small enclosure round it; and with the little twigs, added to some of our turf, I made a brisk cheering fire. We put some of the soup-cakes, with water, into our iron pot, and placed it over the flame; and my wife, with her little Francis for a scullion, took charge of preparing the dinner.

In the mean while Fritz had been reloading the guns, with one of which he had wandered along the side of the river. He had proposed to Ernest to accompany him; but Ernest replied, that he did not like a rough, stony walk, and that he should go to the sea shore. Jack took the road towards a chain of rocks which jutted out into the sea, with the intention of gathering some of the muscles which grew upon them.

My own occupation was now an endeavor to draw the two floating casks on shore, but in which I could not succeed; for our place of landing, though convenient enough for our



machine, was too steep for the casks. While I was looking about to find a more favorable spot, I heard loud cries proceeding from a short distance, and recognized the voice of my son Jack. I snatched my hatchet, and ran anxiously to his assistance. I soon perceived him up to his knees in water in a shallow, and that a large sea lobster had fastened its claws in his leg. The poor boy screamed pitiably, and made useless efforts to disengage himself. I jumped instantly into the water; and the enemy was no sooner sensible of my approach, than he let go his hold, and would have scampered out to sea, but that I indulged the fancy of a little malice against him for the alarm he had caused us. I turned quickly upon him, and took him up by the body and carried him off, followed by Jack, who shouted our triumph all the way. He begged me at last to let him hold the animal in his own hand, that he might himself present so fine a booty to his mother. Accordingly, having observed how I held it to avoid the gripe, he laid his own hand upon it in exactly the same manner; but scarcely had he grasped it, than he received a violent



blow on the face from the lobster's tail, which made him loose his hold, and the animal fell to the ground. Jack again began to bawl out, while I could not refrain from laughing heartily. In his rage he took up a stone and killed the lobster with a single blow. I was a little vexed at this conclusion to the scene. "This is what we call killing an enemy when he is unable to defend himself, Jack; it was wrong to revenge an injury while we are in a state of anger; the lobster, it is true, had given you a bite; but then you, on your part, would have eaten the lobster. So the game was at least equal. Another time, I advise you to be both more prudent and more merciful." "But pray, father, let me carry it to my mother," said Jack, fearless now of further warfare; and accordingly he carried it to the kitchen, triumphantly exclaiming, "Mother, mother, a sea lobster!—Ernest, a sea lobster! Where is Fritz? Where is Fritz? Take care, Francis, he will bite you." In a moment all were round him to examine the wonderful creature, and all proclaimed their astonishment at his enormous size, while they observed that its form



"I found him up to the knees in a shallow pool, with a large lobster holding his leg in its sharp claws."





was precisely that of the common lobster so much in use in Europe.

“Yes, yes,” said Jack, holding up one of the claws; “you may well wonder at his size: this was the frightful claw which seized my leg, and if I had not had on my thick sea pantaloons, he would have bit it through and through; but I have taught him what it is to attack *me*; I have paid him well.”

“Oh, oh! Mr. Boaster,” cried I, “you give a pretty account of the matter. Now *mine* would be, that if I had not been near, the lobster would have shown you another sort of game; for the slap he gave you in the face compelled you, I think, to let go your hold. And it is well it should be thus; for he fought with the arms with which nature had supplied him, but you had recourse to a great stone for your defense. Believe me, Jack, you have no great reason to boast of the adventure.”

Ernest, ever prompted by his savory tooth, bawled out that the lobster had better be put into the soup, which would give it an excellent flavor: but this his mother opposed, observing, that we must be more economical



of our provisions than that, for the lobster of itself would furnish a dinner for the whole family. I now left them and walked again to the scene of this adventure, and examined the shallow: I then made another attempt upon my two casks, and at length succeeded in getting them into it, and in fixing them there securely on their bottoms.

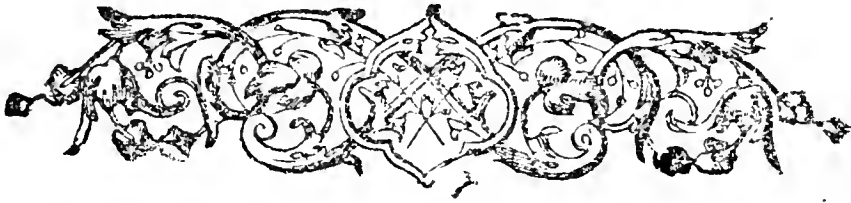
On my return, I complimented Jack on his being the first to procure an animal that might serve for subsistence, and promised him, for his own share, the famous claw, which had furnished us with so lively a discussion.

“Ah! but *I* have seen something too, that is good to eat,” said Ernest; “and I should have got it if it had not been in the water, so that I must have wetted my feet——”

“Oh, that is a famous story,” cried Jack: “I can tell you what he saw,—some nasty muscles: why, I would not eat one of them for the world.—Think of my lobster!”

“That is not true, Jack; for they were oysters, and not muscles that I saw: I am sure of it, for they stuck to the rock, and I know they must be oysters.”

“Fortunate enough, my dainty gentleman,”



interrupted I, addressing myself to Ernest; “since you are so well acquainted with the place where such food can be found, you will be so obliging as to return and procure us some. In such a situation as ours, every member of the family must be actively employed for the common good; and above all none must be afraid of so trifling an inconvenience as wet feet.”

“I will do my best, with all my heart,” answered Ernest; “and at the same time I will bring home some salt, of which I have seen immense quantities in the holes of the rocks, where I have reason to suppose it is dried by the sun. I tasted some of it, and it was excellent. Pray, father, be so good as to inform me whether this salt was not left there by the sea?”

“—No doubt it was, Mr. Reasoner, for where else do you think it could come from? You would have done more wisely if you had brought us a bag of it, instead of spending your time in profound reflections upon operations so simple and obvious; and if you do not wish to dine upon a soup without flavor, you had better run and fetch a little quickly.”



He set off, and soon returned: what he brought had the appearance of sea-salt, but was so mixed with earth and sand, that I was on the point of throwing it away; but my wife prevented me, and by dissolving, and afterwards filtering some of it through a piece of muslin, we found it admirably fit for use.

“Why could we not have used some seawater,” asked Jack, “instead of having all this trouble?”

“Sea-water,” answered I, “is more bitter than salt, and has, besides, a sickly taste.” While I was speaking, my wife tasted the soup with a little stick with which she had been stirring it, and pronounced that it was all the better for the salt, and now quite ready. “But,” said she, “Fritz is not come in. And then how shall we manage to eat our soup without spoons or dishes? Why did we not remember to bring some from the ship?” Because, my dear, one cannot think of every thing at once. We shall be lucky if we have not forgotten even more important things.—“But indeed,” said she, “this is a matter which cannot easily be set to



rights. How will it be possible for each of us to raise this large boiling pot to his lips?"

I soon saw that my wife was right. We all cast our eyes upon the pot with a sort of stupid perplexity, and looked a little like the fox in the fable, when the stork desires him to help himself from a vessel with a long neck. Silence was at length broken, by all bursting into a hearty laugh at our want of every kind of utensil, and at the thought of our own folly, in not recollecting that spoons and forks were things of absolute necessity.

Ernest observed, that if we could but get some of the nice cocoa-nuts he often thought about, we might empty them, and use the pieces of the shells for spoons.

"Yes, yes," replied I; "*if we could but get*,—but we have them not; and if wishing were to any purpose, I had as soon wish at once for a dozen silver spoons; but alas! of what use is wishing?"

"But at least," said the boy, "we can use some oyster-shells for spoons."

"Why, this is well, Ernest," said I; "and is what I call a useful thought. Run then quickly for some of them. But, gentlemen,



I give you notice, that no one of you must give himself airs because his spoon is without a handle, or though he chance to grease his fingers in the soup."

Jack ran first, and was up to his knees in the water before Ernest could reach the place. Jack tore off the fish with eagerness, and threw them to slothful Ernest, who put them into his handkerchief, having first secured in his pocket one shell he had met with of a large size. The boys came back together with their booty.

Fritz not having yet returned, his mother was beginning to be uneasy, when we heard him shouting to us from a small distance, to which we answered by similar sounds. In a few minutes he was among us, his two hands behind him, and with a sort of would-be-melancholy air, which none of us could well understand. — "What have you brought?" asked his brothers; "let us see your booty, and you shall see ours." — "Ah! I have unfortunately nothing." — "What! nothing at all?" said I. — "Nothing at all," answered he. But now, on fixing my eye upon him, I perceived a smile of proud success through



his assumed dissatisfaction. At the same instant Jack, having stolen behind him, exclaimed, "A sucking pig! a sucking pig!" Fritz, finding his trick discovered, now proudly displayed his prize, which I immediately perceived, from the description I had read in different books of travels, was an agouti, an animal common in that country, and not a sucking pig, as the boys had supposed. "The agouti," says M. de Courtills, in his voyage to St. Domingo, "is of the size of a hare, and runs with the same swiftness; but its form is more like the pig, and he makes the same grunting noise. He is not a voracious animal, but is nice in the choice of his food. When his appetite is satiated, he buries what remains, and keeps it for another time. He is naturally of a gentle temper; but if provoked, his hair becomes erect, he bites, and strikes the ground with his hind feet like the rabbit, which he also resembles in digging himself a burrow under ground: but this burrow has but one entrance; he conceals himself in it during the hottest part of the day, taking care to provide himself with a store of *patates* and bananas. He is usually taken by



coursing, and sometimes by dogs, or with nets. When it is found difficult to seize him, the sportsman has only to whistle. As soon as the agouti hears the sound, he is instantly still, remains resting on his hind feet, and suffers himself to be taken. His flesh is white, like that of the rabbit; but it is dry, has no fat, and never entirely loses a certain wild flavor, which is disagreeable to Europeans. He is held in great esteem by the natives, particularly when the animal has been feeding near the sea on plants impregnated with salt. They are therefore caught in great numbers, and for this reason the species is much diminished." — "Where did you find him? How did you get at him? Did he make you run a great way?" asked all at once the young brothers. "Tell me, tell us all" &c. I, for my part, assumed a somewhat serious tone. — "I should have preferred," observed I, "that you had in reality brought us nothing, to your asserting a falsehood. Never allow yourself, even in jest, my dear boy, to assert what you know to be an untruth. By such trifles as these, a habit of lying, the most disgusting of vices,



may be induced. Now then that I have given you this caution, let us look at the animal. Where did you find it?"

Fritz related, that he had passed over to the other side of the river. "Ah!" continued he, "it is quite another thing from this place; the shore is low, and you can have no notion of the quantity of casks, chests, and planks, and different sorts of things washed there by the sea. Ought we not to go and try to obtain some of these treasures?" — "We will consider of it soon," answered I, "but first we have to make our voyage to the vessel, and fetch away the animals; at least you will all agree, that of the cow we are pretty much in want." — "If our biscuit were soaked in milk, it would not be so hard," observed our dainty Ernest. — "I must tell you too," continued Fritz, "that over on the other side there is as much grass for pasturage as we can desire; and, besides, a pretty wood, in the shade of which we could repose. Why then should we remain on this barren desert side?" — "Patience," replied I, "there is a time for every thing, friend Fritz; we shall not be without something to undertake to



morrow, and even after to-morrow. But, above all, I am eager to know if you discovered, in your excursion, any traces of our ship companions?" — "Not the smallest trace of man, dead or alive, on land or water; but I have seen some other animals, that more resembled pigs than the one I have brought you, but with feet more like those of the hare; the animal I am speaking of leaps from place to place; now sitting on his hind legs, rubbing his face with his front feet, and then seeking for roots, and gnawing them like the squirrel. If I had not been afraid of his escaping me, I should have tried to catch him with my hands, for he appeared almost tame."

We had now notice that our soup was ready, and each hastened to dip his shell into the pot, to get out a little; but, as I had foreseen, each drew out a scalded finger, and it was who could scream the loudest. Ernest was the only one who had been too cautious to expose himself to this misfortune: he quietly took his muscle-shell, as large and deep as a small saucer, from his pocket, and carefully dipping it into the pot, drew it out, filled with as much soup as was his fair share, and cast-



ing a look of exultation on his brothers, he set it down till it should be cold enough to eat.

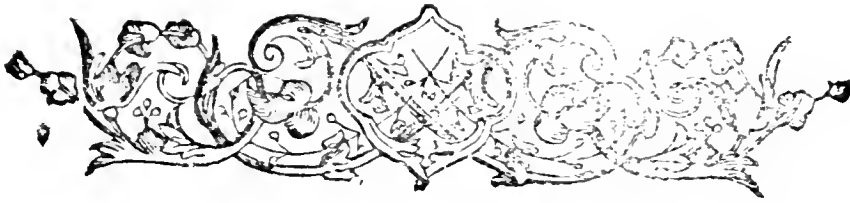
“You have taken good care of yourself, I perceive,” said I. “But now answer me, dear boy, is the advantage worth the pains you take to be better off than your companions? Yet this is the constant failing of your character. As your best friend, I feel it my duty to balk you of the expected prize; I therefore adjudge your dish of delicious soup to our faithful followers, Turk and Flora. For ourselves, we will all fare alike; we will simply dip our shells into the pot till hunger is appeased; but the picked dish for the dogs, Ernest; and *all the rest alike!*”

This gentle reproach sunk, I perceived, into his heart; he placed the shell, filled with soup, upon the ground, and in an instant the dogs had licked up every drop. We on our parts were as sharp set as they, and every eye was fixed on the pot, watching for the steam to subside a little, that we might begin dipping; when, on looking round, we saw Turk and Flora standing over the agouti, gnawing and tearing him fiercely with their teeth and paws. The boys all screamed together. Fritz



seized his gun, and struck them with it; called them the unkindest names, threw stones at them; and was so furious, that if I had not interfered, it is probable he would have killed them. He had already bent his gun with the blows he had given them, and his voice was raised so high as to be re-echoed from the rocks.

When he had grown a little cool, I seriously remonstrated with him on his violence of temper. I represented to him what distress he had occasioned his mother and myself for the event of rage so alarming: that his gun, which might have been so useful, was now spoiled; and that the poor animals, upon whose assistance we should probably so much depend, he had, no doubt, greatly injured: "Anger," continued I, "is always a bad counselor, and may even lead the way to crimes: you are not ignorant of the history of Cain, who, in a moment of violent anger, killed his brother."—"Say no more, my dearest father," interrupted Fritz, in a tone of horror.—"Happy am I to recollect on this occasion," resumed I, "that it was not human creatures you treated thus. But an



angry person never reasons; he scarcely knows whom he attacks. The most convincing proof of this is, that *you* just now fell upon two dumb animals, incapable of judgment, and who most likely thought that your agouti was placed there, as the soup had been before, for them to eat. Confess, too, that it was vanity which excited the furious temper you exhibited. If another than yourself had killed the agouti, you would have been more patient under the accident." Fritz agreed that I was right, and, half drowned in tears, entreated my forgiveness.

Soon after we had taken our meal, the sun began to sink into the west. Our little flock of fowls assembled round us, pecking here and there what morsels of our biscuit had fallen on the ground. Just at this moment my wife produced the bag she had so mysteriously huddled into the tub. Its mouth was now opened; it contained the various sorts of grain for feeding poultry — barley, peas, oats, &c., and also different kinds of seeds and roots of vegetables for the table. In the fulness of her kind heart she scattered several handfuls at once upon the ground, which the



fowls began eagerly to seize. I complimented her on the benefits her foresight had secured for us; but I recommended a more sparing use of so valuable an acquisition, observing, that the grain, if kept for sowing, would produce a harvest, and that we could fetch from the ship spoiled biscuit enough to feed the fowls. Our pigeons sought a roosting place among the rocks; the hens, with the two cocks at their head, ranged themselves in a line along the bridge of the tent; and the geese and ducks betook themselves in a body, cackling and quacking as they proceeded, to a marshy bit of ground near the sea, where some thick bushes afforded them shelter.

A little later, we began to follow the example of our winged companions, by beginning our preparations for repose. First, we loaded our guns and pistols, and laid them carefully in the tent: next, we assembled together and joined in offering up our thanks to the Almighty for the succor afforded us, and supplicating his watchful care for our preservation. With the last ray of the sun we entered our tent, and after drawing the



sail-cloth over the hooks to close the entrance, we laid ourselves down close to each other on the grass and moss we had collected in the morning.

The children observed, with surprise, that darkness came upon us all at once; that night succeeded to day without an intermediate twilight. — “This,” replied I, “makes me suspect that we are not far from the equator, or at least between the tropics, where this is of ordinary occurrence; for the twilight is occasioned by the rays of the sun being broken in the atmosphere; the more obliquely they fall, the more their feeble light is extended and prolonged; while, on the other hand, the more perpendicular the rays, the less their declination: consequently the change from day to night is much more sudden when the sun is under the horizon.

I looked once more out of the tent to see if all was quiet around us. The old cock, awaking at the rising of the moon, chanted our vespers, and then I lay down to sleep. In proportion as we had been during the day oppressed with heat, we were now in the night inconvenienced by the cold, so that we clung



to each other for warmth. A sweet sleep began to close the eyes of my beloved family; I endeavored to keep awake till I was sure my wife's solicitude had yielded to the same happy state, and then I closed my own. Thanks to the fatigue we had undergone, our first night in the desert island was very tolerably comfortable.

CHAPTER III.

Voyage of Discovery.

I WAS roused at the dawn of day by the crowing of the cocks. I awoke my wife, and we consulted together as to the occupations we should engage in. We agreed, that we would seek for traces of our late ship companions, and at the same time examine the nature of the soil on the other side of the river, before we determined on a fixed place of abode. My wife easily perceived that such an excursion could not be undertaken by all the mem-



bers of the family ; and full of confidence in the protection of Heaven, she courageously consented to my proposal of leaving her with the three youngest boys, and proceeding myself with Fritz on a journey of discovery. I entreated her not to loose a moment in giving us our breakfast. She gave us notice that the share of each would be but small, there being no more soup prepared. — “What then,” I asked, “is to become of Jack’s lobster?” — “That he can best tell you himself,” answered his mother. “But now pray step and awake the boys, while I make a fire and put on some water.”

The children were soon roused ; even our slothful Ernest submitted to the hard fate of rising so early in the morning. When I asked Jack for his lobster, he ran and fetched it from a cleft in the rock, in which he had concealed it : “I was determined,” said he, “that the dogs should not treat my lobster as they did the agouti, for I knew them for a sort of gentlemen to whom nothing comes amiss.” — “I am glad to see, son Jack,” said I, “that that giddy head upon your shoulders can be prevailed upon to reflect. ‘Happy is he who



knows how to profit by the misfortunes of others,' says the proverb. But will you not kindly give Fritz the great claw, which bit your leg (though I promised it to you), to carry with him for his dinner in our journey?"

"What journey?" asked all the boys at once. "Ah! we will go too: a journey! a journey!" repeated they, clapping their hands, and jumping round me like little kids. "For this time," said I, "it is impossible for all of you to go; we know not yet what we are to set about, nor whither we are going. Your eldest brother and myself shall be better able to defend ourselves in any danger, without you; besides that with so many persons we could proceed but slowly. You will then all three remain with your mother in this place, which appears to be one of perfect safety, and you shall keep Flora to be your guard, while we will take Turk with us. With such a protector, and a gun well loaded, who shall dare treat us with disrespect? Make haste, Fritz, and tie up Flora, that she may not follow us; and have your eye on Turk, that he may be at hand to accompany us; and see the guns are ready.



At the word guns, the color rose in the cheeks of my poor boy. His gun was so bent as to be of no use; he took it up and tried in vain to straighten it; I let him alone for a short time; but at length I gave him leave to take another, perceiving with pleasure that the vexation had produced a proper feeling in his mind. A moment after, he attempted to lay hold of Flora to tie her up; but the dog recollecting the blows she had so lately received, began to snarl, and would not go near him. Turk behaved the same, and I found it necessary to call with my own voice, to induce them to approach us. Fritz then in tears entreated for some biscuit of his mother, declaring that he would willingly go without his breakfast to make his peace with the dogs; he accordingly carried them some biscuit, stroked and caressed them, and in every motion seemed to ask their pardon. As of all animals, without excepting man, the dog is least addicted to revenge, and at the same time is the most sensible of kind usage, Flora instantly relented, and began to lick the hands which fed her; but Turk, who was of a more fierce and independent temper still held



off, and seemed to feel a want of confidence in Fritz's advances. — "Give him a claw of my lobster," cried Jack, "for I mean to give it all to you for your journey."

"I cannot think why you should give it all," interrupted Ernest, "for you need not be uneasy about their journey. Like Robinson Crusoe, they will be sure enough to find some cocoa-nuts, which they will like much better than your miserable lobster; only think, a fine round nut, Jack, as big as my head, and with at least a tea-cup full of delicious sweet milk in it!"

"Oh! brother Fritz, pray do bring me some," cried little Francis.

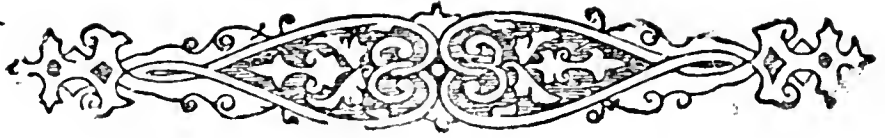
We now prepared for our departure: we took each a bag for game, and a hatchet; I put a pair of pistols in the leather band round Fritz's waist, in addition to the gun, and provided myself with the same articles, not forgetting a stock of biscuit and a flask of fresh river water. My wife now called us to breakfast, when all attacked the lobster; but its flesh proved so hard, that there was a great deal left when our meal was finished, and we packed it for our journey without further re-



gret from any one. The sea-lobster is an animal of considerable size, and its flesh is much more nutritious, but less delicate, than the common lobster.

Fritz urged me to set out before the excessive heat came on. — “With all my heart,” said I, “but we have forgot one thing.” — “What is that?” asked Fritz, looking round him; “I see nothing to do but to take leave of my mother and my brothers.” — “I know what it is,” cried Ernest; “we have not said our prayers this morning.” — “That is the very thing, my dear boy,” said I. “We are too apt to forget God, the giver of all, for the affairs of this world; and yet never had we so much need of his care, particularly at the moment of undertaking a journey in an unknown soil.”

Upon this our pickle Jack began to imitate the sound of church-bells, and to call “Bome! bome! bidi bome, bidiman, bome. To prayers, to prayers, bome, bome!” — “Thoughtless boy!” cried I, with a look of displeasure, “when, oh! when will you be sensible of that sacredness in devotion that banishes for the time every thought of levity



or amusement? Recollect yourself, and let me not have again to reprove you on a subject of so grave a nature."

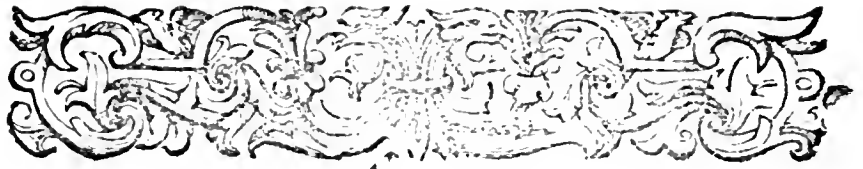
In about an hour we had completed the preparations for our departure. I had loaded the guns we left behind, and I now enjoined my wife to keep by day as near the boat as possible, which in case of danger was the best and most speedy means of escape. My next concern was to shorten the moment of separation, judging by my own feelings those of my dear wife; for neither could be without painful apprehensions of what new misfortune might occur on either side during the interval. We all melted into tears;—I seized this instant for drawing Fritz away, and in a few moments the sobs and often repeated adieus of those we left behind, died away in the noise of the waves which we now approached, and which turned our thoughts upon ourselves and the immediate object of our journey.

The banks of the river were everywhere steep and difficult, excepting at one narrow slip near the mouth on our side, where we had drawn our fresh water. The other side



presented an unbroken line of sharp, high, perpendicular rocks. We therefore followed the course of the river till we arrived at a cluster of rocks at which the stream formed a cascade: a few paces beyond, we found some large fragments of rock which had fallen into the bed of the river: by stepping upon these, and making now and then some hazardous leaps, we contrived to reach the other side. We proceeded a short way along the rock we ascended in landing, forcing ourselves a passage through tall grass, which twined with other plants, and were rendered more capable of resistance by being half dried by the sun. Perceiving, however, that walking on this kind of surface in so hot a sun would exhaust our strength, we looked for a path, to descend and proceed along the river, where we hoped to meet with fewer obstacles, and perhaps, to discover traces of our ship companions.

When we had walked about a hundred paces we heard a loud noise behind us, as if we were pursued, and perceived a rustling motion in the grass, which was almost as tall as ourselves. I was a good deal alarmed,



thinking that it might be occasioned by some frightful serpent, a tiger, or other ferocious animal. But I was well satisfied with Fritz, who, instead of being frightened, and running away, stood still and firm to face the danger, the only motion he made being to see that his piece was ready, and turning himself to front the spot from whence the noise proceeded. Our alarm was, however, short; for what was our joy on seeing rush out, not an enemy, but our faithful Turk, whom in the distress of the parting scene we had forgotten, and whom no doubt our anxious relatives had sent to us! I received the poor creature with lively joy, and did not fail to commend both the bravery and discretion of my son, in not yielding to even a rational alarm, and for waiting till he was sure of the object before he resolved to fire: had he done otherwise, he might have destroyed an animal likely to afford us various kinds of aid, and to contribute by the kindness of his temper to the pleasures of our domestic scene. — “Observe, my dear boy,” said I, “to what dangers the tumult of the passions exposes us: the anger which overpowered you yesterday, and the error natural



to the occasion we have this moment witnessed, if you had unfortunately given way to it, might either of them have produced an irretrievable misfortune.”

Fritz assured me he was sensible to the truth and importance of my remarks; that he would watch constantly over the defects of his temper: and then he fell to caressing the faithful and interesting animal.

Conversing on such subjects as these, we pursued our way. On our left was the sea, and on our right the continuation of the ridge of rocks which began at the place of our landing, and ran along the shore, the summit everywhere adorned with fresh verdure and a great variety of trees. We were careful to proceed in a course as near the shore as possible, casting our eyes alternately upon its smooth expanse and upon the land in all directions, to discover our ship companions, or the boats which had conveyed them from us; but our endeavors were in vain.

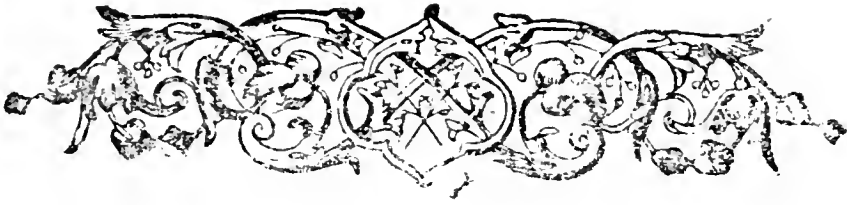
Fritz proposed to fire his gun from time to time, that, should they be any where concealed near us, they might be led to know of our pursuit.



“This would be vastly well,” I observed, “if you could contrive that the savages, who are most likely not far distant, should not hear the sound, and come in numbers upon us.” — “I am thinking, father,” interrupted Fritz, “that there is no good reason why we should give ourselves so much trouble and uneasiness about persons who abandoned us so cruelly, and thought only of their own safety. —”

“There is not only one good reason, but many,” replied I: “first, we should not return evil for evil; next, it may be in their power to assist us; and lastly, they are perhaps at this moment in the greatest want of assistance. It was their lot to escape with nothing but life from the ship, if indeed they are still alive, while we had the good fortune to secure provisions enough for present subsistence, to a share of which they are as fully entitled as ourselves.”

“But, father, while we are wandering here, and losing our time almost without a hope of benefit to them, might we not be better employed in returning to the vessel, and saving the animals on board?”



“—When a variety of duties present themselves for our choice, we should always give the preference to that which can confer the most solid advantage. The saving of the life of a man is a more exalted action than the contributing to the comfort of a few quadrupeds, whom we have already supplied with food for several days; particularly as the sea is in so calm a state, that we need entertain no apprehension that the ship will sink or go entirely to pieces just at present.”

My son made no reply to what I said, and we seemed by mutual silent consent to take a few moments for reflection.

When we had gone about two leagues, we entered a wood situated a little further from the sea: here we threw ourselves on the ground, under the shade of a tree, by the side of a clear running stream, and took out some provisions and refreshed ourselves. We heard the chirping, singing, and motion of birds in the trees, and observed, as they now and then came out to view, that they were more attractive by their splendid plumage than by any charm of note. Fritz assured me that he had caught a glimpse of some animals like



apes among the bushes, and this was confirmed by the restless movements of Turk, who began to smell about him, and to bark so loud that the woods resounded with the noise. Fritz stole softly about to be sure, and presently stumbled on a small round body which lay on the ground: he brought it to me, observing that it must be the nest of some bird. — “What makes you of that opinion?” said I. “It is, I think, much more like a cocoon.”

“But I have read that there are some kinds of birds, which build their nests quite round; and look, father, how the outside is crossed and twined.”

“But do you not perceive that what you take for straws crossed and twined by the beak of a bird, is in fact a coat of fibres formed by the hand of Nature? Do you not remember to have read, that the nut of a cocoa shell is inclosed within a round, fibrous covering, which again is surrounded by a skin of a thin and fragile texture? I see that in the one you hold in your hand, this skin has been destroyed by time, which is the reason that the twisted fibres (or inner covering) are



so apparent; but now let us break the shell, and you will see the nut inside."

We soon accomplished this; but the nut, alas! from lying on the ground, had perished, and appeared but little different from a bit of dried skin, and not the least inviting to the palate.

Fritz was much amused at this adventure. "How I wish Ernest could have been here!" cried he. "How he envied me the fine large cocoa-nuts I was to find, and the whole tea-cup full of sweet delicious milk which was to spring out upon me from the inside! But, father, I myself believed that the cocoa-nut contained a sweet refreshing liquid, a little like the juice of almonds: travelers surely tell untruths!"

"Travelers certainly do sometimes tell untruths, but not, I believe, on the subject of the cocoa-nut, which is well known to contain the liquid you describe, just before they are in a state of ripeness. It is the same with our European nuts, with the difference of quantity; and one property is common to both, that as the nut ripens, the milk diminishes, by thickening, and becoming the same



substance as the nut. If you put a ripe nut a little way under the earth, in a good soil, the kernel will shoot and burst the shell; but if it remain above ground, or in a place that does not suit its nature, the principle of vegetation is extinguished by internal fermentation, and the nut perishes as you have seen."

"I am now surprised that this principle is not extinguished in every nut; for the shell is so hard, it seems impossible for a softer substance to break it."

"The peach-stone is no less hard; the kernel, notwithstanding, never fails to break it, if it is placed in a well-nurtured soil."

"Now I begin to understand. The peach-stone is divided into two parts, like a muscle-shell; it has a kind of seam round it, which separates of itself when the kernel is swelled by moisture: but the cocoa-nut in my hand is not so divided, and I cannot conceive of its separating."

"I grant that the cocoa-nut is differently formed; but you may see by the fragments you have just thrown on the ground, that Nature has in another manner stepped in to its assistance. Look near the stalk, and you



will discover three round holes, which are not, like the rest of its surface, covered with a hard impenetrable shell, but are stopped by a spongy kind of matter; it is through these that the kernel shoots."

"Now, father, I have the fancy of gathering all the pieces together and giving them to Ernest, and telling him these particulars: I wonder what he will say about it, and how he will like the withered nut."

"Now the fancy of your father, my dear boy, would be to find you without so keen a relish for a bit of mischief. Joke with Ernest, if you will, about the withered nut; but I should like to see you heal the disappointment he will feel, by presenting him at last with a sound and perfect nut, provided we should have one to spare."

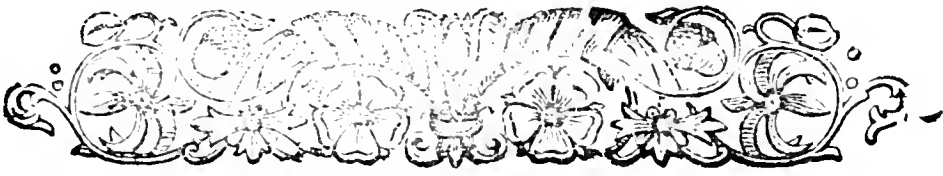
After looking for some time, we had the good luck to meet with one single nut. We opened it, and finding it sound, we sat down and ate it for our dinner, by which means we were enabled to husband the provisions we had brought. The nut, it is true, was a little oily and rancid; yet, as it was not a time to be nice, we made a hearty meal, and then



continued our route. We did not quit the wood, but pushed our way across it, being often obliged to cut a path through the bushes overrun by creeping plants, with our hatchet. At length we reached a plain, which afforded a more extensive prospect and a path less perplexed and intricate.

We next entered a forest to the right, and soon observed that some of the trees were of a singular kind. Fritz, whose sharp eye was continually on a journey of discovery, went up to examine them closely. "O heavens! father, what odd trees, with wens growing all about their trunks!" I had soon the surprise and satisfaction of assuring him that they were of the gourd-tree kind, the trunks of which bear fruit. Fritz, who had never heard of such a tree, could not conceive the meaning of what he saw, and asked me if the fruit was a sponge or a wen. — "We will see," I replied, "if we cannot unravel the mystery. Try to get down one of them, and we will examine it minutely."

"I have got one," cried Fritz, "and it is exactly like a gourd, only the rind is thicker and harder."



“It then, like the rind of that fruit, can be used for making various utensils,” observed I; “plates, dishes, basins, flasks. We will give it the name of the gourd-tree.”

Fritz jumped for joy. — “How happy my mother will be!” cried he in ecstasy; “she will no longer have the vexation of thinking when she makes soup, that we shall all scald our fingers!”

“What, my boy, do you think is the reason that this tree bears its fruit only on the trunk and on its topmost branches?”

“I think it must be because the middle branches are too feeble to support such a weight.”

“You have guessed exactly right.”

“But are these gourds good to eat?”

“At worst they are, I believe, harmless; but they have not a very tempting flavor. The negro savages set as much value on the rind of this fruit as on gold, for its use to them is indispensable. These rinds serve them to keep their food and drink in, and sometimes they even cook their victuals in them.”

“Oh father! it must be impossible to cook



their victuals in them; for the heat of fire would soon consume such a substance."

"I did not say the rind was put upon the fire."

"How droll! pray how are victuals to be cooked without fire?"

"Nor did I say that victuals could be cooked without a fire; but there is no need to put the vessel that contains the food upon the fire."

"I have no idea of what you mean; there seems to be a miracle."

"So be it, my son. A little tincture of enchantment is the lot of man. When he finds himself deficient in intelligence, or is too indolent to give himself the trouble to reflect, he is driven by his weakness to ascribe to a miracle, or to witchcraft, what is, most likely, nothing but the most ordinary operation of Art or Nature."

"Well, father, I will then believe in what you tell me of these rinds."

"That is, you will cut the matter short, by resolving to be sure on the word of another: this is a good way to let your own reason lie fallow. Come, come, no such idleness; let



mo help you to understand this amazing phenomenon. When it is intended to dress food in one of these rinds, the process is, to cut the fruit into two equal parts, and scoop out the inside; some water is put into one of the halves, and into the water some fish, a crab, or whatever else is to be dressed; then some stones red hot, beginning with one at a time, are thrown in, which impart sufficient heat to the water to dress the food, without the smallest injury to the pot."

"But is not the food spoiled by ashes falling in, or by pieces of the heated stones separating in the water?"

"Certainly it is not easy to make fine sauces or ragouts in such a vessel; but a dressing of the meat is actually accomplished, and the negroes and savages, who are the persons to make use of what is thus cooked, are not very delicate: but I can imagine a tolerable remedy for even the objection you have found. The food might be inclosed in a vessel small enough to be contained in our capacious half of a gourd, and thus be cooked upon the principle so much used in chemistry; the application of a milder heat than fire.



And this method of cooking has also another advantage, that the thing contained cannot adhere to the sides or bottom of the vessel."

We next proceeded to the manufacture of our plates and dishes. I taught my son how to divide the gourd with a bit of string, which would cut more equally than a knife; I tied the string round the middle of the gourd as tight as possible, striking it pretty hard with the handle of my knife, and I drew tighter and tighter till the gourd fell apart, forming two regular shaped bowls or vessels; while Fritz, who had used a knife for the same operation, had entirely spoiled his gourd by the irregular pressure of his instrument. I recommended his making some spoons with the spoiled rind, as it was good for no other purpose. I, on my part, had soon completed two dishes of convenient size, and some smaller ones to serve as plates.

Fritz was in the utmost astonishment at my success. — "I cannot imagine, father," said he, "how this way of cutting the gourd could occur to you!"

"I have read the description of such a process," replied I, "in books of travels; and



also that such of the savages as have no knives, and who make a sort of twine from the bark of trees are accustomed to use it for this kind of purpose. So you see what benefit may be derived from reading, and from afterwards reflecting on what we read."

"And the flasks, father; in what manner are they made?"

"For this branch of their ingenuity they make preparation a long time beforehand. If a negro wishes to have a flask or bottle with a neck, he binds a piece of string, linen, bark of a tree, or any thing he can get, round the part nearest the stalk of a very young gourd; he draws this bandage so tight, that the part at liberty soon forms itself to a round shape, while the part which is confined contracts, and remains ever after narrow. By this method it is that they obtain flasks or bottles of a perfect form."

"Are then the bottle-shaped gourds I have seen in Europe trained by a similar preparation?"

"No, they are of another species, and what you have seen is their natural shape."

Our conversation and cur labor thus went



on together. Fritz had completed some plates, and was not a little proud of the achievement. "Ah, how delighted my mother will be to eat upon them!" cried he. "But how shall we convey them to her? They will not, I fear, bear traveling well."

"We must leave them here on the sand for the sun to dry them thoroughly; this will be accomplished by the time of our return this way, and we can then carry them with us; but care must be taken to fill them with sand, that they may not shrink or warp in so ardent a heat." My boy did not dislike this task; for he had no great fancy to the idea of carrying such a load on our journey of further discovery. Our sumptuous service of porcelain was accordingly spread upon the ground, and for the present abandoned to its fate.

We amused ourselves as we proceeded, in endeavoring to fashion some spoons from the fragments of the gourd-rinds. I had the fancy to try my skill upon a piece of cocoonut; but I must needs confess that what we produced had not the least resemblance to those I had seen in the Museum at London, and which were shown there as the work of

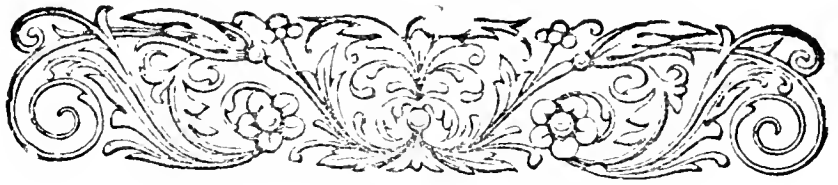


some of the islanders of the Southern Seas. A European without instruments must always find himself excelled in such attempts by the superior adroitness and patience of savages; in this instance too of ourselves, we had the assistance of knives, while the savages have only flat stones with a sharp edge to work with.

“My attempt has been scarcely more successful than your own,” I cried; “and to eat soup with either your spoons or mine, we ought to have mouths extending from ear to ear.”

“True enough, father,” answered Fritz; “but it is not my fault. In making mine, I took the curve of my bit of rind for a guide; if I had made it smaller, it would have been too flat, and it is still more difficult to eat with a shovel than with an oyster-shell. But I am thinking that they may serve till I have improved upon my first attempt, and I am quite sure of the pleasure they will afford my mother. I imagine it pleases God sometimes to visit his creatures with difficulties, that they may learn to be satisfied with a little.”

“That is an excellent remark, my boy,”



said I, "and gives me more pleasure than a hundred crowns would do." Fritz burst into a fit of laughter. — "You do not rate my remark very high when you say this father," cried he, "for of what use would a hundred crowns be to you at present! If you had said a good soup, or a hundred cocoa-nuts, I should be much prouder for having made it."

"But as it is, my son, you have a right to be proud. I am well pleased to find you are beginning to estimate things according to their real value and usefulness, instead of considering them as good or bad, like children, without understanding the true reason. Money is only a means of exchange in human society; but here, on this solitary coast, Nature is more generous than man, and asks no payment for the benefits she bestows."

While these conversations and our labors had been going on, we had not neglected the great object of our pursuit,—the making every practicable search for our ship companions. But our endeavors, alas! were all in vain.

After a walk of about four leagues in all, we arrived at a spot where a slip of land



reached far out into the sea, on which we observed a rising piece of ground or hill. On a moment's reflection we determined to ascend it, concluding we should obtain a clear view of all adjacent parts, which would save us the fatigue of further rambles. We accordingly accomplished the design.

We did not reach the top of the hill without many efforts and a plentiful perspiration: but when there, we beheld a scene of wild and solitary beauty, comprehending a vast extent of land and water. It was, however, in vain that we used our telescope in all directions; no trace of man appeared. A truly embellished nature presented herself; and we were in the highest degree sensible of her thousand charms. The shore rounded by a bay of some extent, the bank of which ended in a promontory on the further side; the agreeable blue tint of its surface; the sea, gently agitated by waves in which the rays of the sun were reflected; the woods of variegated hues and verdure, formed altogether a picture of such magnificence, of such new and exquisite delight, that, if the recollection of our unfortunate companions, engulfed perhaps in



this very ocean, had not intruded to depress our spirits, we should have yielded to the ecstasy the scene was calculated to inspire. In reality, from this moment we began to lose even the feeble hope we had entertained, and sadness stole involuntarily into our hearts. We, however, became but the more sensible of the goodness of the Divine Being, in the special protection afforded to ourselves, in conducting us to a home where there was no present cause for fear of danger from without, where we had not experienced the want of food, and where there was a prospect of future safety for us all. We had encountered no venomous or ferocious animals; and, as far as our sight could yet reach, we were not threatened by the approach of savages. I remarked to Fritz, that we seemed destined to a solitary life, and that it was a rich country which appeared to be allotted us for habitation; — “at least, my son, our habitation it must be unless some vessel should happen to put on shore on the same coast, and be in a condition to take us back to our native land. And God’s will be done!” added I, “for he knows what is best for us. Having



left our native country, fixed in the intention of inhabiting some propitious soil, [See Introduction], it was natural at first to encounter difficult adventures. Let us therefore consider our situation as no disappointment in any essential respect. We can pursue our scheme for agriculture. We shall learn to invent arts. Our only want is numbers."

"As for me," answered Fritz, "I care but little about being so few of us. If I have the happiness of seeing you and my mother well in health and easy, I shall not give myself much uneasiness about those wicked, unkind ship companions of ours."

"No, my boy; they were not all bad people; and they would have become better men here, because not exposed to the temptations of the world. Common interest, united exertions, mutual services and counsels, together with the reflections which would have grown in such a state as this, tend to the improvement of the heart's affections."

"We however, of ourselves," observed Fritz, "form a larger society than was the lot of Adam before he had children; and, as we grow older, we will perform all the necessary



labor, while you and my mother enjoy ease and quiet.”

“Your assurances are as kind as I can desire, and they encourage me to struggle with what hardships may present themselves. Who can foresee in what manner it may be the will of Heaven to dispose of us? In times of old, God said to one of his chosen, ‘I will cause a great nation to descend from thy loins.’”

“And why may not we too become patriarchs, father?”

“Why not? you ask;—and I have not now time to answer. But come, my young patriarch, let us find a shady spot, that we may not be consumed with the fierce heat of the sun before the patriarchal condition can be conferred upon us. Look yonder at that inviting wood: let us hasten thither to take a little rest, then eat our dinner, and return to our dear expecting family.”

We descended the hill, and made our way to a wood of palms, which I had just pointed out to Fritz; our path was clothed with reeds, entwined with other plants, which greatly obstructed our march. We advanced slowly



and cautiously, fearing at every step to receive a mortal bite from some serpent that might be concealed among them. We made Turk go before, to give us timely notice of any thing dangerous. I also cut a reed-stalk of uncommon length and thickness, for my defense against any enemy. It was not without surprise that I perceived a glutinous sap proceed from the divided end of the stalk. Prompted by curiosity, I tasted this liquid, and found it sweet and of a pleasant flavor, so that not a doubt remained that we were passing through a plantation of sugar-canes. I again applied the cane to my lips, and sucked it for some moments, and felt singularly refreshed and strengthened. I determined not to tell Fritz immediately of the fortunate discovery I had made, preferring that he should find it out for himself. As he was at some distance before me, I called out to him to cut a reed for his defense. This he did, and, without any remark, used it simply for a stick, striking lustily with it on all sides to clear a passage. The motion occasioned the sap to run out abundantly upon his hand, and he stopped to examine so strange a circum-



stance. He lifted it up, and still a larger quantity escaped. He now tasted what was on his fingers. Oh! then for the exclamations — “Father, father, I have found some sugar! — some sirup! I have a sugar-cane in my hand! Run quickly, father!” We were soon together, jointly partaking of the pleasure we had in store for his dear mother and the younger brothers. In the meantime Fritz kept sucking the juice of the single cane he had cut, till his relish for it was appeased. I thought this a profitable moment to say a word about excesses; of the wisdom of husbanding even our lawful pleasures; of the advantages of moderation in our most rational enjoyments.

“But, father, we will take home a good provision of sugar-canes, however. I shall only just taste of them once or twice as I walk along. But it will be so delightful to regale my mother and my little brothers with them!”

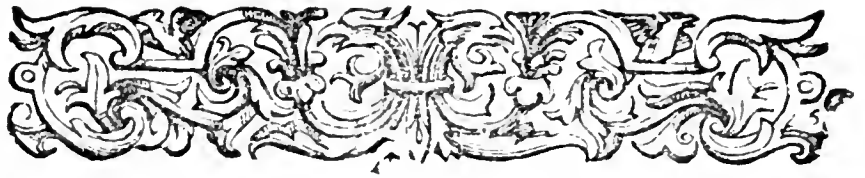
“I have no objection; but do not take too heavy a load, for you have other things to carry, and we have yet far to go.”

Counsel was given in vain. He persisted



in cutting at least a dozen of the largest canes, tore off their leaves, tied them together, and, putting them under his arm, dragged them, as well as he was able, through thick and thin to the end of the plantation. We regained the wood of palms without accident; here we stretched our limbs in the shade, and finished our repast. We were scarcely settled, when a great number of large monkeys, terrified by the sight of us and the barking of Turk, stole so nimbly, and yet so quietly up the trees, that we scarcely perceived them till they had reached the topmost parts. From this height they fixed their eyes upon us, grinding their teeth, making horrible grimaces, and saluting us with screams of hostile import. Being now satisfied that the trees were palms, bearing cocoa-nuts, I conceived the hope of obtaining some of this fruit in a milky state, through the monkeys. Fritz, on his part, prepared to shoot at them instantly. He threw his burdens on the ground, and it was with difficulty I, by pulling his arm, could prevent him from firing.

“ Ah! father, why did you not let me fire? Monkeys are such malicious, mischievous ani-



mals! Look how they raise their backs in derision of us!”

“And is it possible that this can excite your vengeance, my most reasonable Mr. Fritz? To say the truth, I have myself no predilection for monkeys, who, as you say, are naturally prone to be malicious. But as long as an animal does us no injury, or that his death can in no shape be useful in preserving our own lives, we have no right to destroy it, and still less to torment it for our amusement, or from an insensate desire of revenge. But what will you say if I show you that we may find means to make living monkeys contribute to our service? See what I am going to do;—but step aside, for fear of your head. If I succeed, the monkeys will furnish us with plenty of our much desired cocoa-nuts.”

I now began to throw some stones at the monkeys; and though I could not make them reach to half the height at which they had taken refuge, they showed every mark of excessive anger. With their accustomed trick of imitation, they furiously tore off, nut by nut, all that grew upon the branches near



them, to hurl them down upon us; so that it was with difficulty we avoided the blows; and in a short time a great number of cocoa-nuts lay on the ground round us. Fritz laughed heartily at the excellent success of our stratagem; and as the shower of cocoa-nuts began to subside, we set about collecting them. We chose a place where we could repose at our ease, to feast on this rich harvest. We opened the shells with a hatchet, but first enjoyed the sucking of some of the milk through the three small holes, where we found it easy to insert the point of a knife. The milk of the cocoa-nut has not a pleasant flavor; but it is excellent for quenching thirst. What we liked best was a kind of solid cream which adheres to the shell, and which we scraped off with our spoons. We mixed with it a little of the sap of our sugar-canes, and it made a delicious repast.

Our meal being finished, we prepared to leave the wood of palms. I tied all the cocoa-nuts which had stalks, together, and threw them across my shoulder. Fritz resumed his bundle of sugar-canes. We divided the rest of the things between us, and continued our way towards home.

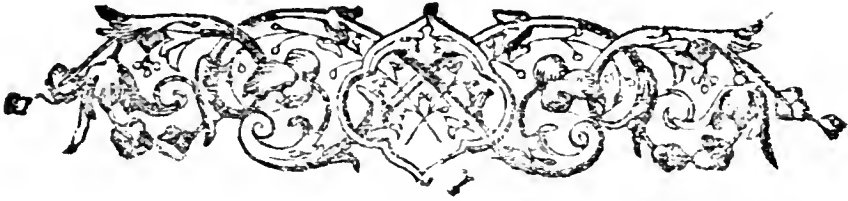


CHAPTER IV.

Return from the Voyage of Discovery. A Nocturnal Alarm.

MY poor boy now began to complain of fatigue; the sugar-canes galled his shoulders, and he was obliged to shift them often. At last, he stopped to take breath.—“No,” cried he, “I never could have thought that a few sugar-canes could be so heavy. How sincerely I pity the poor negroes who carry heavy loads of them! Yet how glad I shall be when my mother and Ernest are tasting them!”

While we were conversing and proceeding onwards, Fritz, perceived that from time to time I sucked the end of a sugar-cane, and he would needs do the same. It was in vain, however, that he tried; scarcely a drop of the sap reached his eager lips.—“What can be the reason,” said he, “that though the cane is full of juice, I cannot get out a drop?”



“The reason is,” answered I, “that you make use neither of reflection nor of your imagination.”

“Ah! I recollect now; is it not a question about air? Unless there were a particular opening in the cane, I may suck in vain; no juice will come.”

“You have explained the nature of the difficulty; but how will you manage to set it right?”

“Father, lend me your cane an instant.”

“No, no, that will not do; what I wish is, that you should yourself invent the remedy.”

“Let me see: I imagine that I have only to make a little opening just above the first knot, and then the air can enter.”

“Exactly right. But tell me what you think would be the operation of this opening near the first knot; and in what manner can it make the juice get into your mouth?”

“The pith of the cane being completely interrupted in its growth by each knot, the opening made below could have no effect upon the part above: in sucking the juice, I draw in my breath, and thus exhaust the air in my mouth; the external air presses at the same



time through the hole I have made, and fills this void: the juice of the cane forms an obstacle to this effort, and is accordingly driven into my mouth. But how shall I manage when I have sucked this part dry, to get at the part above?"

"Oh, oh, Mr. Philosopher, what should prevent you, who have been reasoning so well about the force and fluidity of the air, from immediately conceiving so simple a process as that of cutting away the part of the cane you have already sucked dry, and making a second perforation in the part above, so that ——"

"Oh, I have it, I have it, I understand; — but if we should become too expert in the art of drawing out the juice, I fear but few of the canes will reach our good friends in the tent."

"I also am not without my apprehensions, that of our acquisition we shall carry them only a few sticks for fire-wood; for I must bring another circumstance to your recollection; the juice of the sugar-cane is apt to turn sour soon after cutting, and the more certainly in such heat as we now experience; we may suck them, therefore, without compunction, at the diminution of their numbers."



"I made Jack conduct me to the shore where he had seen the foot-marks, that I might examine them, to judge of their number and direction."



“Well, then, if we can do no better with the sugar-canes, at least I will take them a good provision of the milk of cocoa-nuts which I have here in a tin bottle; we shall sit round on the grass and drink it so deliciously!”

“In this too, my generous boy, I fear you will be disappointed. You talk of milk; but the milk of the cocoa-nut, no less than the juice of the sugar-cane, when exposed to the air and heat, turns soon to vinegar. I would almost wager that it is already sour; for the tin bottle which contains it is particularly liable to become hot in the sun.”

“O heavens, how provoking! I must taste it this very minute.” The tin bottle was lowered from his shoulder in the twinkling of an eye, and he began to pull the cork; as soon as it was loose, the liquid flew upwards, hissing and frothing like champagne.

“Bravo, Mr. Fritz! you have manufactured there a wine of some mettle. I must now caution you not to let it make you tipsy.”

“Oh, taste it, father, pray taste it, it is quite delicious; not the least like vinegar; it is rather like excellent new wine; its taste is



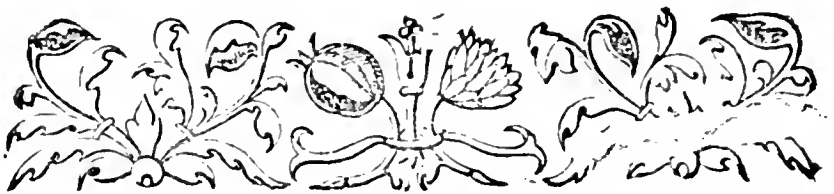
sweet, and it is so sparkling ! do take a little, father. Is it not good ? If all the milk remains in this state, the treat will be better even than I thought.”

“I wish it may prove so, but I have my fears ; its present state is what is called the first degree of fermentation ; the same thing happens to honey, dissolved in water, of which hydromel is made. When this first fermentation is past, and the liquid is clear, it is become a sort of wine or other fermented liquor, the quality of which depends on the materials used. By the application of heat, there next results a second and more gradual fermentation, which turns the fluid into vinegar. But this may be prevented by extraordinary care, and by keeping the vessel that contains it in a cool place. Lastly, a third fermentation takes place in the vinegar itself, which entirely changes its character, and deprives it of its taste, its strength, and its transparency. In the intense temperature of this climate, this triple fermentation comes on very rapidly, so that it is not improbable that, on entering our tent, you might find your liquors turned to vinegar, or even to a thick



liquid of ill odor; we may therefore venture to refresh ourselves with a portion of our booty, that it may not all be spoiled. Come, then, I drink your health, and that of our dear family. I find the liquor at present both refreshing and agreeable; but I am pretty sure that, if we would arrive sober, we must not venture on frequent libations."

Our regale imparted to our exhausted frames an increase of strength and cheerfulness. We reached the place where we had left our gourd utensils upon the sands; we found them perfectly dry, as hard as bone, and not the least misshapen. We now, therefore, could put them into our game bags conveniently enough, and this done, we continued our way. Scarcely had we passed through the little wood in which we breakfasted, when Turk sprang away to seize upon a troop of monkeys, who were skipping about and amusing themselves without observing our approach. They were thus taken by surprise; and before we could get to the spot, our ferocious Turk had already seized one of them; it was a female who held a young one in her arms, which she was caressing almost



to suffocation, and which incumbrance deprived her of the power of escaping. The poor creature was killed, and afterwards devoured; the young one hid himself in the grass, and looked on, grinding his teeth all the time that this horrible feat was performing. Fritz flew like lightning to make Turk let go his hold. He lost his hat, threw down his tin bottle, canes, &c., but all in vain; he was too late to prevent the murder of the interesting mother.

The next scene that presented itself was of a different nature, and comical enough. The young monkey sprang nimbly on Fritz's shoulders, and fastened his feet in the stiff curls of his hair; nor could the squalls of Fritz, nor all the shaking he gave him, make him let go his hold. I ran to them, laughing heartily, for I saw that the animal was too young to do him any injury, while the panic visible in the features of the boy made a ludicrous contrast with the grimaces of the monkey, whom I in vain endeavored to disengage. "There is no remedy, Fritz," said I, "but to submit quietly and carry him; he will furnish an addition to our stock of provisions, though less alluring, I must needs confess, than for your mother's



sake, we could wish. The conduct of the little creature displays a surprising intelligence: he has lost his mother, and he adopts you for his father; perhaps he discovered in you something of the air of a father of a family."

"Or rather the little rogue found out that he had to do with a chicken-heart, who shrinks from the idea of ill-treating an animal which has thrown itself on his protection. But I assure you, father, he is giving me some terrible twitches, and I shall be obliged to you to try once more to get him off."

With a little gentleness and management I succeeded. I took the creature in my arms as one would an infant, nor could I help pitying and caressing him. He was not larger than a kitten, and quite unable to help himself: its mother was at least as tall as Fritz.

"What shall I do with thee, poor orphan?" cried I; "and how, in our condition, shall I be able to maintain thee? We have already more mouths to fill than food to put into them, and our workmen are too young to afford us much hope from their exertions."

"Father," cried Fritz, "do let me have this little animal to myself. I will take the



greatest care of him: I will give him all my share of the milk of the cocoa-nuts till we get our cows and goats; and who knows? his monkey instinct may one day assist us in discovering some wholesome fruits."

"I have not the least objection," answered I. "You have conducted yourself throughout this tragic-comic adventure like a lad of courage and sensibility, and I am well satisfied with every circumstance of your behavior. It is therefore but just that the little protégé should be given up to your management and discretion; much will depend on your manner of educating him; by and by we shall see whether he will be fittest to aid us with his intelligence, or to injure us by his malice; in this last case we shall have nothing to do but to get rid of him."

While Fritz and I were talking about the young monkey, Turk was taking his fill of the remains of its unfortunate mother. Fritz would have driven him away, but besides the difficulty of restraining him, we had to consider, that we might, ourselves, be in danger from the pressing hunger of so powerful an animal; all the food we had before given him



in the day seemed too little for the appeasing his unbounded appetite.

We now thought of resuming our journey. The little orphan jumped again on the shoulder of his protector, while I on my part relieved my boy of the bundle of canes. Scarcely had we proceeded a quarter of a league when Turk overtook us full gallop. Fritz and I received him without the usual marks of kindness, and reproached him with the cruel action he had committed, as if he could feel and understand us; but he showed no sign of concern about the matter, following quietly behind Fritz with an air of cool and perfect satisfaction. The young monkey appeared uneasy from seeing him so near, and passed round and fixed himself on his protector's bosom, who did not long bear so great an inconvenience without having recourse to his invention for a remedy. He tied some string round Turk's body in such a way, as to admit of the monkey's being fastened on his back with it, and then in a tone of genuine pity, he said, "Now, Mr. Turk, since you had the cruelty to destroy the mother, it is for you to take care of her child."



At first the dog was restive, and resisted ; but by degrees, partly by menaces, and partly by caresses, we succeeded in gaining his good will, and he quietly consented to carry the little burden ; and the young monkey, who also had made some difficulties, at length found himself perfectly accommodated. Fritz put another string round Turk's neck by which he might lead him, a precaution he used to prevent him from going out of sight. I must confess, we had not the sin of too great haste to answer for, so that I had leisure for amusing myself with the idea, that we should arrive at our home with something of the appearance of keepers of rare animals for show. I enjoyed in foresight the jubilations of our young ones when they should see the figure we made.—“ Ah ! ” cried Fritz, “ I promise you, brother Jack will draw materials enough from the occasion for future malicious jokes.” — “ Do you then, my son,” said I, “ like your admirable mother, who never fails to make allowance for the buoyant spirits of youth, and is ever ready to find a charitable motive in every thing. As for the question of Turk, let me observe that it would



in our situation be dangerous to teach our dogs not to attack and kill, if they can, what unknown animals they meet with. You will see that he will soon regard your little monkey as a member of our family; already he is content to carry him on his back. But we must not discourage him in his fancy for attacking wild beasts: Heaven bestowed the dog on man to be his safeguard and ally, and the horse the same. How conspicuous is the goodness of the Almighty, in the natural dispositions he has bestowed on these useful creatures, who discover so much affection for man, and so easily submit to the slavery of serving him! A man on horseback, and accompanied by a troop of well-conditioned dogs, need not fear any species of wild beasts, not even the lion, nor the hyæna; he may even baffle the voracious rapacity of the tiger."

"I feel how fortunate we are in the possession of two such creatures: but what a pity that the horses we had on board died during our voyage, and leave us with only an ass!"

"Let us take care how we treat even our



ass with disdain. I wish we had him safe on land. Fortunately he is large, and strong, and not of the common kind. We may train him to do us the same services as are performed by the horse; and it is not improbable that he will even improve under our care, and from the excellent pasture he will find in this climate."

In such conversation as this, on subjects equally interesting to both, we forgot the length of our journey, and soon found ourselves on the bank of the river, and near our family, before we were aware. Flora from the other side announced our approach by a violent barking, and Turk replied so heartily, that his motions unseated his little burden, who in his fright jumped the length of his string from his back to Fritz's shoulder, which he could not afterwards be prevailed upon to leave. Turk, who began to be acquainted with the country, ran off to meet his companion, and shortly after, our much-loved family appeared in sight, with demonstrations of unbounded joy at our safe return. They advanced along by the course of the river, till they on one side, and we on the



other, had reached the place we crossed in the morning. We repassed it again in safety, and threw ourselves into each other's arms. Scarcely had the young ones joined their brother, than they again began their joyful exclamations: "A monkey, a live monkey! Papa, mamma, a live monkey! Oh, how delightful! how happy shall we be! How did you catch him? What a droll face he has!" — "He is very ugly," said little Francis, half afraid to touch him. — "He is much prettier than you," retorted Jack; "only see, he is laughing: I wish I could see him eat." — "Ah! if we had but some cocoa-nut!" cried Ernest; "could you not find any? Are they nice?" — "Have you brought me any milk of almonds?" asked Francis. — "Have you met with any unfortunate adventure?" interrupted my wife. In this manner, questions and exclamations succeeded to each other with such rapidity as not to leave us time to answer them.

At length, when all became a little tranquil, I answered them thus: "Most happy am I to return to you again, my best beloved, and God be praised! without any new mis-



fortune. We have even the pleasure of presenting you with many valuable acquisitions; but in the object nearest my heart, the discovery of our ship companions, we have entirely failed."

"Since it pleases God that it should be so," said my wife, "let us endeavor to be content, and let us be grateful to him for having saved us from their unhappy fate, and for having once more brought us all together: I have had much uneasiness about your safety, and imagined a thousand evils that might beset you. The day appeared an age. But now I see you once more safe and well! But put down your burdens; we will all help you; for though we have not spent the day in idleness, we are less fatigued than you. Quick then, my boys, and take the loads from your father and your brother. Now then sit down, and tell us your adventures."

Jack received my gun, Ernest the coconuts, Francis the gourd-rinds, and my wife my game-bag. Fritz distributed the sugar-canes, and put his monkey on the back of Turk, to the great amusement of the children, at the same time begging Ernest to re-



lieve him of his gun. But Ernest, ever careful of his ease, assured him, that the large heavy bowls with which he was loaded were the most he had strength to carry. His mother, a little too indulgent to his lazy humor, relieved him of these; and thus we proceeded altogether to our tent.

Fritz whispered me, that if Ernest had known what the large heavy bowls were, he would not so readily have parted with them. Then turning to his brother, "Why, Ernest," cried he, "do you know that these bowls are cocoa-nuts, your dear cocoa-nuts, and full of the sweet nice milk you have so much wished to taste?"

"What, really and truly cocoa-nuts, brother? Pray give them to me, mother, I will carry them, if you please, and I can carry the gun too."

"No, no, Ernest," answered his mother, "you shall not tease us with more of your long-drawn sighs about fatigue: a hundred paces, and you would begin again." Ernest would willingly have asked his mother to give him the cocoa-nuts, and take the gun herself, but this he was ashamed to do: "I have



only," said he, "to get rid of these sticks, and carry the gun in my hand."

"I would advise you not to find the sticks heavy, either," said Fritz, drily: "I know you will be sorry if you do; and for this good reason — the sticks are sugar-canes!"

"Sugar-canes! Sugar-canes!" exclaimed they all; and, surrounding Fritz, made him give them full instructions on the sublime art of sucking sugar-canes.

My wife also, who had always entertained a high respect for the article of sugar in her household management, was quite astonished, and earnestly entreated we would inform her of all particulars. I gave her an account of our journey and our new acquisitions, which I exhibited one after the other for her inspection. No one of them afforded her more pleasure than the plates and dishes, because, to persons of decent habits, they were articles of indispensable necessity. We now adjourned to our kitchen and observed with pleasure the preparations for an excellent repast. On one side of the fire was a turnspit, which my wife had contrived by driving two forked pieces of wood into the ground, and



placing a long even stick, sharpened at one end, across them. By this invention she was enabled to roast fish, or other food, with the help of little Francis, who was intrusted with the care of turning it round from time to time. On the occasion of our return, she had prepared us the treat of a goose, the fat of which ran down into some oyster-shells placed there to serve the purpose of a dripping-pan. There was, besides, a dish of fish, which the little ones had caught; and the iron pot was upon the fire, provided with a good soup, the odor of which increased our appetite. By the side of these most exhilarating preparations stood one of the casks which we had recovered from the sea, the head of which my wife had knocked out, so that it exposed to our view a cargo of the finest sort of Dutch cheeses, contained in round tins. All this display was made to excite the appetite of the two travelers, who fared but scantily during the day; and I must needs observe, that the whole was very little like such a dinner as one should expect to see on a desert island.

“What you call a goose,” said my wife,



“is a kind of wild bird, and is the booty of Ernest, who calls by a singular name, and assures me that it is good to eat.”

“Yes, father, I believe that the bird which I have caught is a kind of penguin, or we might distinguish him by the surname of *Stupid*. He showed himself to be a bird so destitute of even the least degree of intelligence, that I killed him with a single blow with my stick.”

“What is the form of his feet, and of his beak?” asked I.

“His feet are formed for swimming; in other words, he is what is called web-footed; the beak is long, small, and a little curved downwards: I have preserved his head and neck, that you might examine it yourself; it reminds me exactly of the penguin, described as so stupid a bird in my book of natural history.”

“You now then perceive, my son, of what use it is to read, and to extend our knowledge, particularly of the productions of nature: by this study and knowledge, we are enabled to recognize at the moment, the objects which chance throws in our



way, whether we have seen them before or not. Tell me now what birds there are with feet like those which you have just described, and which are so formed to enable the creature to strike the water and prevent himself from sinking?"

"There are the man-of-war bird, cormorants, and pelicans, father."

"By what mark do you distinguish the kind to which you just now said the *penguin* or *Stupid* belonged?"

"Upon my word," interrupted his mother, "I must give the answer myself; and it shall be a petition, that you will take some other time for your catechism on birds: when once you begin a subject, one never sees the end of it. Now to my mind there is a time for every thing: Ernest killed the bird, and was able to tell his kind; we on our parts shall eat him; what more therefore is necessary? Do you not see, husband, that the poor child is thinking all the while of his cocoa-nuts? Let me intercede on his behalf, and prevail upon you to let him have the pleasure of examining and tasting them."

"Ah! thank you, my good mother;



I shall be very glad if papa will consent."

Father. — Well, well, you have my full permission. But first you will be obliged to learn from Fritz the best manner of opening them, so as to preserve the milk: and one word more; I recommend to you not to forget the young monkey, who has no longer his mother's milk for food.

Jack. — I cannot prevail upon him to taste a bit: I have offered him every thing we have.

Father. — This is not surprising, for he has not yet learned how to eat; you must feed him with the milk of cocoa-nuts till we can procure something more suitable.

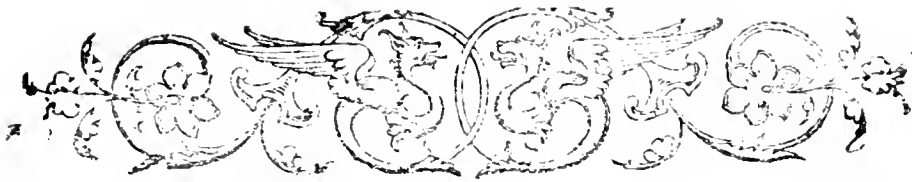
Jack. — I will give the poor little creature my share with all my heart.

Ernest. — I have, however, the greatest desire to taste this milk myself, just to know what it is like.

"And so have I," said the little Francis.

"However, gentlemen, the monkey must live," cried Jack, a little maliciously.

"And we and our children must live too," answered their mother; "Come then, the sup:



per is ready, and the cocoa-nuts shall be for the dessert.”

We seated ourselves on the ground; my wife had placed each article of the repast in one of our new dishes, the neat appearance of which exceeded all our expectations. My sons had not patience to wait, but had broken the cocoa-nuts, and already convinced themselves of their delicious flavor; and then they fell to making spoons with the fragments of the shells. The little monkey, thanks to the kind temper of Jack, had been served the first, and each amused himself with making him suck the corner of his pocket handkerchief, dipped in the milk of the cocoa-nut. He appeared delighted with the treatment he received, and we remarked with satisfaction, that we should most likely be able to preserve him.

The boys were preparing to break some more of the nuts with the hatchet, after having drawn out the milk through the three little holes, when I pronounced the word *halt*, and bade them bring me a saw;—the thought had struck me, that by dividing the nuts carefully with this instrument, the two halves,



when scooped, would remain with the form of tea cups or basins already made to our hands. Jack, who was on every occasion the most active, brought me the saw. I performed my undertaking in the best manner I could, and in a short time each of us was provided with a convenient receptacle for food. My wife put the share of soup which belonged to each into the new basins. The excellent creature appeared delighted that we should no longer be under the necessity, as before, of scalding our fingers by dipping into the pot; and I firmly believe, that never did the most magnificent service of china occasion half the pleasure to its possessor, as our utensils, manufactured by our own hands from gourds and cocoa-nuts, excited in the kind heart of my wife. Fritz asked me if he might not invite our company to taste his fine champagne, which he said would not fail to make us all the merrier. — “I have not the least objection,” answered I, “but remember to taste it yourself before you serve your guests.” — He ran to draw out the stopple and to taste it — “How unfortunate!” said he, “it is already turned to vinegar.”



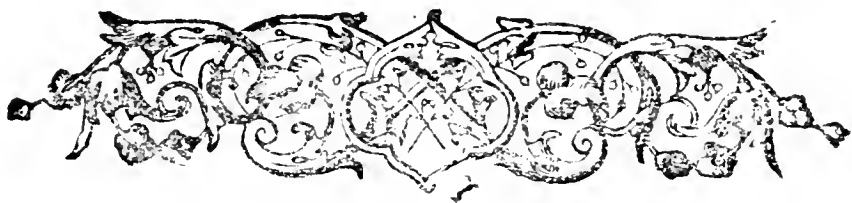
“What, is it vinegar !” exclaimed my wife : “How lucky ! it will make the most delicious sauce for our bird, mixed with the fat which has fallen from it in roasting, and will be as good a relish as a salad.” No sooner said than done. This vinegar produced from cocoa-nut proved a corrective of the wild and fishy flavor of the penguin. The same sauce improved our dish of fish also. Each boasted most of what he himself had been the means of procuring : it was Jack and Francis who had caught the fish in one of the shallows, while Ernest was employed with very little trouble to himself in securing his penguin *the Stupid*. My poor wife had herself performed the most difficult task of all, that of rolling the cask of Dutch cheeses into the kitchen, and then knocking out its head.

By the time we had finished our meal, the sun was retiring from our view ; and recollecting how quickly the night would fall upon us, we were in great haste to regain our place of rest. My wife had considerably collected a tenfold quantity of dry grass, which she had spread in the tent, so that we anticipated with joy the prospect of stretching our limbs on a



substance somewhat approaching to the quality of matrasses, while, the night before, our bodies seemed to touch the ground. Our flock of fowls placed themselves as they had done the preceding evening; we said our prayers, and, with an improved serenity of mind, lay down in the tent, taking the young monkey with us, who was become the little favorite of all. Fritz and Jack contended for a short time which should enjoy the honor of his company for the night; and it was at last decided that he should be laid between them; after which, each would have a hand in covering him carefully, that he might not catch cold. We now all lay down upon the grass, in the order of the night before, myself remaining last to fasten the sail-cloth in front of the tent; when, heartily fatigued by the exertions of the day, I, as well as the rest, soon fell into a profound and refreshing sleep.

But I had not long enjoyed this pleasing state, when I was awaked by the motion of the fowls on the ridge of the tent, and by a violent barking of our vigilant safe-guards, the dogs. I was instantly on my legs; my



wife and Fritz, who had also been alarmed, got up also: we each took a gun, and sallied forth.

The dogs continued barking with the same violence, and at intervals even howled. We had not proceeded many steps from the tent, when to our surprise we perceived by the light of the moon a terrible combat. At least a dozen of jackalls had surrounded our brave dogs, who defended themselves with the stoutest courage. Already the fierce champions had laid three or four of their adversaries on the ground, while those which remained began a timid kind of moan, as if imploring pity and forbearance. Meanwhile they did not the less endeavor to entangle and surprise the dogs, thus thrown off their guard, and so secure to themselves the advantage. But our watchful combatants were not so easily deceived; they took good care not to let the enemy approach them too nearly.

I, for my part, had apprehended something worse than jackalls. "We shall soon manage to set these gentlemen at rest," said I. "Let us fire both together, my boy; but let



us take care how we aim, for fear of killing the dogs; mind how you fire, that you may not miss, and I shall do the same." We fired, and two of the intruders fell instantly dead upon the sands. The others made their escape; but we perceived it was with great difficulty, in consequence, no doubt, of being wounded. Turk and Flora afterwards pursued them, and put the finishing stroke to what we had begun; and thus the battle ended: but the dogs, true Caribbees by nature, made a hearty meal on the flesh of their fallen enemies. My wife, seeing all quiet, entreated us to lie down again and finish our night's sleep; but Fritz asked me to let him first drag the jackall towards the tent, that he might exhibit him the next morning to his brothers. I however observed to Fritz, that if Turk and Flora were still hungry, we ought to give them this last jackall in addition, as a recompense for their courageous behavior.

We had now done with this affair. The body of the jackall was left on the rock, by the side of the tent, in which were the little sleepers, who had not once awakened during



the whole of the scene which had been passing. Having, therefore, nothing further to prevent us, we lay down by their side till day began to break, and till the cocks, with their shrill morning salutation, awoke us both. The children being still asleep, afforded us an excellent opportunity to consult together respecting the plan we should pursue for the ensuing day.

CHAPTER V.

Return to the Wreck.

I BROKE a silence of some moments, with observing to my wife, that I could not but view with alarm the many cares, and exertions to be made!—“In the first place, a journey to the vessel. This is of absolute necessity; at least, if we would not be deprived of the cattle and other useful things, all of which from moment to moment we risk losing by the first heavy sea. What ought we to resolve



upon? For example, should not our very first endeavor be the contriving a better sort of habitation, and a more secure retreat from wild beasts, also a separate place for our provisions? I own I am at a loss what to begin first."

"All will fall into the right order by degrees," observed my wife; "patience and regularity in our plans will go as far as actual labor. I cannot, I confess, help shuddering at the thought of this voyage to the vessel; but if you judge it to be of absolute necessity, it cannot be undertaken too soon. In the meanwhile, nothing that is immediately under my own care shall stand still, I promise you. Let us not be over anxious about to-morrow: 'sufficient unto the day is the evil thereof.' These were the words of the true friend of mankind, and let us use so wise a counsel for our own benefit."

"I will follow your advice," said I, "and without further loss of time. You shall stay here with the three youngest boys; and Fritz, being so much stronger and more intelligent than the others, shall accompany me in the undertaking."

At this moment I started from my bed,



crying out loudly and briskly, "Get up, children, get up; it is almost light, and we have some important projects for to-day; it would be a shame to suffer the sun to find us still sleeping, we who are to be the founders of a new colony!"

At these words Fritz sprang nimbly out of the tent, while the young ones began to gape and rub their eyes, to get rid of their sleepiness. Fritz ran to visit his jackall, which during the night had become cold and perfectly stiff. He fixed him upon his legs, and placed him like a sentinel at the entrance of the tent, joyously anticipating the wonder and exclamations of his brothers at so unexpected an appearance. But no sooner had the dogs caught a sight of him, than they began a howl, and set themselves in motion to fall upon him instantly, thinking he was alive. Fritz had enough to do to restrain them, and succeeded only by dint of coaxing and perseverance.

In the meantime, their barking had awaked the younger boys, and they ran out of the tent, curious to know what could be the occasion. Jack was the first who appeared,



with the young monkey on his shoulders ; but when the little creature perceived the jackall, he sprang away in terror, and hid himself at the furthest extremity of the grass which composed our bed, and covered himself with it so completely, that scarcely could the tip of his nose be seen.

The children were much surprised at the sight of a yellow-colored animal standing without motion at the entrance of the tent.—“Oh heavens !” exclaimed Francis, and stepping back a few paces for fear ; “it is a wolf !” — “No, no,” said Jack, going near the jackall, and taking one of his paws ; “it is a yellow dog, and he is dead ; he does not move at all.” — “It is neither a dog nor a wolf, interrupted Ernest in a consequential tone ; “do you not see that it is the golden fox ?” — “Best of all, most learned professor !” now exclaimed Fritz. “So you can tell an agouti, when you see him, but you cannot tell a jackall ; for jackall is the creature you see before you, and I killed him myself in the night !”

Ernest. — In the night, you say, Fritz. In your sleep, I suppose —

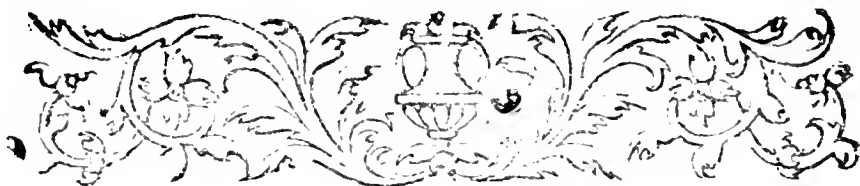


Fritz. — No, Mr. Ernest; not in my sleep, as you so good-naturedly suppose, but broad awake, and on the watch to protect you from wild beasts! But I cannot wonder at this mistake in one who does not know the difference between a jackall and a golden fox!

Ernest. — You would not have known it either, if papa had not told you ——

“Come, come, my lads, I will have no disputes,” interrupted I. “Fritz, you are to blame in ridiculing your brother for the mistake he made. Ernest, you are also to blame for indulging that little peevishness of yours. But as to the animal, you all are right and all are wrong; for he partakes at once of the nature of the dog, the wolf, and the fox.” The boys in an instant became friends; and then followed questions, answers, and wonder in abundance. “And now, my boys, let me remind you, that he who begins the day without first addressing the Almighty, ought to expect neither success nor safety in his undertakings. Let us therefore acquit ourselves of this duty before we engage in other occupations.”

Having finished our prayers, the next thing



thought of was breakfast; for the appetites of young boys open with their eyes. To-day their mother had nothing to give them for their morning meal but some biscuit, which was so hard and dry, that it was with difficulty we could swallow it. Fritz asked for a piece of cheese to eat with it, and Ernest cast some searching looks on the second cask we had drawn out of the sea, to discover whether it also contained Dutch cheeses. In a minute he came up to us, joy sparkling in his eyes: "Father," said he, "if we had but a little butter spread upon our biscuit, do you not think it would improve it?"

"That indeed it would; but — *if* — *if*; these never-ending *ifs* are but a poor dependence. For my part, I had rather eat a bit of cheese with my biscuit at once, than think of *ifs*, which bring us so meagre a harvest.

Ernest. — Perhaps, though, the *ifs* may be found to be worth something, if we were to knock out the head of this cask.

Father. — What cask, my boy? and what are you talking of?

Ernest. — I am talking of this cask, which is filled with excellent salt butter. I made a



little opening in it with a knife; and see, I got out enough to spread nicely upon this piece of biscuit.

“That glutton instinct of yours for once is of some general use,” answered I. “But now let us profit by the event. Who will have some butter on his biscuit?” The boys surrounded the cask in a moment, while I was in some perplexity as to the best method of getting at the contents. Fritz was for taking off the topmost hoop, and thus loosening one of the ends. But this I objected to, observing that the great heat of the sun would not fail to melt the butter, which would then run out, and be wasted. The idea occurred to me, that I would make a hole in the bottom of the cask, sufficiently large to take out a small quantity of butter at a time; and I set about manufacturing a little wooden shovel to use for the purpose. All this succeeded vastly well, and we sat down to breakfast, some biscuits and a cocoa-nut shell full of salt butter being placed upon the ground, round which we all assembled. We toasted our biscuit, and, while it was hot, applied the butter, and contrived to make a hearty breakfast.

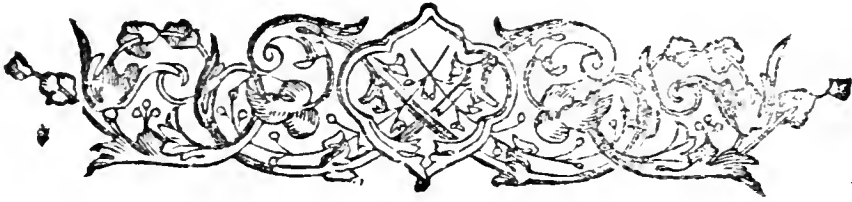


“One of the things we must not forget to look for in the vessel,” said Fritz, “is a spiked collar or two for our dogs, as a protection to them should they again be called upon to defend themselves from wild beasts, which I fear is too probable will be the case.”

“Oh!” says Jack, “I can make spiked collars, if my mother will give me a little help.”

“That I will, most readily, my boy; for I should like to see what new fancy has come into your head,” cried she.

“Yes, yes,” pursued I, “as many new inventions as you please; you cannot better employ your time; and if you produce something useful, you will be rewarded with the commendations of all. But now for work. You, Mr. Fritz, who from your superior age and discretion, enjoy the high honor of being my privy counselor, must make haste and get yourself ready, and we will undertake to-day our voyage to the vessel, to bring away whatever may be possible. You younger boys will remain here, under the wing of your kind mother: I hope I need not mention, that I rely on your perfect obedience to her will, and general good behavior.”



While Fritz was getting the boat ready, I looked about for a pole, and tied a piece of white linen to the end of it: this I drove into the ground, in a place where it would be visible from the vessel; and I concerted with my wife, that in case of any accident that should require my prompt assistance, they should take down the pole and fire a gun three times as a signal of distress, in consequence of which I would immediately turn back. But I gave her notice, that there being so many things to accomplish on board the vessel, it was probable that we should not otherwise return at night; in which case I, on my part, also promised to make signals. My wife had the good sense and the courage to consent to my plan. She, however, extorted from me a promise that we should pass the night in our tubs, and not on board the ship. We took nothing with us but our guns and a recruit of powder and shot, relying that we should find provisions on board; yet I did not refuse to indulge Fritz in the wish he expressed, to take the young monkey, as he wished to see how the little creature would like some milk from the cow, or from a goat.



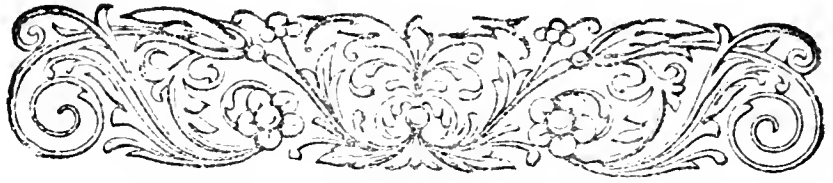
We embarked in silence, casting our anxious looks on the beloved objects we were quitting. Fritz rowed steadily, and I did my best to second his endeavors, by rowing from time to time, on my part, with the oar which served me for a rudder. When we had gone some distance, I remarked a current which was visible a long way. To take advantage of this current, and to husband our strength by means of it, was my first care. Little as I knew of the management of sea affairs, I succeeded in keeping our boat in the direction in which it ran, by which means we were drawn gently on, till at length the gradual diminution of its force obliged us again to have recourse to our oars; but our arms having now rested for some time, we were ready for new exertions. A little afterwards we found ourselves safely arrived at the cleft of the vessel, and fastened our boat securely to one of its timbers.

Fritz the first thing went with his young monkey on his arm to the main deck, where he found all the animals we had left on board assembled. I followed him, well pleased to observe the generous impatience he showed



to relieve the wants of the poor abandoned creatures, who, one and all, now saluted us by the sounds natural to its species! It was not so much the want of food, as the desire of seeing their accustomed human companions, which made them manifest their joy in this manner, for they had a portion of the food and water we had left them still remaining. The first thing we did was to put the young monkey to one of the goats, that he might suck; and this he did with such evident pleasure, and such odd grimaces, that he afforded us much amusement. We next examined the food and water of the other animals, taking away what was half spoiled, and adding a fresh supply, that no anxiety on their account might interrupt our enterprise. Nor did we neglect the care of renewing our own strength by a plentiful repast.

While we were seated, and appeasing the calls of hunger, Fritz and I consulted what should be our first occupation; when, to my surprise, the advice he gave was, that we should contrive a sail for our boat. — “In the name of Heaven,” cried I, “what makes you think of this at so critical a moment, when



we have so many things of indispensable necessity to arrange?" — "True, father," said Fritz; "but let me confess that I found it very difficult to row for so long a time, though I assure you I did my best, and did not spare my strength. I observed that, though the wind blew strong in my face, the current still carried us on. Now, as the current will be of no use in our way back, I was thinking that we might make the wind supply its place. Our boat will be very heavy when we have loaded it with all the things we mean to take away, and I am afraid I shall not be strong enough to row to land: so do you not think that a sail would be a good thing just now?"

"Ah ha, Mr. Fritz! You wish to spare yourself a little trouble, do you? But seriously, I perceive much good sense in your argument, and feel obliged to my privy counselor for his good advice. The best thing we can do is, to take care and not overload the boat, and thus avoid the danger of sinking, or of being obliged to throw some of our stores overboard. We will, however, set to work upon your sail; it will give us a little trouble. But come, let us begin."



I assisted Fritz to carry a pole strong enough for a mast, and another not so thick, for a sailyard. I directed him to make a hole in a plank with a chisel, large enough for the mast to stand upright in it. I then went to the sail room, and cut a large sail down to a triangular shape: I made holes along the edges, and passed cords through them. We then got a pulley, and with this and some cords, and some contrivance in the management of our materials, we produced a sail.

Fritz, after taking observations through a telescope of what was passing on land, and which we had already done several times, imparted the agreeable tidings that all was still well with our dear family. He had distinguished his mother walking tranquilly along the shore. He soon after brought me a small streamer, which he had cut from a piece of linen, and which he entreated me to tie to the extremity of the mast, as much delighted with the streamer as with the sail itself. He gave to our machine the name of *The Deliverance*; and in speaking of it, instead of calling it a *boat*, it had now always the title of *the little vessel*.



“But now, father,” said Fritz, looking kindly on me as he spoke, “as you have eased me of the labor of rowing, it is *my* turn to take care of *you*. I am thinking to make you a better contrived rudder; one that would enable you to steer the boat both with greater ease and greater safety.” — “Your thought would be a very good one,” said I, “but that I am unwilling to lose the advantage of being able to proceed this way and that, without being obliged to veer. I shall therefore fix our oars in such a manner as to enable me to steer the raft from either end.” Accordingly, I fixed bits of wood to the stem and stern of the machine, in the nature of grooves, which were calculated to spare us a great deal of trouble.

During these exertions the day advanced, and I saw that we should be obliged to pass the night in our tubs, without much progress in our task of emptying the vessel. We had promised our family to hoist a flag as a signal, if we passed the night from home, and we found the streamer precisely the thing we wanted for this purpose.

We employed the remnant of the day in



emptying the tubs of the useless ballast of stones, and putting in their place what would be of service, such as nails, pieces of cloth, and different kinds of utensils, &c., &c. The Vandals themselves could not have made a more complete pillage than we had done. The prospect before us of an entire solitude, made us devote our attention to the securing as much powder and shot as we could, as a means of catching animals for food, and of defending ourselves against wild beasts to the latest moment possible. Utensils for every kind of workmanship, of which there was a large provision in the ship, were also objects of incalculable value to us. The vessel which was now a wreck, had been sent out as a preparation for the establishment of a colony in the South Seas, and had been provided with a variety of stores not commonly included in the loading of a ship. Among the rest care had been taken to have on board considerable numbers of European cattle; but so long a voyage had proved unfavorable to the oxen and the horses, the greatest part of which had died, and the others were in so bad a condition, that it had been found ne



cessary to destroy them. The quantity of useful things which presented themselves in the store-chambers made it difficult for me to select among them, and I much regretted that circumstances compelled me to leave some of them behind. Fritz, however, already meditated a second visit; but we took good care not to lose the present occasion for securing knives and forks and spoons, and a complete assortment of kitchen utensils. In the captain's cabin we found some services of silver, dishes and plates of high-wrought metal, and a little chest filled with bottles of many sorts of excellent wine. Each of these we put into our boat. We next descended to the kitchen, which we stripped of gridirons, kettles, pots of all kinds, a small roasting-jack, &c. Our last prize was a chest of choice eatables, intended for the table of the officers, containing Westphalia hams, Bologna sausages, and other savory food. I took good care not to forget some little sacks of maize, of wheat, and other grain, and some potatoes. We next added such implements for husbandry as we could find;—shovels, hoes, spades, rakes, harrows, &c., &c. Fritz re



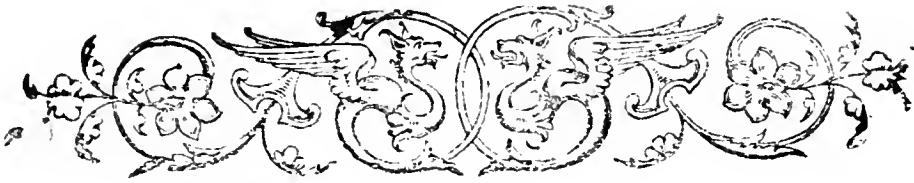
minded me that we had found sleeping on the ground both cold and hard, and prevailed upon me to increase our cargo by some hammocks, and a certain number of blankets: and as guns had hitherto been the source of his pleasures, he added such as he could find of a particular costliness or structure, together with some sabres and clasp-knives. The last articles we took were a barrel of sulphur, a quantity of ropes, some small string, and a large roll of sail-cloth. The vessel appeared to us to be in so wretched a condition, that the least tempest must make her go to pieces. It was then quite uncertain whether we should be able to approach her any more.

Our cargo was so large, that the tubs were filled to the very brim, and no inch of the boat's room was lost. The first and last of the tubs were reserved for Fritz and me to seat ourselves in and row the boat, which sunk so low in the water, that, if the sea had not been quite calm, we should have been obliged to ease her of some of the loading: we, however, used the precaution of putting on our swimming-jackets, for fear of any misfortune.



It will easily be imagined that the day had been laboriously employed. Night suddenly surprised us, and we lost all hope of returning to our family the same evening. A large blazing fire on the shore soon after greeted our sight, — the signal agreed upon for assuring us that all was well, and to bid us close our eyes in peace. We returned the compliment, by tying four lanterns with lights in them to our mast-head. This was answered, on their part, by the firing of two guns; so that both parties had reason to be satisfied and easy.

After offering up our earnest prayers for the safety of all, and not without some apprehension for our own, we resigned ourselves to sleep in our tubs, which appeared to us safer than the vessel. Our night passed tranquilly enough: my boy Fritz slept as soundly as if he had been in a bed; while I, haunted by the recollection of the nocturnal visit of the jackalls, could neither close my eyes, nor keep them from the direction of the tent. I had however, great reliance that my valiant dogs would do their duty, and was thankful to Heaven for having enabled us to preserve so good a protection.



CHAPTER VI.

A Troop of Animals in Cork Jackets.

EARLY the next morning, though scarcely light, I mounted the vessel, hoping to gain a sight of our beloved companions through a telescope. Fritz prepared a substantial breakfast of biscuit and ham; but before we sat down, we recollected that in the captain's cabin we had seen a telescope of a much superior size and power, and we speedily conveyed it to the deck. While this was doing, the brightness of the day had come on. I fixed my eye to the glass, and discovered my wife coming out of the tent and looking attentively towards the vessel, and at the same moment perceived the motion of the flag upon the shore. A load of anxiety was thus taken from my heart; for I had the certainty that all were in good health, and had escaped the dangers of the night. — “Now that I have



had a sight of your mother," said I to Fritz, "my next concern is for the animals on board, let us endeavor to save the lives of some of them, at least, and to take them with us."

"Would it be possible to make a raft, to get them all upon it, and in this way get them to shore?" asked Fritz.

"But, what a difficulty in making it, and how could we induce a cow, an ass, and a sow, either to get upon a raft, or, when there, to remain motionless and quiet? The sheep and goats one might perhaps find means to remove, they being of a more docile temper; but for the larger animals, I am at a loss how to proceed."

"My advice, father, is to tie a long rope round the sow's neck, and throw her without ceremony into the sea: her immense weight will be sure to sustain her above water; and we can draw her after the boat."

"Your idea is excellent; but unfortunately it is of no use but for the pig; and she is the one I care the least about preserving."

"Then here is another idea, father: let us tie a swimming-jacket round the body of each animal, and contrive to throw one and



all into the water ; you will see that they will swim like fish, and we can draw them after us in the same manner.

“Right, very right, my boy ; your invention is admirable : let us therefore not lose a moment in making the experiment.”

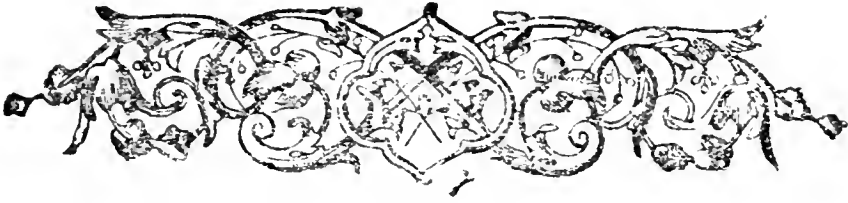
We hastened to the execution of our design : we fixed a jacket on one of the lambs, and threw it into the sea ; and full of anxious curiosity, I followed the poor beast with my eyes. He sunk at first, and I thought him drowned ; but he soon re-appeared, shaking the water from his head, and in a few seconds he had learned completely the art of swimming. After another interval, we observed that he appeared fatigued, gave up his efforts, and suffered himself to be borne along by the course of the water, which sustained and conducted him to our complete satisfaction. — “Victory !” exclaimed I, hugging my boy with delight : “these useful animals are all our own ; let us not lose a moment in adopting the same means with those that remain ; but take care not to lose our little lamb.” Fritz now would have jumped into the water to follow the poor creature, who



was still floating safely on the surface; but I stopped him till I had seen him tie on a swimming-jacket. He took with him a rope, first making a slip knot in it, and, soon overtaking the lamb, threw it round his neck, and drew him back to our boat; and then took him out of the water.

We next got four small water-butts. I emptied them, and then carefully closed them again; I united them with a large piece of sail-cloth, nailing one end to each cask. I strengthened this with a second piece of sail-cloth, and this contrivance I destined to support the cow and the ass, two casks to each, the animal being placed in the middle with a cask on either side. I added a thong of leather, stretching from the casks across the breast and haunches of the animal, to make the whole secure; and thus, in less than an hour, both my cow and my ass were equipped for swimming.

It was next the turn of the smaller animals: of these, the sow gave us the most trouble; we were first obliged to put on her a muzzle to prevent her biting; and then we tied a large piece of cork under her body. The



sheep and goats were more accommodating, and we had soon accoutred them for our adventure. And now we had succeeded in assembling our whole company on the deck, in readiness for the voyage: we tied a cord to either the horns or the neck of each animal, and to the other end of the cord a piece of wood similar to the mode used for marking nets, that it might be easy for us to take hold of the ropes, and so draw the animal to us if it should be necessary. We struck away some more of the shattered pieces of wood from the fissure of the vessel, by which we were again to pass. We began our experiment with the ass, by conducting him as near as possible to the brink of the vessel, and then suddenly shoving him off. He fell into the water, and for a moment disappeared; but we soon saw him rise, and in the action of swimming between his two barrels, with a grace which really merited our commendation.

Next came the cow's turn; and as she was infinitely more valuable than the ass, my fears increased in due proportion. The ass had swum so courageously, that he was already at a considerable distance from the ves



sel, so that there was sufficient room for our experiment on the cow. We had more difficulty in pushing her overboard, but she reached the water in as much safety as the ass had done before; she did not sink so low in it, and was no less perfectly sustained by the empty barrels; and she made her way with gravity, and, if I may so express it, a sort of dignified composure. According to this method we proceeded with our whole troop, throwing them one by one into the water, where by and by they appeared in a group floating at their ease, and seemingly well content. The sow was the only exception; she became quite furious, set up a loud squalling, and struggled with so much violence in the water, that she was carried to a considerable distance, but fortunately in a direction towards the landing-place we had in view. We had now not a moment to lose. Our last act was to put on our cork-jackets; and then we descended, without accident, through the cleft, took our station in the boat, and were soon in the midst of our troop of quadrupeds. We carefully gathered all the floating bits of wood, and fastened them to



the stern of the machine, and thus drew them after us. When every thing was adjusted, and our company in order, we hoisted our sail, which soon filling with a favorable wind, conducted us all safe to the land.

We now perceived how impossible it would have been for us to have succeeded in our enterprise without the aid of a sail; for the weight of so many animals sunk the boat so low in the water, that all our exertions to row to such a distance would have been ineffectual; while, by means of the sail, she proceeded completely to our satisfaction, bearing in her train our company of animals; nor could we help laughing heartily at the singular appearance we made. Proud of the success of so extraordinary a feat, we were in high spirits, and seated ourselves in the tubs, where we made an excellent dinner. Fritz amused himself with the monkey while I was occupied in thinking of those I had left on land, and of whom I now tried to take a view through my telescope. My last act on board the vessel had been to take one look more at those beloved beings, and I perceived my wife and the three boys all in motion, and seeming



to be setting out on some excursion; but it was in vain that I endeavored, by any thing I saw, to conjecture what their plan might be. I therefore seized the first moment of quiet to make another trial with my glass, when a sudden exclamation from Fritz filled me with alarm. — “Oh Heavens!” cried he, “we are lost!” a fish of enormous size is coming up to the boat.” — “And why lost?” said I, half angry, and yet half partaking of his fright. “Be ready with your gun, and the moment he is close upon us, we will fire upon him.” He had nearly reached the boat, and with the rapidity of lightning had seized the foremost sheep: at this instant Fritz aimed his fire so skilfully, that the balls of the gun were lodged in the head of the monster, which was an enormous shark. The fish half turned himself round in the water and hurried off to sea, leaving us to observe the lustrous smoothness of his belly, and that as he proceeded he stained the water red, which convinced us he had been severely wounded. I determined to have the best of our guns at hand the rest of the way, lest we should be again attacked by the same fish, or another of his species.



The animal being now out of sight and our fears appeased, I resumed the rudder; and as the wind drove us straight towards the bay, I took down the sail, and continued rowing till we reached a convenient spot for our cattle to land. I had then only to untie the end of the cords from the boat, and they stepped contentedly on shore. Our voyage thus happily concluded, we followed their example.

I had already been surprised and uneasy at finding none of my family looking out for us on the shore; we could not, however, set out in search of them, till we had disencumbered our animals of their swimming apparatus. Scarcely had we entered upon this employment, when I was relieved by the joyful sounds which reached our ears, and filled our hearts with rapture. It was my wife and the youngest boys who uttered them, the latter of whom were soon close up to us, and their mother followed not many steps behind, each and all of them in excellent health, and eager for our salutations. When the first burst of happiness at meeting had subsided, we all sat down on the grass, and I began to



give them an account of our occupations in the vessel, of our voyage, and of all our different plans and their success, in the order in which they occurred. My wife could find no words to express her surprise and joy at seeing so many useful animals round us; and the hearty affection she expressed for them, in language the most simple and touching, increased my satisfaction at the completion of our enterprise.

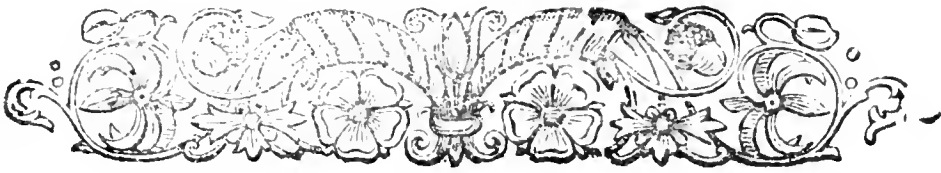
“Yes,” said Fritz, a little consequentially, “for this once the privy-counsellor has tried his talents at invention.”

“This indeed is very true,” replied I; “in all humility have I to confess, that to Fritz alone all praise belongs, and that to his sagacity it is that we are indebted for our success. His mother could not refrain from giving him a hearty kiss. “Our gratitude is due to both,” said she; “for both have labored to give us the possession of this troop of animals, an acquisition beyond any other, agreeable and serviceable to us in the situation in which it has pleased Providence to place us.”

Ernest and Jack now ran to the boat, and



"I noticed that Jack wore a belt of yellow skin, in which were placed a pair of pistols."



began to shout their admiration of the mast, the sail, and the flag, desiring their brother to explain to them how all the things they saw had been effected and what he himself did of them. In the meantime we began to unpack our cargo, while Jack stole aside and amused himself with the animals, took off the jackets from the sheep and goats, bursting from time to time into shouts of laughter at the ridiculous figure of the ass, who stood before them adorned with his two casks and his swimming apparatus, and braying loud enough to make us deaf.

By and by I perceived, with surprise, that Jack had round his waist a belt of metal covered with yellow skin, in which were fixed two pistols. "In the name of heaven," exclaimed I, "where did you procure this curious costume, which gives you the look of a smuggler?"

"From my own manufactory," replied he; "and if you cast your eyes upon the dogs, you will see more of my specimens."

Accordingly I looked at them, and perceived that each had on a collar similar to the belt round Jack's waist, with, however,



the exception of the collars being armed with nails, the points of which were outwards, and exhibited a formidable appearance. "And is it you, Mr. Jack," cried I, "who have invented and executed these collars and your belt?"

"Yes, father, they are indeed my invention, with a little of my mother's assistance when it was necessary to use the needle."

"But where did you get the leather and the thread and the needle?"

"Fritz's Jackall furnished the first," answered my wife; and as to the last, a good mother of a family is always provided with them. Then have I not an enchanted bag, from which I draw out such articles as I stand in need of? So, if you have a particular fancy for any thing, you have only to acquaint me with it." I tenderly embraced her, to express my thanks for this effort to amuse by so agreeable a raillery, and Jack too came in for his share both of the caresses and our hearty commendations. But Fritz was both discontented and angry on finding that Jack had taken upon him to dispose of his Jackall, and to cut his beautiful skin into



strips. He, however, concealed his ill-humor as well as he could; but presently he called out suddenly, holding his nose as he spoke, "What a filthy smell! Does it perchance proceed from you, Mr. Carrier? Is this the perfume we may expect from your manufactory? It is rather yours than mine," replied Jack, in a resentful tone; "for it was your Jackall which you hung up in the sun to dry." "And which would have been dried in a whole skin, if it had not pleased your sublime fancy to cut it to pieces, instead of leaving me the power to do what I please with my own booty," answered his brother.

"Son Fritz," said I, in a somewhat angry tone, "this is not generous on your part. Of what importance is it who cut up the skin of the Jackall, if by so doing it has contributed to our use? My dear children, we are here in this desert island, in just such a situation as that of our first parents when they were driven out of the garden of Eden; it was still in their power to enjoy happiness in the fertile land in which God permitted them to live; and this happiness was to proceed from their obedience, from the work of their hands,



and the sweat of their brow: a thousand and a thousand blessings were granted for their use, but they suffered the passions of jealousy, envy, and hatred to take root in their bosoms: Cain killed his brother Abel, and thus plunged his unhappy parents into the deepest affliction, so that he and his race were cursed by God. This is the horrid crime to which the habit of disputing may conduct. Let us then avoid such an evil, let us share one with the other in every benefit bestowed upon us, and from this moment may the words *yours* and *mine* be banished from our happy circle! What is discovered or procured by one of you, should be equally for the service of all, and belong to all without distinction. It is quite certain, Jack, that the belt round your waist, not being dry, has an offensive smell; the pleasure of wearing what you had ingeniously contrived makes you willing to bear with the inconvenience: but we should never make our own pleasure the pain of another. I therefore desire that you will take it off and place it in the sun to dry, and take care that it does not shrink during the operation; and then you can join your bro-



thers, and assist them to throw the jackall into the sea.”

Fritz's ill-humor was already over; but Jack, whose temper was less docile, still retained the belt, and walked about in it with somewhat of an air of resistance. His brothers continued their warfare, pretending to avoid him, and crying out — “What a smell! What a smell!” till at length Jack, tired with the part he had been acting, suddenly stripped off the belt, and joined the others in dragging the dead jackall to the sea, where he no longer offended any one.

Perceiving that no preparations were making for supper, I told Fritz to bring us the Westphalia ham. The eyes of all were now fixed upon me with astonishment, believing that I could only be in jest; when Fritz returned, displaying with exultation a large ham, which we had begun to cut in the morning. “A ham!” cried one and all; “a ham! and ready dressed! What a nice supper we shall have!” said they, clapping their hands to give a hearty welcome to the bearer of so fine a treat. — “It comes quite in the nick of time too,” interrupted I; “for, &c.”



judge by appearances, a certain careful steward I could name seems to have intended to send us supperless to bed, little thinking, I suppose, that a long voyage by water is apt to increase the appetite."

"I will tell you presently," replied my wife, "what it was that prevented me from providing a supper for you all at an early hour: your ham, however, makes you ample amends; and I have something in my hand with which I shall make a pretty side-dish; in the twinkling of an eye you shall see it make its entrance." She now showed us about a dozen of turtle's eggs, and then hurried away to make an omelette of some of them.

"Look, father," said Ernest, "if they are not the very same which Robinson Crusoe found in his island! See, they are like white balls, covered with a skin like wetted parchment! We found them upon the sands along the shore."

"Your account is perfectly just, my dear boy," said I: "by what means did you make so useful a discovery?" — "Oh, that is part of our history," interrupted my wife; "for I



also have a history to relate, when you will be so good as to listen to it."

"Hasten then, my love, and get your pretty side-dish ready, and we will have the history for the desert. In the meantime I will relieve the cow and the ass from their jackets. Come along, boys, and give me your help. — I got up, and they all followed me gaily to the shore. We were not long in effecting our purpose with the cow and the ass, who were animals of a quiet and kind temper; but when it was the sow's turn, our success was neither so easy nor so certain; for no sooner had we untied the rope than she escaped from us, and ran so fast that none of us could catch her. The idea occurred to Ernest of sending the two dogs after her, who caught at her ears, and sent her back, while we were half deafened with the hideous noise she made; at last she suffered us to take off her cork jacket. We now laid the accoutrements across the ass's back, and returned to the kitchen; our slothful Ernest highly delighted that he was likely in future to have our loads carried by a servant.

In the meanwhile the kind mother had pre-



pared the omelette, and spread a table-cloth on the end of the cask of butter, upon which she had placed some of the plates and silver spoons we had brought from the ship. The ham was in the middle, and the omelette and the cheese opposite to each other; and altogether made a figure not to be despised by the inhabitants of a desert island. By and by the two dogs, the fowls, the pigeons, the sheep, and the goats, had all assembled round us, which gave us something like the air of sovereigns of the country. It did not please the geese and ducks to add themselves to the number of these our loyal subjects: they deserted us for a marshy swamp, where they found a kind of little crabs in great abundance, and which furnished a delicious food for them, and relieved us of the care of providing for their support.

When we had finished our repast, I bade Fritz present our company with a bottle of Canary wine, which we had brought from the captain's cabin, and I desired my wife to indulge us with the promised history.



CHAPTER VII.

*Second Journey of Discovery, performed by the
Mother of the Family.*

“You pretend,” said my wife, with a little malicious smile, “to be curious about my history, yet you have not let me speak a single word in all this time; but the longer a torrent is pent up, the longer it flows when once let loose. Now then that you are in the humor to listen, I shall give vent to a certain little movement of vanity which is fluttering at my heart. — Not, however, to intrude too long upon your patience, we will skip the first day of your absence, in the course of which nothing new took place, except my anxiety on your account, which confined me for the most part to the spot from whence you embarked, and from which I could see the vessel. But this morning, when I was made happy by the sight of your signal, and had set up mine in return, I looked about, before



the boys were up, in hopes to find a shady place where we might now and then retire from the heat of the sun; but I found not a single tree. This made me reflect a little seriously on our situation. — It will be impossible, said I to myself, to remain in this place with no shelter but a miserable tent, under which the heat is even more excessive than without. Courage then! pursued I; my husband and my eldest son are at this moment employed for the general good; why should not I be active and enterprising also? why not undertake, with my youngest sons, to do something that shall add some one comfort to our existence? I will pass over with them to the other side of the river, and with my own eyes examine the country respecting which my husband and Fritz have related such wonders. I will try to find out some well-shaded agreeable spot, in which we may all be settled. I now cast another look towards the vessel; but perceiving no sign of your return, I determined to share a slight dinner with the boys, and then we set out resolutely, on a journey of discovery for a habitation better sheltered from the sun.



“In the morning, Jack had slipped to the side of the tent where Fritz had hung the jackall, and with his knife, which he sharpened from time to time upon the rock, he cut some long strips of skin from the back of the animal, and afterwards set about cleaning them. Ernest discovered him in this uncleanly occupation; and as he is, as we all know, a little delicate, and afraid to soil his fingers, he not only refused to give Jack any assistance, but thought fit to sneer a little at the currier-like trade which he had engaged in. Jack, who, as we also know, has not the most patient temper in the world, raised his hand to give him a little cuff. Ernest made his escape, more alarmed, I believe, by Jack’s dirty hands, than by the expected blow: while I, for my part, ran to set them right, and to give a mother’s reproof to both. Jack persisted that he had a justification full and undeniable in the great usefulness of the said dirty work; ‘for,’ observed he, ‘it is intended to make some collars, which I shall arm with spikes, and the dogs will wear them for our defense.’ I saw in an instant that Ernest had been the aggressor, and on him



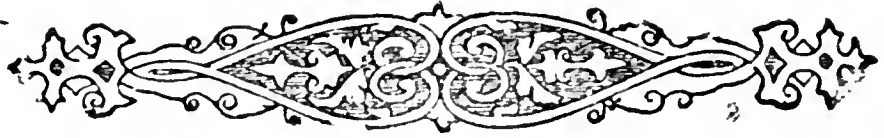
fell the reproof: I represented how little a squeamishness like his suited with the difficulties of our situation, in which one and all were called upon to assist in any employment that should promise to contribute to the general good.

“Jack returned to his strips of skin, the cleaning of which he completed very cleverly. When he had finished this part of his undertaking, he looked out from the chest of nails those that were longest, and which had the largest and flattest heads; these he stuck through the bits of skin intended for the collars, at small distances. He next cut a strip of sail-cloth the same breadth as the leather, and, laying it along on the heads of the nails, politely proposed to me the agreeable occupation of sewing them together, to prevent the heads of the nails from injuring the dogs. I begged to be excused; but seeing the good-humor with which he tried to sew them for himself, and that, with all his good-will, it was too hard a task, I rewarded him by doing it myself; — few mothers refuse the sacrifice of a little personal convenience, to afford delight to a virtuous child.



“But now having yielded the first time, I found I had made myself liable to further claims. The next thing was a belt for himself, which he had manufactured of the same materials, and was impatient to see completed, it being intended to contain his pistols. ‘We shall see,’ said he, strutting about as he spoke, ‘if the jackalls will dare to attack us now.’ — ‘But, dear Jack, you do not foresee what will happen; — a piece of skin not entirely dry is always liable to shrink when exposed to the heat; so, after all, you will not be able to make use of it.’ My little workman, as I said this, struck his forehead, and betrayed other marks of impatience. — ‘What you say is true,’ said he, ‘and I had not well considered; but I know of an effectual remedy.’ He then took a hammer and some nails, and stretched his strips of leather on a plank, which he laid in the sun to dry quickly, thus preventing the possibility of their shrinking. I applauded his invention, and promised him I would not fail to give you a full account of his proceedings.

“I next assembled them round me, and informed them of my plans for an excursion,



and you may believe I heard nothing like a dissenting voice. They lost not a moment in preparing themselves; they examined their arms, their game-bags, looked out the best clasp-knives, and cheerfully undertook to carry the provision bags; while I, for my share, was loaded with a large flask of water and a hatchet, for which I thought it likely we might find a use. I also took the light gun which belongs to Ernest, and gave him in return a carbine, which might be loaded with several balls at once. We took some refreshment, and then sallied forth, attended by the two dogs for our escort. Turk, who had already accompanied you in the same direction, seemed well aware that he knew the way, and proceeded at the head of the party in quality of a conductor. We arrived at the place at which you had crossed the river, and succeeded in passing over, though not without difficulty.

“As we advanced, I reflected that our safety depended in some measure on the two boys, because it was they only who knew how to use the guns. I now for the first time began to feel how fortunate it was that you



had accustomed them from infancy to face danger of every kind; but I am now convinced that the parent who adopts a hardy scheme of education acts the wisest part. But now for the passing of the river.

“Ernest was first in reaching the other side. The little Francis entreated me to carry him on my back, which was difficult enough. At length we found means to manage pretty well, thanks to Jack, who relieved me of my gun and the hatchet. But for himself, finding he was scarcely able to stand under his added weight, he resolved to go straight into the water at once, rather than run the risk of slipping, by stepping on the loose wet pieces of stone so heavily loaded. I myself had great difficulty to keep myself steady with the dear little burden at my back, who joined his hands round my neck, and leaned with all his weight upon my shoulders. After having filled my flask with river water, we proceeded on our way till we had reached to the top of the hill which you described to us as so enchanting, and where I partook of the pleasure you had experienced. I continued for some time to look around and admire



in silence; and for the first time since the event of our dreadful accident at sea, I felt my heart begin to open to a sense of enjoyment and of hope.

“In casting my eyes over the vast extent before me, I had observed a small wood of the most inviting aspect. I had so long sighed for a little shade, that I resolved to bend our course towards it: for this, however, it was necessary to go a long way through a strong kind of grass which reached above the heads of the little boys; an obstacle which, on trial, we found too difficult to overcome. We therefore resolved to walk along the river, and turn at last upon the wood. We found traces of your footsteps, and took care to follow them till we had come to a place which seemed to lead directly to it; but here again we were interrupted by the height and thickness of the grass, which nothing but the most exhausting endeavors could have enabled us to get through. Jack was now loitering a little behind, and I frequently turned round to observe what he could be doing: at last I saw him tearing off some handfuls of grass, and wiping his clothes with



it, and then shake his pocket-handkerchief, which was wet, and lay it on his shoulders to dry. I hastened back to inquire what had happened.

“ ‘Oh, mother,’ said he, ‘I believe all the water of the river we have crossed has got into my pockets: only see, every thing I had in them is wet, pistols, turfs, every thing.’

“ ‘Good Heavens!’ interrupted I in great alarm, ‘had you put your pistols in your pocket? They were not loaded, I hope?’

“ ‘I am sure I do not know, mother; I only put them there while my belt was drying, that I might always have them about me.’

“ ‘Thoughtless, yet fortunate boy!’ exclaimed I. ‘Do you know what an escape you have had? If with the suddenness of your motions the pistols had gone off, they would infallibly have killed you. Take care, I entreat you, not to commit such an imprudence in future.’ — ‘There is nothing, I believe, to fear, mother, for this time,’ replied he, holding the pistol so as to let the water run out of them. And in reality I perceived by the condition they were in, that there was little danger of their going off. While we

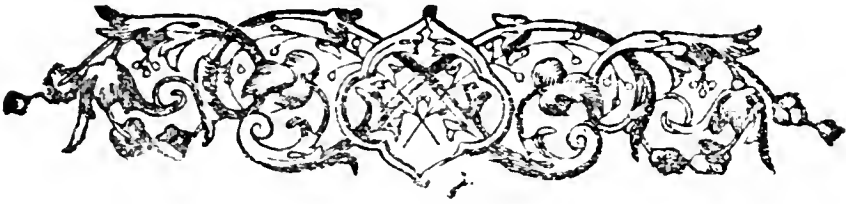


were talking of what had happened, our attention was interrupted by a sudden noise, and looking about, we perceived a large bird rising from the thickest part of the grass, and mounting in the air. Each of the boys prepared to fire, but before they could be ready, the bird was out of the reach of shot. Ernest was bitterly disappointed, and instantly exchanged the gun for the carbine I had given him, crying, 'What a pity! If I had but had the lightest gun! if the bird had not got away so fast, I would lay any wager I should have killed him.'

“ ‘The mischief was, no doubt, that you did not let him know before-hand, that it was your pleasure he should wait till you could be quite ready,’ observed I, laughing.

“ ‘But, mother, how could I possibly suppose that the bird could fly away in less than the twinkling of an eye? Ah, if one would but come at this very moment!’

“ ‘A good sportsman, Ernest, always holds himself in readiness, this being, as I understand, one of his great arts; for you must know, that birds do not send messages to give notice of their coming.’



“‘I wish I could but know,’ said Jack, what bird it was; I never saw any the least like it.’

“‘I am sure it was an eagle,’ said the little Francis, ‘for I have read in my book of fables, that an eagle can carry off a sheep; and this bird was terribly large.’

“‘O yes,’ said Ernest scoffingly, ‘as if all large birds must be eagles! Why do you not know that there are some birds much larger even than eagles? The ostrich, for example, which travelers sometimes name the Condor or the Candor. I must confess it would have afforded me the highest pleasure to have examined this bird minutely.’

“‘If you had had time to examine him, you would have had time to kill him,’ said I; ‘but as the opportunity is gone, let us look for the place in the grass from which he mounted; we may judge at least of his size by the mark he will have left there.’ The boys now all scampered away to the place, when suddenly a second bird, exactly like the first, except that he was a little larger, rushed out with a great noise and mounted above their heads.

“The boys remained stupid with astonish-



ment, following him with their eyes and open mouths without speaking a word, while for my own part I could not help laughing heartily. 'Oh! such fine sportsmen as we have here!' cried I: 'they will never let us be in want of game, I plainly perceive. *Ah, if one would but come at this very moment!*' Ernest, always a little disposed to vent uneasiness by crying, now began to whimper; while Jack, with a curious mixture of tragicomic bravery upon his features, his eyes darting upon the mountain traveler, takes off his hat, makes a profound bow, and roars out as if for the bird to hear: 'Have the goodness, Mr. Traveler, to indulge me once more with a little visit, only for a single minute: you cannot imagine what good sort of people we are: I entreat that we may have the pleasure of seeing you once again ——' We now minutely examined the place from which the birds had mounted, and found a kind of large nest formed of dry plants, of clumsy workmanship; the nest was empty, with the exception of some broken shells of eggs. I inferred from this, that their young had lately been hatched; and observing at



this moment a rustling motion among some plants of shorter growth, at some distance from the spot on which we stood, I concluded that the young covey were scampering away in that direction; but as the motion soon ceased, we had no longer a guide to conduct us to their retreat. We next reached a little wood; and here our son Ernest had an opportunity of recognizing many of the originals of the engravings in his books of natural history, and of displaying his knowledge, or his ignorance, to his heart's content. A prodigious quantity of unknown birds were skipping and warbling on the branches of the trees, without betraying the least alarm at our vicinity. The boys wanted to fire on them; but this I absolutely forbade, and with the less scruple as the trees were of so enormous a height as to be out of gun-shot reach. No, my dear husband, you cannot possibly form an idea of the trees we now beheld! You must somehow have missed this wood; or so extraordinary a sight could not have escaped your observation. What appeared to us at a distance to be a wood, was only a group of about fourteen of them, the trunks



of which seemed to be supported in their upright position by arches on each side, these arches being formed by the roots of the tree.

“Jack climbed with considerable trouble upon one of these arch-formed roots, and with a packthread in his hand measured the actual circumference of the tree itself. He found that it measured more than fifteen braches (the brache is equal to twenty-two inches and a half). I made thirty-two steps in going round one of those giant productions at the roots; and its height from the ground to the place where the branches begin to shoot, may be about thirty-six braches. The twigs of the tree are strong and thick; its leaves moderately large in size, and bearing some resemblance to the hazel tree of Europe; but I was unable to discover that it bore any fruit. The soil immediately round and under its branches produced in great abundance a short thick kind of plant, unmixed with any of the thistle kind, and of a perfectly smooth surface. The large breadth of shade which presented itself, seemed to invite us to make this spot the place of our repose; and my predilection for it grew so strong, that I re-

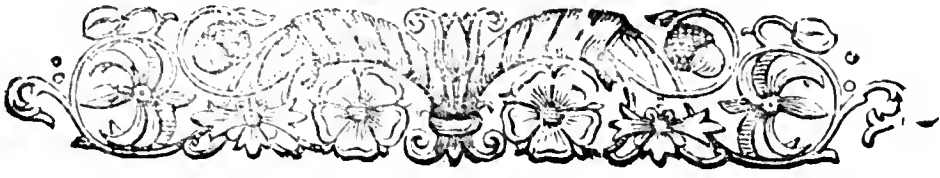


solved to go no further, but to enjoy its delicious coolness till it should be time to return. I sat down in this verdant elysium with my three sons around me. We took out our provision bags: a charming stream formed to increase the coolness and beauty of the scene, flowed at our feet, and supplied us with a fresh and salutary beverage. Our dogs were not long in reaching us; they had remained behind, sauntering about the skirts of the wood. To my great surprise, they did not ask for any thing to eat, but lay down quietly, and were soon asleep at our feet. For my own part, I felt that I could never tire of beholding and admiring this enchanting spot; it occurred to me, that if we could but contrive a kind of tent that could be fixed in one of the trees, we might safely come and make our abode here. I had found nothing in any other direction that suited us so well in every respect: and I resolved to look no further. When we had shared our dinner among us and well rested from our fatigue, we set out on our return, again keeping close to the river, half expecting to see along the shore some of the pieces or other vestiges of



the vessel, which the waves might have washed there.

“But before we left our enchanting retreat, Jack entreated me to stay, and finish sewing the linen strips to his leather belt. The little coxcomb had so great an ambition to strut about and exhibit himself in this new ornament, that he had taken the trouble to carry the piece of wood, on which he had nailed his skin to dry, along with him through the whole of our expedition. Finding that the skin was really dry, I granted his request, preferring, since work I must, to do it now when I had the advantage of being in the shade. When I had finished, he eagerly fastened on the belt, and placed his pistols in it; he set himself before us in a marching step, with the knuckles of his hand turned back upon his hip, leaving to Ernest the care of putting on the dogs’ collars; which he insisted should be done, for it would give them, he said, a martial air. The self-imagined hero was all impatience for you and Fritz to see him in his new accoutrement; so that I had enough to do to walk quick enough to keep sight of him; for in a country where no



track of the foot of man is to be found, we might easily lose each other. I became more tranquil respecting him when we had got once more together on the sea shore; for, as I expected, we found there pieces of timber, poles, large and small chests, and other articles which I knew had come from the vessel. None of us, however, were strong enough to bring them away; we therefore contented ourselves with dragging all we could reach to the dry sands, beyond the reach of the waves at high water. Our dogs, for their part, were fully employed in catching crabs, which they drew with their paws to the shore as the waves washed them up, and on which they made an excellent repast. I now understood that it was this sort of prey which had appeased their hunger before they joined us at dinner. Heaven be praised, cried I, that our animals have found means to procure sustenance at so cheap a rate! for I really began to think that, with their enormous appetites, they might some day have taken it into their heads to eat their masters.

“We now suddenly cast our eyes on Flora, whom we perceived employed in turning over a



round substance she had found in the sands, some pieces of which she swallowed from time to time. Ernest also perceived her motions, and did us the favor, with his usual composure, to pronounce just these words:—‘They are turtle’s eggs!’

“‘Run, my children,’ cried I, ‘and get as many of them as you can; they are excellent, and I shall have the greatest pleasure in being able to regale our dear travelers on their return with so new and delicious a dish.’ We found it difficult to make Flora leave the eggs, to which she had taken a great fancy. At length, however, we succeeded in collecting near two dozen of them, which we secured in our provision-bags. When we had concluded this affair, we by accident cast our eyes upon the sea, and to our astonishment perceived a sail, which seemed to be joyfully approaching towards the land. I knew not what to imagine; but Ernest exclaimed that it was you and Fritz; and we soon had the happiness of being convinced that it was indeed our well-beloved! We ran eagerly towards the river, which Jack and Ernest recrossed as before, by leaping from one great stone to



another; while I also resumed my burden of little Francis at my back, and in this manner soon arrived at the place of your landing, when we had nothing further to do but to throw ourselves into your arms!"

"And you think we could set up a tent in one of those giant trees at a distance of sixty-six feet from the ground! And by what means are we to ascend this tree? for at present I have no clear view of this important part of the subject."

I perceived a tear stealing into my wife's eye, that she could not prevail upon me to think as she wished of her discovery, and that I treated the subject of her giant trees with so little respect: I therefore endeavored to soothe and relieve her somewhat wounded sensibility.

"Do you recollect," said she, "the large limetree in the public walk of the town we lived in; and the pretty little room which had been built among its branches, and the flight of stairs which led to it? What should hinder us from effecting such a contrivance in one of my giant trees, which afford even superior facilities in the enormous size and



strength of their branches, and the peculiar manner of their growth?"

"Well, well, we shall see about it. In the meanwhile, my boys, let us extract a little lesson in arithmetic, from the subject of these marvelous trees; for this, at least, will be deriving a real benefit from them. Tell me, learned Mr. Ernest, how many feet there are in thirty-six braches? for that, your mother assures us, is the height of the trees."

Ernest. — To answer this question, I must know first how many feet or inches the brache contains.

Father — The brache, or half-ell, contains one foot ten inches, or twenty-two inches. Now then make your calculation.

Ernest. — I do not find it so easy as I thought. You must help me, Fritz: you are older than I am.

Fritz. — With all my heart. First we take thirty-six braches; then multiply 36 by 22, the number of inches each brache contains, and you have 792; divide this by 12, the number of inches in a foot, and it will give us 66 for the number of feet. Is that right, father?



Father. — Yes, quite right. So, my dear wife, you will have every evening to climb sixty-six feet to get to bed, which, as we have no ladder, is not the easiest thing imaginable. Now then let us see how many feet the tree is in circumference, taking it round the roots. Your mother found that she walked round it in thirty-two steps. Tell us then, Ernest, how many feet do you think these thirty-two steps would make?

Ernest. — You always ask me the things that I know nothing at all about: you should tell me, at least, how many feet there are in a step.

Father. — Well, say two feet and a half to each step.

Ernest. — Twice 32 makes 64; the half of 32 is 16; which added to 64 makes 80 feet.

Father. — Very well. Tell me now, if you recollect the proper term in geometry for the circumference of a circle, or say of a tree, since we are talking of trees.

Ernest. — Oh, you may be sure that I could not forget that it is called the periphery.

Father. — Right. And what is the term



for any line which may be drawn from one point of the periphery to another passing through the centre? Now, Jack, you may show us what a great geometrician you intend to be.

Jack. — I believe it is called the diameter.

Father. — So far right. Next, can you tell me what is the diameter of a periphery of eighty feet, and what distance there is between the extremities of the roots of the giant tree and its trunk?

The boys all began to reckon, and soon one said one number, one another, at random; but Fritz called out louder than the rest, that the distance was twenty-six feet.

Father. — You are pretty near. Tell me, did you make a calculation, or was it a mere guess?

Fritz. — No, Father, not a guess; but I will tell you: in the town in which we lived, I have often taken notice that the hatter, when he was about to bind the edge of a hat, always measured three times the length of the diameter, and a trifle over, for the quantity of ribbon he should use.

Father. — So; height from the ground to



the branches, sixty-six feet ; thickness, eight feet in diameter, and twenty-eight feet distance from the extremities of the roots to the trunk ; they really, with propriety, may be called giant trees.

We now performed our devotions, and retired to rest, grateful to find ourselves once more together, and in health. We soon closed our eyes, and enjoyed tranquil slumbers till break of day.

CHAPTER VIII.

Construction of a Bridge.

WHEN my wife and I awoke the next morning, we resumed the question of our change of abode. I observed to her, that it was a matter of difficulty, and that we might have reason to repent such a step. "My own opinion is," said I, "that we had better remain here, where Providence seems to have conducted us ; the place is favorable to our personal safety, and is near the vessel, from



which we may continue to enrich ourselves we are on all sides protected by the rocks; it is an asylum inaccessible but by sea, or by the passage of the river, which is not easily accomplished. Let us then have patience yet a little longer at least, till we have got all that can be removed, or that would be useful to us, from the ship."

My wife replied, that the intense heat of the sands was insupportable; that by remaining, we lost all hope of procuring fruits of any kind, and must live on oysters, or on such wild birds as that we found so unpalatable. "As for the safety you boast of," pursued she, "the rocks did not prevent our receiving a visit from the jackalls; nor is it improbable that tigers or other animals might follow their example. Lastly, as to the treasures we might continue to draw from the vessel, I renounce them with all my heart. We are already in possession of provisions and other useful things; and, to say the truth, my heart is always filled with distressing apprehensions, when you and Fritz are exposed to the danger of that perfidious element the sea."



“We will then think seriously of the matter; but let us have a well-digested scheme of operation before we leave this spot for your favorite wood. First, we must contrive a store-house among the rocks for our provisions and other things, and to which, in case of invasion in the wood, we can retreat and defend ourselves. This agreed, the next thing is to throw a bridge across the river, if we are to pass it with all our family and baggage.”

“A bridge!” exclaimed my wife: “can you possibly think of such a thing? If we stay while you build a bridge, we may consider ourselves as fixed for life. Why should we not cross the river as we did before? The ass and the cow will carry all we possess upon their backs.”

“But do you recollect, that to keep what they carry dry, they must not perform their journey as they did from the vessel? For this reason, then, if for no other, we must contrive a bridge. We shall want also some sacks and baskets to contain our different matters; you may therefore set about making these, and I will undertake the bridge,

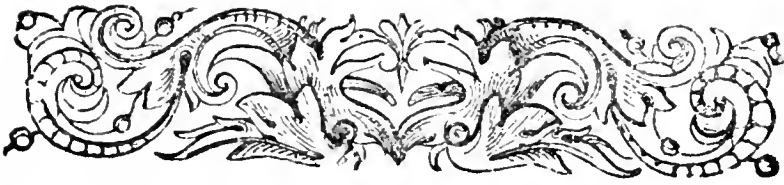


which, the more I consider, the more I find to be of indispensable necessity; for the stream will, no doubt, at times increase, and the passage become impracticable in any other way. At this moment it would be found so for our shortest legged animals, and I am sure you would not wish to see them drowned."

"Well, then, a bridge let there be, said my wife, and you will leave our stock of gunpowder here, I hope; for I am never easy with it so near us: a thunder-storm, or some thoughtless action of one of the boys, might expose us to serious dangers."

"You are right, my love; and I will carefully attend to your suggestion. We will keep on hand only a sufficient quantity for daily use; I will contrive a place in the rock for the rest, where it will be safe from the chance of fire or dampness. It is an article which, according to the use which is made of it, may become, on the one hand, a most dangerous enemy, and, on the other, a most useful friend."

Thus, then, we decided the important question of removing to a new abode: after which



we fixed upon a plan of labor for the day, and then awaked the boys. Their delight on hearing of our project may easily be conceived, but they expressed their fear that it would be a long while before a bridge could be built; a single hour appearing an age to them, with such a novelty in view as the prospect of removing to the wood, to live under the giant trees. They, in the fulness of their joy, entreated that the place might be called *The promised Land*.

We now began to look about for breakfast, Fritz taking care not to neglect his monkey, who sucked one of the goats as contentedly as if she had been its mother. My wife undertook to milk another, and then the cow, and afterwards gave some of the milk to each of the children; with a part of what remained she made a sort of soup with biscuits, and the rest she put into one of the flasks, to accompany us in our expedition. During this time, I was preparing the boat for another journey to the vessel, to bring away a sufficient quantity of planks and timbers for the bridge. After breakfast we set out; and now I took with me Ernest as well as



Fritz, that we might accomplish our object in a shorter time.

We rowed stoutly till we reached the current, which soon drew us on beyond the bay; but scarcely had we passed a little islet, lying to one side of us, than we perceived a prodigious quantity of seagulls and other birds. I had a curiosity to discover what could be the reason of such an assemblage of these creatures. I steered for the spot; but, finding that the boat made but little way, I hoisted my sail.

To Ernest our expedition afforded the highest delight. He was in ecstasies at seeing the sail begin to swell, and the motion of the streamer in the air. Fritz, on his part, did not for a moment take his eyes from the islet where the birds were. Presently he suddenly exclaimed, I see what it is; the birds are all pecking, tooth and beak, at a monstrous fish, which lies dead upon the soil."

I approached near enough to step upon the land, and after bringing the boat to an anchor with a heavy stone, we stole softly up to the birds. We soon perceived that the object which attracted them was in reality an



enormous fish, which had been thrown there by the sea. So eagerly were they occupied with the feast, that not one of them attempted to fly off. We observed with astonishment the extreme voracity of this plumed group; each bird was so intent upon its prey, that we might have killed great numbers of them with our sticks alone. Fritz did not cease to express his wonder at the monstrous size of the animal, and asked me by what means he could have got there?

“I believe,” answered I, “you were yourself the means: there is every appearance that it is the very shark you wounded yesterday. See, here are the two balls which you discharged at its head.”

“Yes, yes, it is the very same,” said my young hero, skipping about for joy: I well remember I had two balls in my gun, and here they are, lodged in his hideous head.”

“I grant it is hideous enough,” continued I; “its aspect even when dead makes one shudder, particularly when I recollect how easy it would have been for him to have devoured us. See what a huge mouth he has, and what a rough and prickly skin! one



might almost use it for a file; and his length must be above twenty feet. We ought to be thankful to Providence, and a little to our Fritz also, for having delivered us from such a monster! But let us take away with us some pieces of his skin, for I have an idea that it may in some way or other be useful to us. But how to get at him is the difficulty."

Ernest drew out the iron ramrod from his gun, and by striking with it to right and left among the birds, soon dispersed them. Fritz and I then advanced and cut several long strips of the skin from the head of the shark, with which we were proceeding to our boat, when I observed, lying on the ground, some planks and timbers which had recently been cast by the sea on this little island. On measuring the longest, we perceived they would answer our purpose; and, with the assistance of the crow and a lever which we had brought with us, found means to get them into the boat, and thus spare ourselves the trouble of proceeding to the vessel. With great exertion of our strength, we contrived to bind the timbers together, with the planks



upon them, in the manner of a raft, and tied them to the end of the boat; so that, through this adventure, we were ready to return in four hours from the time of departure, and might boast of having done a good day's work. I accordingly pushed again for the current, which soon drove us out to sea; then I tacked about, and resumed the direct rout for the bay. All this succeeded to my utmost wishes; I unfurled my sail, and a brisk wind soon conveyed us to our landing-place.

While we were sailing, Fritz, at my request, had nailed the strips of skin we cut from the shark to the mast to dry; and he now observed to me that this was wrong, as they had taken its round shape in drying, and could not be made flat again.

"That was precisely my intention," replied I; "they will be more useful to us round than flat; besides, you have still some left, which you may dry flat; and then we shall have a fine provision of shagreen, if we can find a good method to rub off the sharp points, and afterwards to polish it."

"I thought," said Ernest, "that shagreen was made of ass's skin." "And you were



not mistaken," rejoined I; "the best shagreen is made in Turkey, Persia, and Tartary, from skin taken from the back of the ass and the horse. While the skin is yet moist, it is stretched upon a kind of hard fat; they then beat the skin, by which means the fat is incorporated, and gives the surface the appearance of a kind of file: but very good shagreen is also made from the skin of sea-fish, particularly in France."

Ernest asked his brother if he knew why the mouth of the shark is not, as in other animals, placed in the middle of the snout, but directly under. Fritz confessed his inability to answer this question.

"I suppose," rejoined Ernest, "that the mouth of the shark is thus placed, with the intention of preventing him from depopulating the sea and the land. With so excessive a voraciousness of appetite as he possesses, nothing would escape him if he had the power to seize his prey without turning his body: but as it is, there is time enough for a smaller animal to make his escape."

"Well reasoned, my young philosopher," cried I; "and though we should not always



be able to comprehend the intention of the Creator in the objects which surround us, at least the conjectures we are induced to form respecting them cannot fail of being a useful exercise to the mind.”

We were once more landed safely on our shore, but no one of our family appeared. We called to them as loud as we could, which was answered by the same sounds in return, and in a few minutes my wife appeared between her two little boys returning from the river, a rising piece of ground having concealed her from our sight: each carried a handkerchief in hand, which appeared filled with some new prize; and little Francis had a small fishing-net formed like a bag and strung upon a stick, which he carried on his shoulder. No sooner did they hear our voices, than they flew to meet us, surprised at our quick return. Jack reached us before the rest; and his first act was to open the handkerchief he held, and pour out a large number of lobsters at our feet: their mother and little Francis produced each as many more, forming all together a prodigious heap, and all alive; so that we were sure of excellent din-



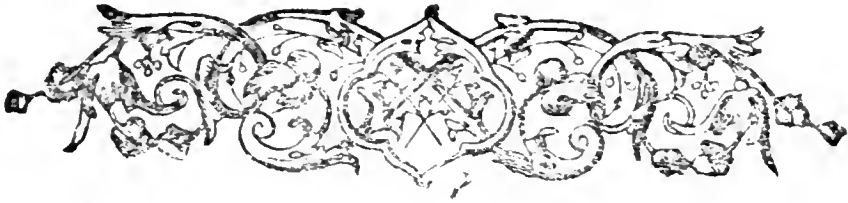
ners for some days at least. Some of the animals tried to escape in different directions; and the boys, in following them, were kept in full chase, sometimes pleased and sometimes angry; sometimes laughing, sometimes scolding at the bootless trouble they were engaged in; for no sooner had they seized on the deserter, than ten more had followed his example.

“Now, have I not been very lucky, papa?” said little Francis; “for you must know it was I who found them out. Look, there are more than two hundred of them, and see how large they are, and what fine claws they have! I am sure they will be quite delicious!”

Father. — Excellent indeed, my little fellow, and particularly if it was your industry that first discovered them.

Jack. — Yes, father, it was Francis who saw them first; but it was I who ran to tell mamma, and it was I who fetched the net and put it to rights, and it was I who went up to my knees in water to catch them.

Father. — You make a charming story of it together, my boys; but as it is an inter-



esting subject, you may tell me as many particulars as you please; it is indeed an event of some importance for our kitchen, and I have great pleasure in looking forward to partaking of a dish of your providing.

Jack. — Well then, papa, as soon as you were gone, mamma sat down outside the tent and began to work, while Francis and I took a little walk towards the river, to find out a proper place for you to begin the bridge.

Father. — Bravo, Mr. Architect: but joking apart, I am much gratified to find that careless head of yours for once employed upon a useful subject. Did you find a proper place for me to begin the bridge?

Jack. — Yes, father, yes. But listen, and you will know all. When we reached the river we saw a large stone just at the edge, and little Francis kneeling down, and touching it, suddenly cried out, “Jack, Jack, Fritz’s jackall is covered all over with lobsters! Run as fast as you can.” I sprang to him in an instant, and saw not only the jackall covered with them, but legions more coming in with the stream. I ran to tell mamma, who quickly got the net you brought



from the vessel. Partly with this net, and partly with our hands, we caught those you see in a very few minutes; and we should have caught a much larger number if we had not heard you call, for the river is quite full of them. — “You took quite enough for once, my boy,” said I: “A little at a time is the maxim that suits us best, and I should even advise your taking the smallest of them back to the river, where they will grow larger; we shall still have sufficient for several magnificent repasts.” — This then, said I to myself, is a new source for our support: even here, in these arid regions, we find means to procure not only the necessaries of life, but even luxuries. May we never cease to evince our gratitude to Providence, by the exercise of a more than ordinary care and industry!

After giving in our turn an account of our voyage, my wife set about dressing some of the lobsters, and in the meantime Fritz and I employed ourselves in untying the raft of timbers and planks, and in moving them from the boat. I then imitated the example of the Laplanders, in harnessing their rein-deer for drawing their sledges. Instead of traces,



halters, &c. I put a piece of rope, with a running knot at the end, round the neck of the ass, and passed the other end between its legs, to which I tied the piece of wood which I wished to be removed. The cow was harnessed in the same manner, and we were thus enabled to carry our materials, piece by piece, to the spot which architect Jack had chosen at the river, as the most eligible for our bridge: to say the truth, I thought his judgment excellent; it was a place where the shore on each side was steep, and of equal height; there was even on our side an old trunk of a tree lying on the ground, which I foresaw would have its use.

“Now then, boys,” said I, “the first thing is to see if our timbers are long enough to reach to the other side: by my eye, I should think they are; but if I had a surveyor’s plane, we might be quite sure, instead of working at a venture.

“But my mother has some balls of pack-thread, with which she measured the height of the giant tree,” interrupted Ernest, “and nothing would be more easy than to tie a stone to the end of one of them, and throw



it to the other side of the river; then we could draw it to the very brink, and thus obtain the exact length that would be required for our timbers.”

“Your idea is excellent,” cried I; “nothing gives me more pleasure than to see you exercise your invention: run quickly and fetch the packthread.” He returned without loss of time; the stone was tied to its end, and thrown across as we had planned; we drew it gently back to the river edge, marking the place where the bridge was to rest: we next measured the string, and found that the distance from one side to the other was eighteen feet. It appeared to me, that to give a sufficient solidity to the timbers, I must allow three feet at each end of extra length for fixing them, making therefore in all twenty-four; and I was fortunate enough to find that many of those we had brought did not fall short of this length. There now remained the difficulty of carrying one end across the stream; but we determined to discuss this part of the subject while we ate our dinner, which had been waiting for us more than an hour.



We all now proceeded homewards, and entering the kitchen, we found our good steward had prepared for us a large dish of lobsters; but before tasting them, she insisted we should look at something she had been employed about: she produced two sacks intended for the ass, which she had seamed with packthread; the work, she assured us, had with difficulty been accomplished, since, for want of a needle large enough to carry packthread, she had been obliged to make a hole with a nail for every stitch; we might therefore judge by her perseverance in such a task, of the ardor with which she longed to see her plan of a removal executed. She received on this occasion, as was well her due, abundance of compliments and thanks from her companions, and also a little good-humored raillery. For this time we hurried through our meal, each being deeply interested in the work we were about to undertake, and thinking only of the part which might be assigned him towards the execution of the *Nonsuch*; for this, for mutual encouragement, was the name we gave our bridge even before it was in existence.

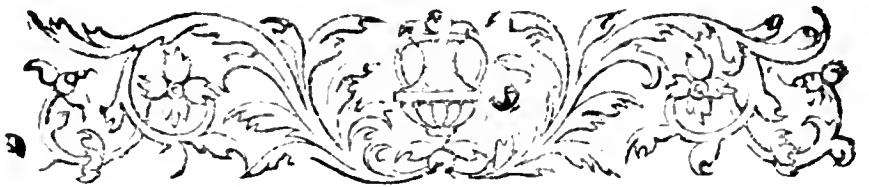


Having consulted as to the means of laying our timbers across the river, the first thing I did was to attach one of them to the trunk of the tree, of which I have already spoken, by a strong cord, long enough to turn freely round the trunk; I then fastened a second cord to the other end of the timber, and tying a stone to its extremity flung it to the opposite bank. I next passed the river as I had done before, furnished with a pulley, which I secured to a tree; I passed my second cord through the pulley, and recrossing the river with this cord in my hand, I contrived to harness the ass and cow to the end of the cord. I next drove the animals from the bank of the river; they resisted at first, but I made them go by force of drawing. I next fixed one end of the beam firm to the trunk of the tree, and then they drew along the other end, so as gradually to advance over the river: presently, to my great joy, I saw it touch the other side, and at length become fixed and firm by its own weight. In a moment Fritz and Jack leaped upon the timber, and, in spite of my paternal fears,



crossed the stream with a joyful step upon this narrow but effective bridge.

The first timber being thus laid, the difficulty was considerably diminished; a second and a third were fixed in succession, and with the greatest ease. Fritz and I, standing on opposite sides of the river, placed them at such distances from each other as was necessary to form a broad and handsome bridge: what now remained to be done was to lay some short planks across them quite close to each other, which we executed so expeditiously, that our construction was completed in a much shorter time than I should have imagined possible. The reader should have seen our young workmen, to form the least conception of the delight they felt; they jumped, danced, played a thousand antics, and uttered a thousand joyful sounds upon their bridge. For my own part, I could hardly restrain myself from joining in these demonstrations of their perfect happiness; and my wife, who had been the mover of all our operations, was as little disposed to a silent calm enjoyment of our success as any of



the rest: she ran to one, and then to another, embracing each in turn, and was never tired of passing and repassing on our piece of workmanship, which was every where safe and even, and at least ten feet in breadth. I had not fastened the cross planks to each other, for they appeared to be close and firm without it; and besides, I recollected that in case of danger from any kind of invasion, we could with the greater ease remove them, and thus render the passage of the river more difficult. Our labor however had occasioned us so much fatigue, that we found ourselves unable for that day to enter upon new exertions; and the evening beginning to set in, we returned to our home, where we partook heartily of an excellent supper, and went to bed.

CHAPTER IX.

Change of Abode.

AS soon as we were up and had breakfasted, the next morning, I assembled all the

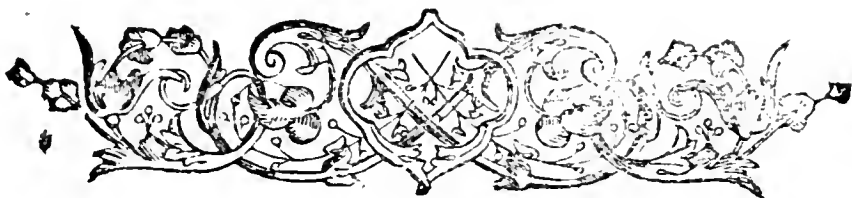


members of my family together, to take with them a solemn farewell of this our first place of reception from the awful disaster of the shipwreck. I confess that for my own part I could not leave it without regret; it was a place of greater safety than we were likely again to meet with; it was also nearer to the vessel. I thought it right to represent strongly to my sons the danger of exposing themselves, as they had done the evening before, along the river. — “We are now going,” continued I, “to inhabit an unknown spot, which is not so well protected by nature as that we are leaving: we are unacquainted both with the soil and its inhabitants, whether human creatures or beasts; much caution is therefore necessary, and take care not to remain separate from each other.” Having unburdened my mind of this necessary charge, we prepared for sitting out. I directed my sons to assemble our whole flock of animals, and to leave the ass and the cow to me, that I might load them with the sacks as before concerted; I had filled these, and made a slit longways in the middle of each, and to each side of the slits I tied several long pieces of



cord, which crossing each other, and being again brought round and fastened, served to hold the sacks firmly on the back of the animal. We next began to put together all the things we should stand most in need of for the two or three first days in our new abode: working implements, kitchen utensils, the captain's service of plate, and a small provision of butter, &c., &c. I put these articles into the two ends of each sack, taking care that the sides should be equally heavy, and then fastened them on. I afterwards added our hammocks to complete the load, and we were about to begin to march, when my wife stopped me. — "We must not," said she, "leave our fowls behind, for fear they should become the prey of the jackalls. We must contrive a place for them among the luggage, and also one for our little Francis, who cannot walk so far, and would interrupt our speed. There is also my enchanted bag, which I recommend to your particular care," said she, smiling, "for who can tell what may yet pop out of it for your good pleasure."

I now placed the children on the ass's back, fixing the enchanted bag in such a way as to



support him, and I tied them together with so many cords, that the animal might even have galloped without danger of his falling off.

In the meanwhile, the other boys had been running after the cocks and hens, and the pigeons, but had not succeeded in catching one of them; so they returned empty-handed and in ill humor. — “Little blockheads!” said their mother, “see how you have heated yourselves in running after these untractable creatures! I could have put you in a way to catch them in a moment; come with me and see.” — She now stepped into the tent, and brought out two handfuls of peas and oats, and by pronouncing a few words of invitation in the accustomed tone, the birds flocked round her. She then walked slowly before them, dropping the grain all the way, till they had followed her into the tent. When she saw them all inside, and busily employed in picking up the grain, she shut the entrance, and caught one after the other without difficulty. The boys looked at each other half ashamed, though much amused with the adventure. The fowls were then tied by the



feet and wings, put into a basket covered with a net, and placed in triumph on the top of our luggage.

We packed and placed in the tent every thing we were to leave, and, for greater security, fastened down the ends of the sail-cloth at the entrance, by driving stakes through them into the ground. We ranged a number of vessels, both full and empty, round the tent, to serve as a rampart, and thus we confided to the protection of heaven our remaining treasures. At length, we set ourselves in motion: each of us, great and small, carried a gun upon his shoulder, and a game bag at his back. My wife led the way with her eldest son, the cow and the ass immediately behind them; the goat conducted by Jack came next; the little monkey was seated on the back of his nurse, and made a thousand grimaces. After the goats, came Ernest, conducting the sheep, while I, in my capacity of general superintendent, followed behind and brought up the rear; the dogs for the most part pranced backwards and forwards, like adjutants to a troop of soldiers. Our march was slow, and there was some-



thing solemn and patriarchal in the spectacle we exhibited; I fancied we must resemble our forefathers journeying in the deserts, accompanied by their families and their possessions. — “Now then, Fritz,” cried I, “you have the specimen you wished for of the patriarchal mode of life; what do you think of it?” — “I like it much, father,” replied he: “I never read the Bible, without wishing I had lived in those good times.”

“And I too,” said Ernest, “I am quite delighted with it; I cannot help fancying myself not merely a patriarch, but a Tartar, or an Arab, and that we are about to discover I know not how many new and extraordinary things. Is it not true, father, that the Tartars and the Arabs pass their lives in journeying from one place to another, and carrying all they have about them?”

“It is certainly for the most part true,” replied I, “and they are denominated wandering tribes; but they generally perform their journeys attended by horses and camels, by means of which they can proceed a little faster, than if, like us, they had only an ass and a cow. For my part, I should



not be sorry if I were quite sure that the pilgrimage we are now making would be our last." — "And I too am of your way of thinking," cried my wife, "and I hope that in our new abode we shall be so well satisfied with the shade of such luxuriant trees, that we shall not be inclined to further rambles."

We had now advanced half way across the bridge, when the sow for the first time took the fancy of joining us. At the moment of our departure she had shown herself so restive and indocile, that we were compelled to leave her behind us; but seeing that we had all left the place, she had set out voluntarily to overtake us; taking care, however, to apprise us, by her continual grunting, that she disapproved of our migration.

On the other side of the river we experienced an inconvenience wholly unexpected. The tempting aspect of the grass, which grew here in profusion, drew off our animals, who strayed from us to feed upon it; so that, without the dogs, we should not have been able to bring them back to the line of our procession. The active creatures were of great use to us on this occasion; and when



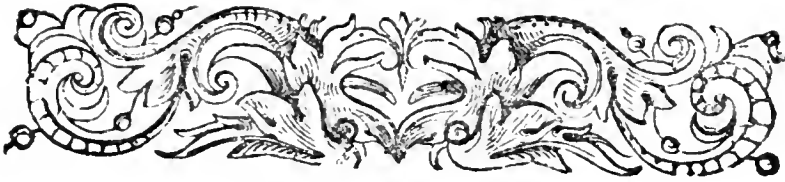
every thing was restored to proper order, we were able to continue our journey. For fear, however, of a similar occurrence, I directed our march to the left, along the sea-side, where the produce of the soil was not of a quality to attract them.

But scarcely had we advanced a few steps on the sands, when our two dogs, which had strayed behind among the grass, set up a sort of howl, as if engaged in an encounter with some formidable animal. Fritz in an instant raised his gun to his cheek, and was ready to fire; Ernest, always somewhat timid, drew back to his mother's side; Jack ran bravely after Fritz, with his gun upon his shoulder; while I, fearing the dogs might be attacked by some dangerous wild beast, prepared myself to advance to their assistance. But youth is always full of ardor; and in spite of my exhortations to proceed with caution, the boys, eager for the event, made but three jumps to the place from which the noise proceeded. In an instant Jack had turned to meet me, clapping his hands and calling out, "Come quickly, father, come quickly, here is a monstrous porcupine!"



I soon reached the spot, and perceived that it was really as they said, bating a little exaggeration. The dogs were running to and fro with bloody noses about the animal; and when they approached too near him, he made a frightful noise, and darted his quills so suddenly at them, that a great number had penetrated the skins of the valiant creatures, and remained sticking in them; and it was no doubt the pain they occasioned which made them howl so violently.

While we were looking on, Jack determined on an attack, which succeeded well. He took one of the pistols which he carried in his belt, and aimed it so exactly at the head of the porcupine, that he fell dead the instant he fired, and before we had a notion of what he was about. This success raised Jack to the height of joy and vanity; while Fritz, on the other hand, felt a sensation of jealousy almost to shedding tears. — “Is it right, Jack,” said he, “that such a little boy as you should venture to fire off a pistol in this manner? How easily might you have wounded my father or me, or one of the dogs, by so rash an action!” — “Oh yes, to be



sure, and what do you suppose hindered me from seeing that you were all behind me? Do you think I fired without taking care of that? Do you take me for an idiot? The porcupine could tell you about that, brother Fritz, if he could speak. My first fire — pop — dead as a herring! This is something like, brother Fritz, and you would be glad enough to have had such a chance yourself!”

Fritz only replied by a motion of his head. He was out of humor because his younger brother had deprived him of the honor of the day; and he sought a subject of complaint against him, as the wolf did with the poor little lamb. “Come, come, boys,” said I, “let me hear no envious speeches and no reproaches; luck for one to-day, for another to-morrow; but all for the common good. Jack was, perhaps, a little imprudent, but you must allow that he showed both skill and courage; let us not therefore tarnish the glory of his exploit.” We now all got round the extraordinary animal, on whom nature had bestowed a strong defense, by arming his body all over with long spears. The boys



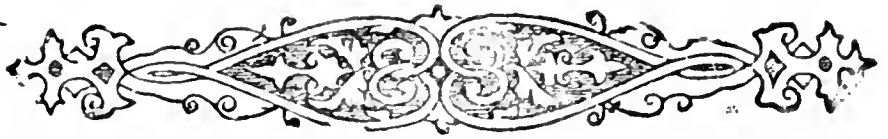
were at a loss what means to use for carrying away his carcass. They thought of dragging it along the ground; but as often as they attempted to take hold, there was nothing but squalling, and running to show the marks made by his quills on their hands. "We must leave him behind," said they; "but it is a great pity."

While the boys were talking, my wife and I had hastened to relieve the dogs, by drawing out the quills and examining their wounds. Fritz had run on before with gun, hoping he should meet with some animal of prey. What he most desired was to find one or two of those large bustards which his mother had described to him. We followed him at our leisure, taking care not to expose our health by unnecessary fatigue; till at last, without further accident or adventure, we arrived at the place of the giant trees. Such, indeed, we found them, and our astonishment exceeded all description. "Good heavens! what trees! what a height! what trunks! I never heard of any so prodigious!" exclaimed one and all. "Nothing can be more rational than your admiration," answered I,



measuring them with my eyes as I spoke. "I must confess I had not myself formed an idea of the reality. To you be all the honor, my dear wife, for the discovery of this agreeable abode, in which we shall enjoy so many comforts and advantages. The great point we have to gain, is the fixing a tent large enough to receive us all, in one of these trees, by which means we shall be perfectly secure from the invasion of wild beasts. I defy even one of the bears, who are so famous for mounting trees, to climb up by a trunk so immense, and so destitute of branches."

We began now to release our animals from their burdens, having first thrown our own on the grass. We next used the precaution of tying their two fore legs together with a cord, that they might not go far away, or lose themselves. We restored the fowls to liberty; and then seating ourselves upon the grass, we held a family council on the subject of our future establishment. I was myself somewhat uneasy on the question of our safety during the ensuing night; for I was ignorant of the nature of the extensive country I beheld around me, and what chance there might



be of our being attacked by different kinds of wild beasts. I accordingly observed to my wife, that I would make an endeavor for us all to sleep in the tree that very night. While I was deliberating with her on the subject, Fritz, who longed to take his revenge for the porcupine adventure, had stolen away to a short distance, and we heard the report of a gun. This would have alarmed me, if, at the same moment, we had not recognized Fritz's voice crying out, "I touched him! I touched him!" and in a moment we saw him running towards us, holding a dead animal of uncommon beauty by the paws. "Father, father, look, here is a superb tiger cat," said he, proudly raising it in the air, to show it to the best advantage. "Bravo! bravo!" cried I; "bravo, Nimrod the undaunted! Your exploit will call forth the gratitude of our cocks, hens, and pigeons, for you have rendered them what they cannot fail to think an important service. If you had not killed this animal he would, no doubt have demolished in one night our whole stock of poultry. I charge you look about in every direction, and try to destroy as many of the species as



fall in your way, for we cannot have more dangerous intruders.”

Ernest. — I wish father you would be so good as to tell me why God created wild beasts, since man seems to be appointed to destroy them.

Father. — This indeed is a question I cannot answer, and we must be contented with taking care to arm ourselves against them: neither can I explain to you why many other things, which to us appear to have only injurious qualities, have been created. With respect to beasts of prey, I am inclined to believe, that one of the ends of Providence, in giving them existence, is their embellishing and varying the works of the creation; of maintaining a necessary equilibrium among creatures endowed with life; and lastly, to furnish man, who comes naked into the world, with materials for protecting himself from the cold, by the use of their skins, which become the means of exchange and commerce between different nations. We may also add, that the care of protecting himself from the attacks of ferocious animals invigorates the physical and moral



powers of man, supports his activity, and renders him inventive and courageous. The ancient Germans, for example, were rendered robust and valiant warriors, through their habitual exercises in the field, which enabled them at a time of need, to defend their country and their liberty with as little difficulty as they would have experienced in killing a wolf or a bear. — But let us return to the animal Fritz has killed. Tell me all the particulars of your adventure. How did you kill him?

Fritz. — With my pistol, father, as Jack killed the porcupine.

Father. — Was he on this tree just by us?

Fritz. — Yes, father, I had been observing that something moved among the branches. I went softly as near as I could; and on seeing him I knew him for a tiger cat. I fired, when he fell at my feet, wounded and furious; and then I fired a second time and killed him.

Father. — You were very fortunate, for he might easily have devoured you. You should always take care, in aiming at animals of this kind, to be at a greater distance.

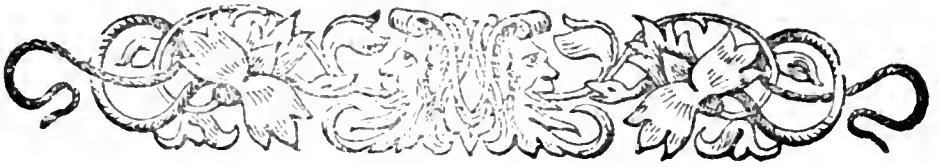


Fritz. — Why so, father? I might have missed him if I had been further off. I, on the contrary, tried to be as near him as possible, and fired close to his ears.

Father. — This was acting in the same way as your brother Jack, whom you so much derided for his want of care, and may serve you as a lesson not to blame in your brothers, what you would yourself be perhaps obliged to do in the same situation: also not to interrupt their joy with unkind reflections, but rather to partake with them the pleasure of their success.

Fritz. — Well, father; all I now ask of Jack is, that he will be so good as not to spoil the beautiful skin of this animal as he did that of the jackall. Only observe what beautiful figures it is marked with, and the fine effect of the black and yellow spots; the most richly manufactured stuff could not exceed it in magnificence. What is the exact name of the animal?

Father. — You may for the present give it the name of the tiger cat. I do not, however, think that it is the animal which is so denominated at the Cape of Good Hope; I

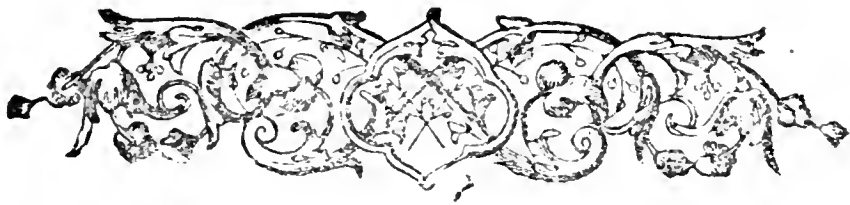


rather think it is the margay, a native of America, an animal of extremely vicious dispositions and singular voraciousness; he attacks all the birds of the forest, and neither a man, a sheep, or goat, that should fall in his way, could escape his rapacity. In the name of humanity, therefore, we ought to be thankful to you for having destroyed him.

Fritz. — All the recompense I ask, father, is, that you will let me keep the skin; and I wish you would tell me what use I can make of it.

Father. — One idea occurs to me; skin the animal, carefully, so as not to injure it, particularly the parts which cover the fore legs and the tail. You may then make yourself a belt with it, like your brother Jack's. The odd pieces will serve to make some cases to contain our utensils for the table, such as knives, forks, spoons. Go then, boy, and put away its bloody head, and we will see how to set about preparing the skin.

The boys left me no moment of repose till I had shown them how to take off the skins of the animals without tearing them. In the



meanwhile Ernest looked about for a flat stone as a sort of foundation for a fire-place, and little Francis collected some pieces of dry wood for his mother to light a fire. Ernest was not long in finding what he wanted, and then he ran to join us and give us his assistance, or rather to reason, right or wrong, on the subject of skinning animals; and then on that of trees, making various comments and inquiries respecting the real name of those we intended to inhabit. — “It is my opinion,” said he, “that they are, really and simply, enormously large hazel trees; see if the leaf is not of exactly the same form.” — “But that is no proof,” interrupted I: “for many trees bear leaves of the same shape, but nevertheless are of different kinds.”

Ernest. — I thought, father, that the mango tree only grew on the seashore, and in marshy soils?

Father. — You were not mistaken: it is the black mango tree which loves the water. But there is, besides, the red mango, which bears its fruit in bunches, something like our currant bushes. This kind of the mango tree is found at a considerable distance from



the sea, and its wood is used for dyeing red. There is a third sort, which is called the mountain mango, or yellow wood, and this is the kind whose roots produce the beautiful arches you now see around us.

Presently little Francis came running, with his mouth crammed full of something, and calling out, "Mamma, mamma, I have found a nice fruit to eat, and I have brought you home some of it!"

"Little glutton!" replied his mother, quite alarmed, "what have you got there? For heaven's sake, do not swallow, in this imprudent manner, the first thing that falls in your way; for by this means you may be poisoned, and then you would die." She made him open his mouth, and took out with her finger what he was eating with so keen a relish. With some difficulty she drew out the remains of a fig. — "A fig!" exclaimed I: "where did you get this fig?"

Francis. — I got it among the grass, papa; and there are a great many more. I thought it must be good to eat, for the fowls and the pigeons, and even the pig, came to the place and ate them in large quantities.



Father. — You see then, my dear, said I to my wife, that our beautiful trees are fig-trees, at least the kind which are thus named at the Antilles. I took this occasion to give the boys another lesson on the necessity of being cautious, and never to venture on tasting anything they met with, till they had seen it eaten by birds and monkeys. At the word monkeys, they all ran to visit the little orphan, whom they found seated on the root of a tree, and examining with the oddest grimaces the half-skinned tiger cat, which lay near him. Francis offered him a fig, which he first turned round and round, then smelled at it, and concluded by eating it voraciously. — “Bravo, bravo! Mr. Monkey,” exclaimed the boys, clapping their hands; so then these figs are good to eat! Thank you, Mr. Monkey, for after your wise decision, we shall make a charming feast on them.”

In the meanwhile my wife had been busy in making a fire, putting on the pot, and preparing for our dinner. The tiger cat was bestowed upon the dogs, who waited impatiently to receive it. While our dinner was



dressing, I employed my time in making some packing-needles with some of the quills of the porcupine, which the boys had contrived to draw from his skin, and bring home. I put the point of a large nail into the fire until it was red-hot; then taking hold of it with some wet linen in my hand, by way of guard, I with great ease perforated the thick end of the quills with it. I had soon the pleasure of presenting my wife with a large packet of long, stout needles, which were the more valuable in her estimation, as she had formed the intention of contriving some better harness for our animals, and had been perplexed how to set about them without some larger needles. I, however, recommended to her to be frugal in the use of her packthread, for which I should soon have so urgent a need, in constructing a ladder for ascending the tree we intended to inhabit.

I had singled out the highest fig-tree; and while we were waiting for dinner, I made the boys try how high they could throw a stick or stone into it. I also tried myself; but the lowest branches were so far from the ground, that none of us could touch them. I per-



ceived, therefore, that we should want some new inventions for fastening the ends of my ladder to them. I allowed a short pause to my imagination, during which I assisted Jack and Fritz in carrying the skin of the tiger cat to a near rivulet, where we confined it under water with some large stones. After this we returned and dined heartily on some slices of ham and bread and cheese, under the shade of our favorite trees.

CHAPTER X.

Construction of a Ladder.

OUR repast ended, I observed to my wife, that we should be obliged to pass the night on the ground. I desired her to begin preparing the harness for the animals, that they might go to the seashore, and fetch pieces of wood, or other articles which might be useful to us. I, in the meantime, set about suspending our hammocks to some of the arched roots of the trees. I next spread a piece of sail-cloth large enough to cover them, to pre-



serve us from the dew and from the insects. I then hastened with the two eldest boys to the seashore, to choose out such pieces of wood as were most proper for the steps of my ladder. Ernest was so lucky as to discover some bamboo canes in a sort of bog. I took them out, and, with his assistance, completely cleared them from the dirt; and stripping off their leaves, I found to my great joy, that they were precisely what I wanted. I then instantly began to cut them with my hatchet, in pieces of four or five feet long; the boys bound them together in fagots, and we prepared to return with them to our place of abode. I next secured some of the straight and most slender of the stalks, to make some arrows with, of which I knew I should stand in need. At some distance from the place where we stood, I perceived a sort of thicket, in which I hoped to find some young pliant twigs, which I thought might also be useful to me; we proceeded to the spot; but apprehending it might be the retreat of some dangerous reptile, or animal, we held our guns in readiness. Flora, who had accompanied us, went before. We had hardly reached the



thicket before she made several jumps, and threw herself furiously into the middle of the bushes; when a troop of large-sized flamingoes sprang out, and with a loud rustling noise mounted into the air. Fritz fired, when two of the birds fell among the bushes: one of them was quite dead; the other was only slightly wounded in the wing, and finding that he could not fly, he ran so fast towards the water, that we were afraid he would escape us. Fritz, in the joy of his heart, plunged up to his knees in the water, to pick up the flamingo he had killed, and with great difficulty was able to get out again; while I, warned by his example, proceeded more cautiously in my pursuit of the wounded bird. Flora came to my assistance, and running on before, caught hold of the flamingo, and held him fast till I reached the spot and took him into my protection. All this was effected with considerable trouble: for the bird made a stout resistance, flapping its wings with violence for some time. But at last I succeeded in securing him.

Fritz was not long in extricating himself from the swamp; he now appeared holding



the dead flamingo by the feet: but I had more trouble in the care of mine, as I had a great desire to preserve him alive. I had tied his feet and his wings with my handkerchief; notwithstanding which, he still continued to flutter about to a distressing degree, and tried to make his escape. I held the flamingo under my left arm, and my gun in my right hand. I made the best jumps I was able to get to the boys, but at the risk of sinking every moment in the mud, which was extremely deep, and from which it would have been difficult to release me.

The joy of the boys was excessive, when they saw that my flamingo was alive. — “If we can but cure his wound and contrive to feed him, what a happiness it will be!” said they. “Do you think he will like to be with the other fowls?” “I know,” answered I, “that he is a bird that may be easily tamed; but we will not thank you for such food as we give our fowls; he will make his humble petition to you for some small fish, a few worms, or insects.”

Ernest. — Our river will furnish him with all these: Jack and Francis can catch as



many as he will want; and very soon, with such long legs as he has, he may learn the way to the river and find them for himself. But, father, are all flamingoes like this, of such a beautiful red color, and the wings so exquisitely tinted with purple? I think I have seen the flamingo in my Natural History, and the colors were not like these; so perhaps this is not a flamingo at last.

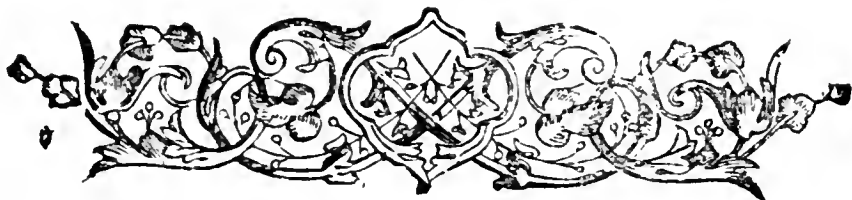
Father. — I believe it is a flamingo, Ernest, and that this difference in the plumage denotes the age of the bird: when very young they are gray: at a more advanced age they are white; and it is only when they are full grown, that they are adorned with this beautiful tinted plumage. But one of you must hold our live flamingo, while I repeat my visit to the canes, for I have not done with them yet. I accordingly selected some of the oldest of the stalks, and cut from them their hard pointed ends, to serve for the tips of my arrows, for which they are also used by the savages of the Antilles. Lastly, I looked for two of the longest canes, which I cut, for the purpose of measuring the height of our giant tree, about which I felt so deep an interest.



When I told my sons the use I intended to make of the two longest canes, they indulged themselves in a hearty laugh at me, and maintained, that though I should lay ten such canes up the trunk of the tree, the last would not reach even the lowest branch. I requested they would oblige me by having a little patience; and I reminded them, that it was not long ago that they defied their mother to catch the fowls, because they themselves had not known how to set about it. We now thought of returning. Ernest took the charge of the canes; Fritz carried the dead flamingo, and I resumed the care of the living one.

We had now reached the spot where we had left the three bundles of bamboo-canes; and as my sons were sufficiently loaded, I took charge of them myself.

We at length arrived once more at our giant trees, and were received with a thousand expressions of interest and kindness. All were delighted at the sight of our new captures. My wife, with her usual anxiety about the means for subsisting, asked where we should get food enough for all the animals



we brought home? — “You should consider,” said I, “that some of them feed us, instead of being fed; and the one we have now brought you need not give much uneasiness, if, as I hope, he proves able to find food for himself.” I now began to examine his wound, and found that only one wing was injured by the ball, but that the other had also been slightly wounded by the dog laying hold of him. I applied some ointment to both, which seemed immediately to ease the pain. I next tied him by one of his legs, with a long string, to a stake I had driven into the ground, quite near to the river, that he might go in and wash himself when he pleased.

In the meantime, my little railers had tied the two longest canes together, and were endeavoring to measure the tree with them; but when they found that they reached no further than the top of the arch formed by the roots, they all burst into immoderate fits of laughter, assuring me, that if I wished to measure the tree, I must think of some other means. I however sobered them a little, by recalling to Fritz’s memory some lessons in land-surveying he had received in Europe,



and that the measure of the highest mountains, and their distance from each other, may be ascertained by the application of triangles and supposed lines. I instantly proceeded to this kind of operation, fixing my canes in the ground, and making use of some string, which Fritz guided according to my directions. I found that the height of the lower branches of our tree was forty feet; a particular I was obliged scrupulously to ascertain, before I could determine the length of my ladder. I now set Fritz and Ernest to work, to measure our stock of thick ropes, of which I wanted no less than eighty feet for the two sides of the ladder: the two youngest I employed in collecting all the small string we had used for measuring, and carrying it to their mother. For my own part I sat down on the grass, and began to make some arrows with a piece of the bamboo, and the short sharp points of the canes I had taken such pains to secure. As the arrows were hollow, I filled them with the moist sand, to give them a little weight; and lastly, I tipped them with a bit of feather from the flamingo, to make them fly straight.



Scarcely had I finished my work, than the boys came jumping round me, uttering a thousand demonstrations of joy: — “A bow, a bow, and some real arrows!” cried they, addressing each other, and then running to me. — “Tell us father,” continued they, “what you are going to do with them; do let me shoot one; — and me; and me too,” cried one and all as fast as they could speak.

Father. — “Have patience, boys; I say, have patience. Have you, my dear, any strong thread?” said I to my wife; “I want some immediately.” — “We shall see,” said she, “what my enchanted bag, which has never yet refused its aid, can do for you.” She then threw open its mouth. — “Come,” said she, “pretty bag, give me what I ask for; my husband wants some thread, and it must be very strong — See now, did I not promise you should have your wish? — here is a large ball of the very thread you want.”

Ernest. — But I do not see much magic, however, mother, in taking out of a bag exactly what we had before put into it.

Father. — If we are to discuss the matter seriously, Ernest, I cannot but allow that



your observation is a just one; but in a moment of dreadful apprehension, such as we experienced on leaving the vessel, to think of a variety of little things that might be useful to one or all of us, was an act that we may truly call magical; only from the best of wives and mothers, could it have proceeded: it is, then, something like a truth, that your mother is a good fairy, who constantly provides for all our wants: but you young giddy things think little of the benefit you thus enjoy.

Just at this moment Fritz joined us, having finished measuring the string: he brought me the welcome tidings that our stock, in all, was about five hundred fathoms, which I knew to be more than sufficient for my ladder. I now tied the end of the ball of strong thread to an arrow, and fixing it to the bow, I shot it off in such a direction, as to make the arrow pass over one of the largest branches of the tree, and fall again to the ground. By this method I lodged my thread securely, while I had the command of the end and the ball below. It was now easy to tie a piece of rope to the end of the thread, and draw it



upwards, till the knot should reach the same branch. Having thus made quite sure of being able to raise my ladder, we all set to work with increased zeal and confidence. The first thing I did was to cut a length of about one hundred feet from my parcel of ropes, an inch thick; this I divided into two equal parts, which I stretched along on the ground in two parallel lines, at the distance of a foot from each other. I then directed Fritz to cut portions of sugar-cane, each two feet in length. Ernest handed them to me, one after another; and as I received them, I inserted them into my cords at the distance of twelve inches respectively; fixing them with knots in the cord, while Jack, by my order, drove into each a long nail at the two extremities, to hinder them from slipping out again. Thus, in a very short time, I had formed a ladder of forty rounds in length, and, in point of execution, firm and compact. and which we all beheld with a sort of joyful astonishment. I now tied it with strong knots to the end of the rope which hung from the tree, and pulled it by the other, till our ladder reached the branch, and seemed to



rest so well upon it, that the joyous exclamations of the boys and my wife resounded from all sides. All the boys wished to be the first to ascend upon it; but I decided that it should be Jack, he being the nimblest and of the lightest figure among them. Accordingly, I and his brothers held the ends of the rope and of the ladder with all our strength, while our young adventurer tripped up the rounds with perfect ease, and presently took his post upon the branch; but I observed that he had not strength enough to tie the rope firmly to the tree. Fritz now interfered, assuring me that he could ascend as safely as his brother; but as he was much heavier, I was not altogether without apprehension. I fastened the end of the ladder with forked stakes to the ground, and then gave him instructions how to step in such a way as to divide his weight, by occupying four rounds of the ladder at the same time, with his feet and hands. It was not long before we saw him side by side with Jack, forty feet above our heads, and both saluting us with cries of exultation. Fritz set to work to fasten the ladder, by passing the rope



round and round the branch; and this he performed with so much skill and intelligence, that I felt sufficient reliance to determine me to ascend myself, and well conclude the business he had begun. But first I tied a large pulley to the end of the rope, and carried it with me. When I was at the top, I fastened the pulley to a branch which was within my reach, that by this means I might be able the next day to draw up the planks and timbers I might want for building my aerial castle. I executed all this by the light of the moon, and felt the satisfaction of having done a good day's work. I now gently descended my rope ladder, and joined my wife and children.

Finding an inconvenience in being three together on the branch, I had directed the boys to descend first. My astonishment, therefore, on reaching the ground, where neither Fritz nor Jack had made their appearance, it is easier to conceive than to describe. While I was endeavoring to conjecture where they could be, we suddenly heard the sound of voices which seemed to come from the clouds, and which chanted an even-



ing hymn. I soon perceived the trick our young rogues had played, who, seeing me busily employed in the tree, instead of descending as I had desired, had climbed upwards from branch to branch, till they had reached the very top. My heart was now lightened of my apprehensions for their safety. I called out to them as loudly as I could to take great care in coming down. It was almost night, and the light of the moon scarcely penetrated the extreme thickness of the foliage. They presently descended without any accident, when they told us that scarcely had my voice reached to the great height at which they were. I now directed them to assemble all our animals, and to get what dry wood we should want for making fires, which I looked to as our defense against the attacks of wild beasts. I explained to them my reasons for this; informing them that in Africa, a country remarkable for its prodigious numbers of ferocious animals, the natives secure themselves from their nocturnal visits by lighting large fires, which all these creatures are known to dread and avoid.



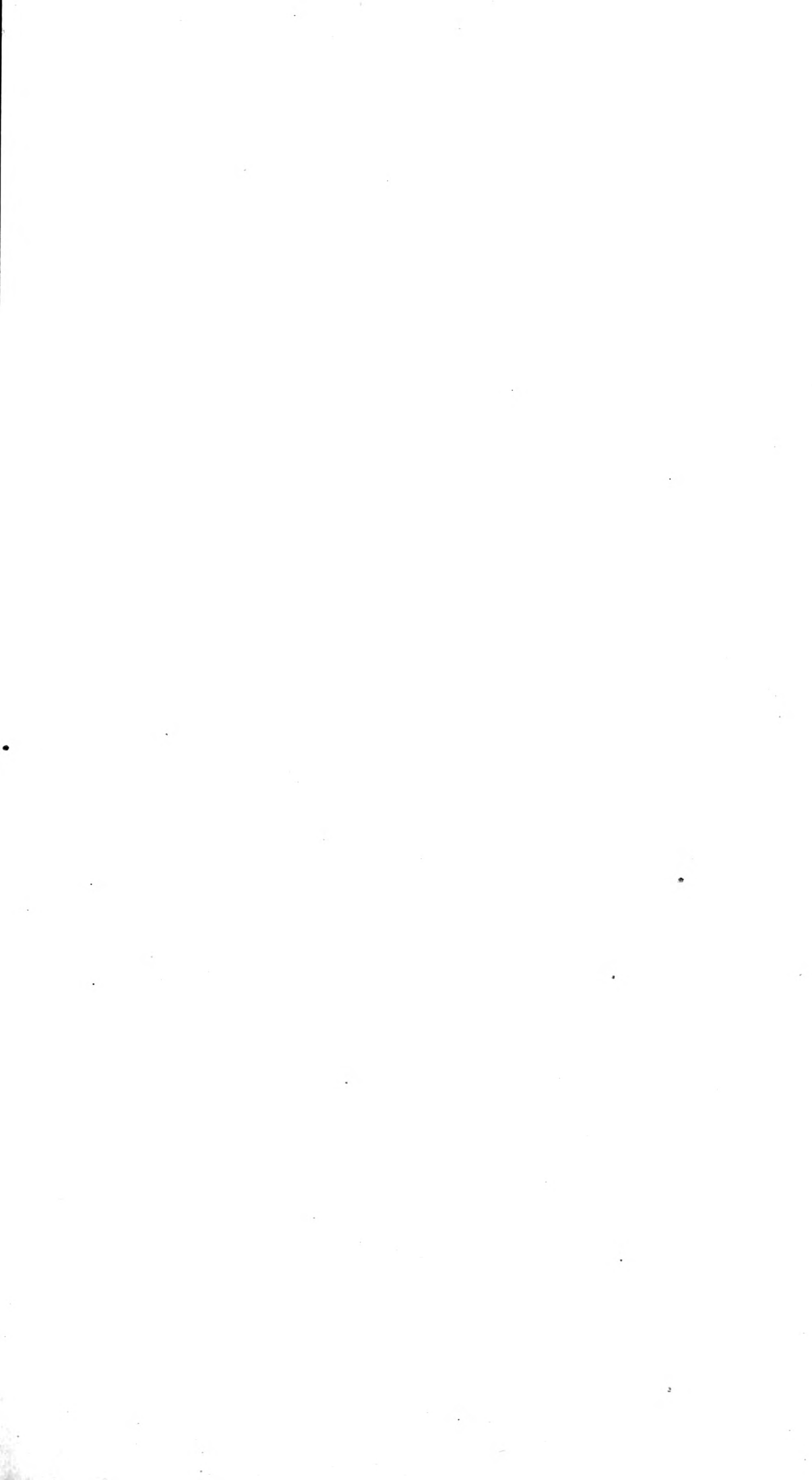
My wife now presented me with the day's work she had performed; it was some traces, and a breast-leather each for the cow and the ass. I promised her, as a reward for her zeal and exertion, that we should all be completely settled in the tree the following day, and we then assembled to supper.

All our animals came round us, one after the other. My wife threw some grain to the fowls, to accustom them to draw together in a particular spot; and when they had eaten it, we had the pleasure of seeing our pigeons take their flight to the top of the giant tree, and the cocks and hens perching and settling themselves, and cackling all the time upon the rounds of the ladder. The quadrupeds we tied to the arched roots of the tree, quite near to our hammocks, where they quietly lay on the grass to ruminare in tranquility. Our beautiful flamingo was not forgotten, Fritz having fed him with some crumbs of biscuit soaked in milk, which he ate very heartily; and afterwards putting his head under his right wing, and raising his left foot, he abandoned himself with confidence to sleep.

And now the gaping of one, and the out-

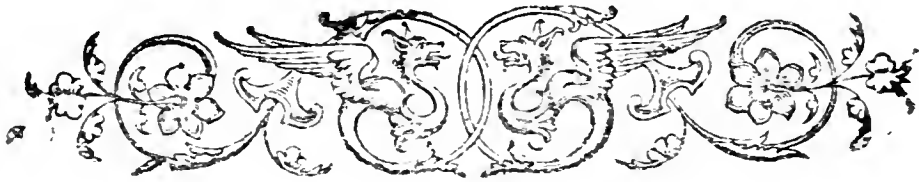


stretched arms of another, gave us notice that it was time for our young laborers to retire to rest. We performed our evening devotions. I set fire to several of the heaps, and then threw myself contentedly upon my hammock. My young ones were already cased in theirs, and we were soon greeted with their murmurs at being obliged to lie so close to each other that they could not move their limbs. — “Ah, gentlemen,” cried I, “you must try to be contented. No sailor is ever better accommodated than you are now, and you must not expect beds to drop from the clouds on your behalf!” I directed them how to put themselves in a more convenient posture, and to swing their hammock gently to and fro. “And see,” added I, “if sleep will not visit you as soon in a hammock as on a bed of down.” They profited by my advice, and all, except myself, were soon asleep.





“We continued our work at the house, which occupied us several days.”



CHAPTER XI.

The settling in the Giant Tree.

I HAD thought it necessary to keep watch during this first night. Every leaf that stirred gave me the apprehension that it was the approach of a jackall or a tiger, who might attack us. As soon as one of the heaps was consumed, I lighted another; and at length, finding that no animal appeared, I by degrees became assured, and fell into a sound sleep. The next morning we took our breakfast, and fell to work. My wife, having finished her daily occupation of milking the cow and preparing the breakfast, set off with Ernest, Jack, and Francis, attended by the ass, to the sea-shore; they had no doubt of finding some more pieces of wood, and they thought it would be prudent to replenish our exhausted store. In her absence, I ascended the tree with Fritz, and made the necessary prepara



tions for my undertaking, for which I found it in every respect convenient; for the branches grew close to each other, and in an exactly horizontal direction. Such as grew in a manner to obstruct my design, I cut off either with the saw or hatchet, leaving none but what presented me with a sort of foundation for my work. I left those which spread themselves evenly upon the trunk, and had the largest circuit, as a support for my floor. Above these, at the height of forty-six feet, I found others upon which to suspend our hammocks; and higher still, there was a further series of branches, destined to receive the roof of my tent, which for the present was to be formed of nothing more than a large surface of sail-cloth.

The progress of these preparations was considerably slow. It was necessary to raise certain beams to this height of forty feet, that were too heavy for my wife and her little assistants to lift from the ground. I had, however, the resource of my pulley, which served to excellent purpose, and Fritz and I contrived to draw them up to the elevation of the tent, one by one. When I had al-

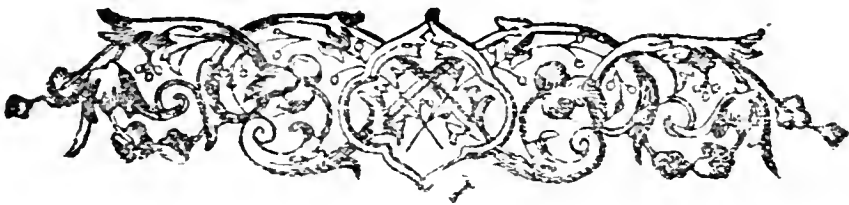


ready placed two beams upon the branches, I hastened to fix my planks upon them; and I made my floor double, that it might have sufficient solidity if the beams should be warped from their places. I then formed a wall of staves of wood like a park-paling, all round for safety. This operation, and a third journey to the sea-shore to collect the timber necessary, filled our morning so completely, that not one of us had thought about dinner. For this once we contented ourselves with a bit of ham and some milk, which we ate, and returned to finish our aerial palace, which began to make an imposing appearance. We unhooked our hammocks from the projecting roots, and by means of my pulley, contrived to hoist them up the tree. The sail-cloth roof was supported by the thick branches above; and as it was of great compass, and hung down on every side, the idea occurred to me of nailing it to the paling on two sides, thus getting not only a roof, but two walls also; the immense trunk of the tree forming a third side, while in the fourth was the entrance to our apartment; and in this I left a large aperture, both as a means of seeing



what passed without, and admitting a current of air to cool us in this burning temperature.

We also on this side enjoyed an extensive view of the vast ocean, and its lengthening shore. The hammocks were soon hung on the branches, and every thing was ready for our reception that very evening. Well satisfied with the execution of my plan, I descended with Fritz, who had assisted me throughout the whole; and as the day was not far advanced, and I observed we had still some planks remaining, we set about contriving a large table, to be placed between the roots of the tree, and surrounded with benches; and this place, we said, should be called our dining-parlor. For this time, we performed our task imperfectly, for I confess I was much fatigued. The table, however, was such as might be well endured, and my wife expressed her approbation as she looked on, busied with preparations for our supper. In the meantime, the three youngest boys collected all the pieces of wood we had thrown down from the tree, and a quantity of small wood, to dry in a heap, at a small distance from our fire-place.



Exhausted by the fatigues of the day, I threw myself on a bank, and my wife having seated herself near me, I thanked her for the tender care she was ever imposing on herself; and then I observed to her, that the many blessings we enjoyed led the thoughts naturally to the beneficent giver of them all; and to-morrow being a Sabbath-day, we would rest from work, in obedience to his command, and otherwise keep it holy. We then summoned our young family, and prepared them for the intended solemnity. I called their recollection to the nature of the Sabbath-day; to the gratitude due from us to an Almighty being, who had saved and comforted us in the hour of peril, and the duty of our prayers and acknowledgements. I informed them that, after performing with them the service of the church, I should read to them a paper I had composed for the occasion, and to which I had given the name of a parable of the Great King. The children expressed their approbation of what I had said, each in his own way, and we now assembled round our table to supper, my wife holding in her hand an earthen pot, which we had before



observed upon the fire, and the contents of which we were all curious to be informed of. She took off the cover, and with the fork drew out of it the flamingo which Fritz had killed. She informed us that she had preferred dressing it this way, to roasting, because Ernest had assured her that it was an old bird, which would prove hard and tough, and had advised her to improve it by stewing. We rallied our glutton boy on this foible of his character, and his brothers gave him the name of the *cook*. We, however, had soon reason to know that he had conferred upon us an important obligation; for the bird which, roasted, we perhaps should not have been able to touch, now appeared excellent, and was eaten up to the very bones.

While we were enjoying our repast, the live flamingo stalked up to the place where we were sitting, in the midst of our flock of fowls, to receive his part of the repast. He had now become so tame that we had released him from the stake. He took his walks gravely from place to place, and looked perfectly contented with his company. His fine plumage was a most pleasing sight; while,



on the other hand, the sportive tricks and the grimaces of our little monkey afforded the most agreeable spectacle imaginable. The little animal had become quite familiar with us; jumped from the shoulder of one to that of another; always caught adroitly the meat we threw him, and ate it in so pleasant a way as to make us laugh heartily.

The boys now, by my direction, lighted one of the heaps of wood. We tied long ropes loosely round the necks of our dogs, purposing to mount to our tent with the ends in my hand, that I might be able to let them loose upon the enemy at the first barking I should hear. Every one was eager to retire to rest, and the signal for ascending the ladder was given. The three eldest boys were up in an instant; then came their mother's turn, who proceeded slowly and cautiously, and arrived in perfect safety. My own ascension was last, and the most difficult; for I carried little Francis on my back, and the end of the ladder had been loosened at the bottom, that I might be able to draw it up in the tent during the night; every step, therefore, was made with the greatest difficulty, in



consequence of its swinging motion. At last, however, I got to the top, and, to the admiration of the boys, drew the ladder after me. It appeared to them that we were in one of the strong castles of the ancient cavaliers, in which, when the draw-bridge is raised, the inhabitants are secured from every attack of the enemy. Notwithstanding this apparent safety, I kept our guns in readiness for whatever event might require their use. We now abandoned ourselves to repose; our hearts experienced a full tranquility; and the fatigue we had all undergone induced so sound a sleep, that daylight shone full in the front of our habitation before our eyes had opened.

CHAPTER XII.

The Sabbath and the Parable.

ON awaking in the morning, we were all sensible of an unusual refreshment, and a new active mind. "Well, young ones," cried I,

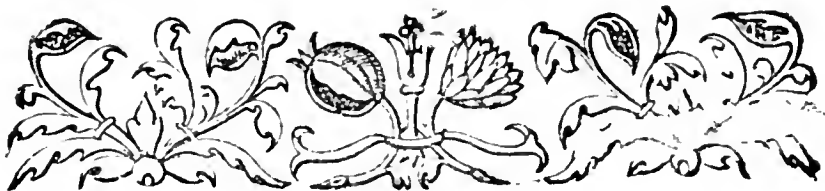


jocosely, "you have learned, I see, how to sleep in a hammock: I heard not a single complaint all the night; no disputing about room from any one of you; all was still and tranquil." — "Ah," answered they, stretching and yawning as they spoke, "we were so heartily fatigued yesterday, that it is no wonder we slept soundly."

Father. — Here, then, my children, is another advantage derived from labor; that of procuring a sweet and peaceful sleep.

My wife could not help wishing we had some place like a church for the worship of the Sabbath, till I said to her, "There is no place in the world that may not serve for a church, because we may entertain pious sentiments everywhere; and this majestic arch of Heaven, the immediate work of the Almighty, ought more effectually to raise the soul and touch the heart, than an edifice of stone made by the hand of man!"

We descended the ladder, and breakfasted on warm milk; we served the animals also with their meal, and then we all sat down on the tender grass; the boys full of impatient curiosity; their mother absorbed in silent re-



flection, her hands joined, and her eyes sometimes turned towards the sky; while I was penetrated with the most lively desire to impress upon the young minds of my children, a subject I considered of the highest importance for their well-being, both in this world and in that which is to come.

All now standing up, I repeated aloud the church service, which I knew by heart, and we sang some verses from the hundred-and-nineteenth psalm, which the boys had before learned; after which we sat down, and I began as follows:

“My dear children, there was once a Great King, whose kingdom was called The Country of Light and Reality, because the purest and softest light of the sun reigned there continually, which caused the inhabitants to be in a perpetual state of activity. On the furthest borders of this kingdom, northward, there was another country, which also belonged to the Great King, and the immense extent of which was unknown to all but himself. From time immemorial, a plan the most exact of this country had been preserved in the royal archives. This second kingdom



was called The kingdom of Obscurity or of Night, because every thing in it was gloomy and inactive.

“In the most fertile and agreeable part of his empire of Reality, this Great King had a residence called the Heavenly City, in which he lived and kept his court, which was the most brilliant that the imagination can form an idea of. Millions of guards, and servants high in dignity, remained for ever round him, and a still larger number held themselves in readiness to receive his commands. The first of these were clothed in robes of cloth that was lighter than silk, and white as snow; for white, the image of purity, was the favorite color of the Great King. Others of his attendants carried flaming swords in their hands, and their garments displayed the most brilliant colors of the rainbow; each of these stood in waiting to execute the will of the King, with the rapidity of lightning, on receiving from him the slightest sign. All were happy to be admitted into his presence; their faces shone with the mildest joy: there was but one heart and one soul among them; the sentiment of paternal concord so united these



beings, that no envy or jealousy ever arose among them. The common centre of all their thoughts, and all their sentiments, was devotion to their sovereign: it would have been impossible either to see or converse with them, without desiring to obtain their friendship, and to partake their lot. Among the rest of the inhabitants of the Heavenly City, there were some less close in their attendance upon the Great King; but they were all virtuous, all happy, all had been enriched by the beneficence of the monarch, and, what is of still higher price, had received constant marks of his paternal care; for his subjects were all equal in his eyes, and he loved them and treated them as if they had been his children.

“The great King had, besides the two kingdoms I have been describing, an uninhabited island of considerable extent: it was his wish to people and cultivate this island, for all within it was a kind of chaos: he destined it to be for some years the abode of such future citizens as he intended to receive finally into his residence, to which only such of his subjects were admitted, as had ren-



held themselves worthy by their conduct. This island was called Earthly Abode, he who should have passed some time in it, and by his virtues, his application to labor, and the cultivation of the land, should have rendered himself worthy of reward, was afterwards to be received into the Heavenly City, and made one of its happy inhabitants.

“To effect this end, the Great King caused a fleet to be equipped, which was to transport the new colonists to this island. These he chose from the kingdom of Night, and for his first gift bestowed upon them the enjoyment of light, and the view of the lovely face of nature, of which they had been deprived in their gloomy and unknown abode. It will easily be imagined that they arrived joyful and happy, at least they became so when they had been for a short time accustomed to the multitude of new objects which struck their feeble sight. The island was rich and fertile when cultivated. The beneficent King provided each individual who was disembarked upon it, with all the things he could want in the time he had fixed for their stay in it, and all the means for obtaining the cer-



tainty of being admitted as citizens of his magnificent abode, when they should leave the Earthly Island. All that was required to entitle them to this benefit was, that they should occupy themselves unceasingly in useful labor, and strictly obey the commands of the Great King, which he made known to them. He sent to them his only son, who addressed them from his father in the following terms :

“ ‘My dear children, I have called you from the kingdom of Night and Insensibility, to render you happy by the gifts of life, of sentiment, and of activity. But your happiness for the most part will depend upon yourselves. You will be happy if you wish to be so. If such is your sincere desire, you must never forget that I am your good King, your tender father ; and you must faithfully fulfil my will in the cultivation of the country I have confided to your care. Each of you shall receive, on his arriving at the island, the portion of land which is intended for him ; and my further commands respecting your conduct, will be soon communicated to you. I shall send you wise and learned men, who



will explain to you my commands; and that you may of yourselves seek after the light necessary for your welfare, and remember my laws at every instant of your lives, it is my will that each father of a family shall keep an exact copy of them in his house, and read them daily to all the persons who belong to him. Further, each first day of the week I require to be devoted to my service. In each colony, all the people shall assemble together as brothers in one place, where shall be read and explained to them the laws contained in my archives. The rest of this day shall be employed in making serious reflections on the duties and destination of the colonists, and on the best means to fulfil the same: thus it shall be possible to all to receive instruction concerning the best manner and most effectual means of improving the land which has been confided to your care: thus you will each day learn to manure, to sow, to plant, to water, and cleanse the land from tares, and from all evil weeds that may choke the good seed. On this same day, each of you may present his supplications, may tell me what he stands in need of, and



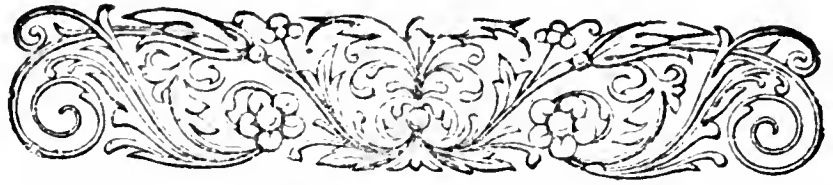
what he desires to have, to forward the perfection of his labor; all these requests will appear before me, and I shall answer, by granting such as I shall think reasonable, and tending to a salutary end. If your heart tells you that the various benefits you enjoy, deserve your gratitude, and if you will testify it by doubling your activity, and by consecrating to me the day I have chosen for myself, I will take care that this day of rest, instead of being an injury to you, shall become a benefit, through the salutary repose of your body, and that of the animals given you to assist your labors, and who, as well as yourself, should enjoy repose on that day, to recruit their strength. Even the wild animals of the field, and of the forests, ought on that day to be protected from the pursuit of the hunter.

“ ‘He who, in his Earthly Abode, shall most strictly have observed my will, who shall have best fulfilled the duties of a brother towards his fellow inhabitants, who shall have preserved his land in the best order, and shall show the largest produce from it, shall be recompensed for his deeds, and shall become



an inhabitant of my magnificent residence in the Heavenly City. But the neglectful and the idle man, and the wicked man, who shall have spent their time in interrupting the useful labors of others, shall be condemned to pass their lives in slavery, or, according to the degree of their wickedness, shall be condemned to live in subterraneous mines, in the bowels of the earth.

“ ‘From time to time, I shall send ships to fetch certain individuals from the Earthly Island, to reward or punish them, according as they have done well or ill; and as none will be warned beforehand, of the time of the coming of my messenger, it will be well for you to keep watch, that you may be ready to perform the voyage, and worthy to be received into the Heavenly City. It will not be permitted for any one to pass by stealth on board the ship, and leave his abode without my orders; for such a one shall be severely punished. I shall have the most certain knowledge of all that passes in the Earthly Island, and no one will be able to deceive me. A magical mirror will at all times show me the actions of each individual



in the island, and you shall be judged according to your most secret thoughts and actions.'

“All the colonists were well satisfied with the discourse of the Great King, and made him the most sacred promises. After a short time allowed for repose from the fatigue of the voyage, a portion of land, and the proper instruments for labor, were distributed to each of the strangers. They received also seeds, and useful plants, and young trees, for producing them refreshing fruits. Each was then left at liberty to act as he pleased, and increase the value of what was confided to his care. But what happened? After some time, each followed the suggestions of his fancy: one planted his land with arbors, flowery banks, and sweet-swelling shrubs; all pleasing to the sight, but which brought forth nothing. Another planted wild apple-trees, instead of the good fruit, as the Great King had commanded; contenting himself with giving high-sounding names to the worthless fruit he had caused to be brought forth. A third had indeed sown good grain; but not knowing how to distinguish the tares that



grew up along with it, he pulled up the good plants before they were mature, and left only the tares in his ground. But the greater part let their land lie fallow, and bestowed no labor upon it, having spoiled their implements, or lost their seed, either from negligence or idleness, or liking better to amuse themselves than to labor; many of them had wilfully misunderstood the instructions of the Great King, and sought by subtle turns to change their meaning.

“Few, very few, worked with diligence and courage, and seeking to improve their land, according to the orders they had received. The great fault of these was, that they would not believe what the Great King had sent to tell them. All the fathers of families had indeed a copy of the laws of the Sovereign, but most of them omitted to read in the book: some saying that it was useless to read it, for they knew it by heart, while they never employed their thoughts upon it. Others pretended that these laws were good for times past, but were no longer beneficial for the present state of the country. Some had even the audacity to assert, that it con

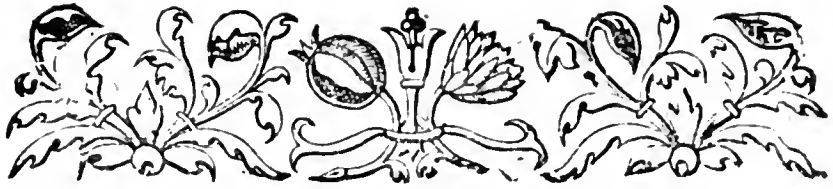


tained many inexplicable contradictions, that the laws it prescribed were merely supposed or falsified, and that they had, therefore, a right to deviate from them. Others among them maintained, that the magical mirror was a mere fable; that the King was of too merciful a nature to keep galleys; that there was no such place as the subterranean mines; and that all would at last enter the Heavenly City. From habit they continued to celebrate the first day of the week, but by far the smallest part of it was consecrated to the honor of the Great King. Great numbers of them dispensed with going to the general assembly, either from idleness, or to employ themselves in occupations which had been expressly forbidden. By far the greater part of the people considered this day of repose as intended for pleasure, and thought of nothing but adorning and amusing themselves as soon as daylight appeared. There were only then a small number of persons who kept the day according to the decree; and even of those who frequented the assembly, many had their thoughts absent, or were sleepy, or engaged in forming empty projects, instead of listen-



ing to the words which fell from the lips of the minister of the Sovereign. The Great King, however, observed unalterably the laws he had laid down and announced, respecting them. From time to time, some frigates appeared on their coasts, each bearing the name of some disastrous malady; and these were followed by a large ship of the line, named the Grave, on board of which, the admiral, whose name was Death, caused his flag of two colors, green and black, to be constantly floating in the air. He showed the colonists, according to the situation in which he found them, either the smiling color of Hope, or the gloomy color of Despair.

“ ‘ This fleet always arrived without being announced, and seldom gave any pleasure to the inhabitants. The admiral sent the captains of his frigates, to seize the persons he was ordered to bring back with him. Many who had not the smallest inclination, were suddenly embarked, while others, who had prepared everything for the harvest, and whose land was in the best condition, were also seized. But these last took their departure cheerfully, and without alarm; well



knowing that nothing but happiness awaited them. It was those who were conscious they had neglected to cultivate their land, who felt the most regret. It was even necessary to employ force, to bring them under subjection. When the fleet was ready for departure, the admiral sailed for the port of the Royal Residence; and the Great King who was present on their arrival, executed with strict justice both the rewards and punishments which had been promised to them. All the excuses alleged by those who had been idle, were of no avail. They were sent to the mines and to the galleys, while those who had obeyed the Great King, and well cultivated their land, were admitted into the Heavenly City, clothed in robes of brilliant colors, one exceeding the other according to the degree of merit." — Here, my dear children, ends my parable. May you have thoroughly understood its meaning, and may you reap the advantage it is capable of affording you! Make it the subject of your reflections the whole of this day. You, Fritz I see, are thoughtful; tell me what struck you most in my narration.



Fritz. — The goodness of the Great King, and the ingratitude of the colonists, father.

Father. — And you, Ernest, what is your thought?

Ernest. — For my part, I think they were great fools to have made so bad a calculation. What did they get by conducting themselves as they did? With a little pains they might have passed a very agreeable sort of life in the island, and would have been sure of going afterwards to the Heavenly City.

Jack. — To the mines, gentlemen, away with you! you have well deserved it.

Francis. — For my part, I should have liked best to have lived with the men who were dressed in the colors of the rainbow. How beautifully they must have looked!

Father. — This is well, my boys. I perceive that each of you, according to his age and character, has seized the meaning of my parable. I have by this image endeavored to represent to you the conduct of God towards man, and that of man towards God; let us see now if you have completely seized the sense. — I then put different questions to them, and explained what they had not per-



fectly comprehended; and after a short review of the principal parts of my discourse, I concluded by a moral application.

“Human creatures,” said I, “are the colonists of God; we are required to perform the business of probation for a certain period, and, sooner or later, are destined to be taken hence. Our final destination is Heaven, and a perfect happiness with the spirits of just men made perfect, and in the presence of the bountiful Father of us all. The piece of land intrusted to each is the soul; and according as he cultivates and ennobles it, or neglects or depraves it, will be his future reward or punishment. At present, dear children, that you know the true sense of my parable, each of you should make the application of it according to his own consciousness. You, Fritz, should think of the subjects who planted the wild apples, and wished to make them pass for sweet savory fruit of a superior kind. These represent persons who make a parade of the natural virtues belonging to their character, and which are consequently exercised without any trouble to themselves; such as courage, strength, &c.: who prefer



them to more essential qualities acquired by others, with sacrifices and labor to themselves; and who, full of presumption and arrogance, consider themselves as irreproachable, because nature has given them personal courage, and bodily strength, and a certain skill in the use of these qualities.

“ You, Ernest, should think of the subjects of the Great King, who cultivated their land so as to produce arbors, flowery banks, and sweet-smelling shrubs, and such productions in general as would please the eye, but which produced no fruit. These are they, who give their whole attention to the acquiring of unfruitful knowledge, sciences, &c., and consider with a sort of contempt the things more immediately required for the conduct of life; who exert themselves solely for the understanding, and neglect the heart; whose principal aim it is, to obtain self-indulgences, and who neglect what is useful in society.

“ You, Jack, and you, Francis, should apply to yourselves the case of those men who let their land lie fallow, or, in their thoughtlessness, mistook the grain, and sowed



tares instead of wheat. These are the neglectful subjects, who neither think nor learn, but give to the winds what is taught them, or entirely forget instruction; who reject virtuous sentiments, and let the bad ones grow in their hearts. But for ourselves, one and all, we will adopt the model of the good and zealous laborers; and should our exertions be a little painful, we shall think of the reward which awaits us, when we shall have adorned our souls with all that is good, just, and praiseworthy. Thus, when death, which cannot fail to come at last, shall summon us, we may follow him with joy to the throne of the Good and Great King, to hear him pronounce these sweet and consoling words; ‘O good and faithful servant! thou hast been tried, and found faithful in many things; enter thou into the joy of thy Lord.’” — With these words, and a short prayer of benediction, I concluded the solemnity of our Sunday; and I had the satisfaction of seeing, that my four sons had not only listened attentively, but that they were struck with the application I had made to each of them. — They remained for a short time reflecting in



silence. Jack was the first to break it:—
“You have explained to us every part of the parable, father, except the copy of the laws of the Great King, which was to be kept and read in every family: have you one of these copies? for you never read it to us.”

Father. — My children, this copy is the Holy Bible, which contains all God’s laws, and which we ought constantly to study. I cannot forgive myself for not having thought of bringing it from the vessel. Should we not be able to go another voyage, we shall forever be deprived of this divine doctrine.

My Wife. — Have you then forgot my enchanted bag, which I have promised shall furnish every thing you can desire? You wish for a Bible. In a minute I will put one into your hands; and heartily do I rejoice in having the power to procure you so great a satisfaction.

Father. — Most excellent of women! Give me then the inestimable book, these laws of the Great King, which from this moment we will take for the rule of our lives. She opened her bag, and with joy I received from her the book of life. I opened it, and read



some passages from it to my family. In this solitude, in which for so long a time we had heard only our own thoughts expressed in an appropriate language, we were singularly affected with the voice from Heaven, which now seemed to address us: we felt forcibly that, notwithstanding our exile, we were still connected with the community of mankind by the invisible tie of the same religion, and the same Father: we were forever numbered among the children of God, to whom he enjoins laws, and on whom he bestows his care no less in a desert, than in an immense capital. I explained with the utmost care what I read them, and I gave the book in turn to each of the boys, that they might have the pleasure of reading for themselves. I chose in preference such passages as were applicable to our circumstances. We then raised our hearts to God, to thank him for so signal a benefit as the preservation of our Bible. My young folks still remained thoughtful and serious; but by and by the gaiety natural to their age prevailed and each slipped away to seek the recreation he liked best.

The next morning, the boys assembled



round me with a petition that I would show them how to use arrows. We accordingly sat down on the grass; I took out my knife, and, with the remains of a bamboo cane, began to make a bow. I was well satisfied to observe them one and all take a fancy to shooting with an arrow, having been desirous to accustom them to this exercise, which constituted the principal defense of the warriors of old, and might possibly become our only means of protection and subsistence: our provision of powder must at last be exhausted; we might even, from moment to moment, be deprived of it by accident; it therefore was of the utmost importance to us, to acquire some other means of killing animals, or attacking our enemies. The Caribbees, I recollected, were taught at a very tender age, to strike an object at the distance of thirty or forty steps; they hit the smallest birds perched on the top of the tallest trees. Why then should it not be possible for my boys to learn to do the same?

While I was silently reflecting on the subject, employed in finishing a bow, Ernest, who had been observing me for some time,



slipped suddenly away; and Fritz coming up at the same moment, with the wetted skin of the tiger-cat in his hand, I paid no attention to the circumstance. I began my instructions to my eldest boy respecting the trade of a tanner. I told him the method of getting rid of the fat of the skin, by rubbing it over with sand, and placing it in running water, till it had no longer any appearance of flesh, or any smell; next to rub it with soft butter, to make it supple, and then to stretch the skin in different directions; and also to make use of some eggs in the operation, if his mother could spare them. You will not at first produce such excellent workmanship as I have seen of this kind from England; but with a little patience, regretting neither your time nor your labor, you will have completed some decent-looking cases, which will give you the more pleasure, from being the work of your own hands. When your skin shall have thus been prepared, cut certain small cylinders of wood of the size and length required; scoop these cylinders hollow, so as to form a convenient case for a knife, a fork, or a spoon; then stretch



your softened skin upon the surface of the cylinders, in such a manner, that the skin may reach a little beyond the extremity of the wood, and close at the top; you have nothing more to do, than to let the skin cling to, and dry upon these moulds.

At this moment we heard the firing of a gun, which proceeded from our tent in the tree, and two birds at the same time fell dead at our feet. We were at once surprised and alarmed, and all eyes were turned upwards to the place. There we saw Ernest standing outside the tent, a gun in his hand, and heard him triumphantly exclaiming, "catch them! catch them there! I have hit them; and you see I did not run away for nothing." He descended the ladder joyfully, and ran with Francis to take up the two birds; while Fritz and Jack mounted to our castle, hoping to meet with the same luck.

One of the dead birds proved to be a sort of thrush, and the other was a very small kind of pigeon, which in the Antilles is called an ortolan: they are very fat, and of a delicious taste. We now observed, for the first time, that the wild figs began to ripen, and



that they attracted these birds. I foresaw, in consequence, that we were about to have our table furnished with a dish which even a nobleman might envy us. I gave the boys leave to kill as many of them as they liked. I knew that, half roasted and put into barrels with melted butter thrown over them, they would keep a long time, and might prove an excellent resource. My wife set about stripping off the feathers of the birds, to dress them for our dinner. I seated myself by her side, and proceeded in my work of arrow-making.

Thus finished another day. Supper ended, and prayers said, we ascended the ladder in procession; and each got into his hammock to taste the sweets of a tranquil sleep.

CHAPTER XIII.

Conversation, a Walk, and important Discoveries.

JACK had finished the trial of his arrows: they flew to admiration; and he practised his



new art incessantly. Little Francis waited with impatience for the moment when he should try also, and followed with his eyes every stroke I made. But when I had finished my bow, and prepared some little arrows for him, I must next undertake to make him a quiver; I took some bark from the branch of a tree, which came off in a round form; and folding the edges over each other, I stuck them together with some glue produced from our soupcakes. I next stuck on a round piece to serve for the bottom; and then tied to it a loop of string which I hung round his neck. He put his arrows into it; and, quite happy, took his bow in his hand, and ran to try his skill by the side of his brother. Fritz had also cleaned and prepared his materials for the cases, when his mother summoned us to dinner. We cheerfully placed ourselves under the shade of our tree, round the table I had manufactured. At the end of the repast, I made the following proposition to the boys, which I was sure would give them pleasure.

“What think you, my good friends,” said I, “of giving a name to the place of our



abode, and to the different parts of the country which are known to us? I do not mean a general name to the whole island, but to the objects we are most concerned with: this will make us better understand each other, when conversing about them; and also present to us the soothing illusion of inhabiting a country already known and peopled."

They all exclaimed, joyfully, that the idea was excellent.

Jack. — Oh! pray, father, let us invent some very long names, and that are very difficult to be pronounced. I should be glad that those who shall read about us, should be a little puzzled to remember the names of the places and things that belonged to us. What pains has it not cost me to remember their *Monomotapa*, their *Zanguebar*, their *Coromandel*, and many other still more difficult. Ah! now we shall take our revenge of them.

Father. — This would be well, if it were probable that our history in this country, and the names we shall have bestowed, were likely to be objects of public curiosity; but in the meanwhile you forget that our own



organs will be fatigued, by frequently pronouncing such barbarous words as you propose.

Jack. — How shall we manage, then? What pretty names can we find?

Father. — We will do as all sorts of nations have done before us. We will call the places by different words from our own language, that shall express some particular circumstance with which we have been concerned.

Jack. — Well, so we will: I shall like this still better. Where shall we begin?

Father. — We shall naturally begin with the bay by which we entered this country. What shall we call it? What say you, Fritz? You must speak first, for you are the eldest.

Fritz. — Let us call it *Oyster Bay*; you remember what quantities of oysters we found in it.

Jack. — Oh, no! let it rather be called *Lobster Bay*; for you cannot have forgot what a large one it was that caught hold of my leg, and which I carried home to you.

Ernest. — Why then we may as well call it the *Bay of Tears*, for you must remember



that you blubbered loud enough for all of us to hear you.

My Wife. — My advice would be that, out of gratitude to God, who conducted us hither in safety, we ought to call it *Providence Bay*, or the *Bay of Safety*.

Father. — These words are both appropriate and sonorous, and please me extremely. But what name shall we give to the spot where we first set up our tent?

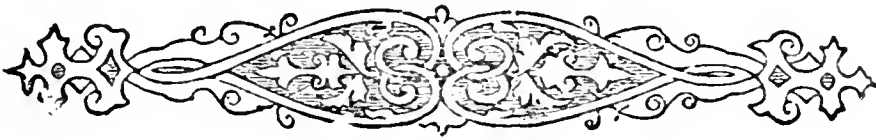
Fritz. — Let us call it simply *Tent House*.

Father. — That will do very well. And the little islet at the entrance of *Providence Bay*, in which we found so many planks and beams that enabled us to make our bridge, how shall it be named?

Ernest. — It may be called *Sea-Gull Island*, or *Shark Island*; for it was here we saw those animals.

Father. — I am for the last of these names, *Shark Island*; for it was the shark that was the cause of the sea-gulls being there; and thus we shall also have a means of commemorating the courage and the triumph of Fritz, who killed the monster.

Jack. — For the same reason, we will call



the marsh, in which you cut the canes for our arrows, *Flamingo Marsh*.

Father. — Quite right, I think; and the plain, through which we passed on our way to this place, *Porcupine Field*, in memory of your skilful encounter with the animal. But now comes the great question, — What shall we give to our present abode?

Ernest. — It ought to be called, simply, *Tree Castle*.

Fritz. — No, no, that will not do at all; that is the same as if, when we wanted to name a town, we called it *The Town*. Let us invent a more noble name.

Jack. — Yes, so we will. I say *Fig Town*.

Fritz. — Ha, ha, ha! a noble name, it must be confessed! Let us call it *The Eagle's Nest*, which I am sure has a much better sound. Besides, our habitation in the tree is really much more like a nest, than a town, and the eagle cannot but ennoble it, since he is the king of birds.

Father. — Will you let me decide the question for you? I think our abode should be called *The Falcon's Nest*; for, you are not arrived at the dignity of eagles, but are, too



truly, poor simple birds of prey; and like the falcon, you also are, I trust, obedient, docile, active, and courageous. Ernest can have no objection to this; for, as he knows, falcons make their nests in large trees. All exclaimed, clapping their hands, "Yes, yes, we will have it *The Falcon's Nest!* the sound is quite chivalrous; so health to *Falcon's Nest Castle!*" cried they, all looking up to the tree, and making low bows. I poured out a small quantity of sweet wine, and presented it to each, to solemnize our baptism. — "Now then," said I, "for the promontory, where Fritz and I in vain wearied our eyes, in search of our companions of the vessel? I think it may properly be called *Cape Disappointment.*"

All. — Yes, this is excellent. And the river with the bridge —

Father. — If you wish to commemorate one of the greatest events of our history, it ought to be called *The Jackall's River*; for these animals crossed it when they came and attacked us, and it was there that one of them was killed. The bridge I should name *Family Bridge*, because we were all employed in



its construction, and all crossed it together in our way to this place. Let me ask you all, if it will not be a great pleasure to converse about the country we inhabit, now that we have instituted names as if every thing belonged to us?

Ernest. — It will be just as if we had farms and country houses, all dependent upon our castle.

Francis. — It is the same as if we were kings.

My Wife. — And the queen mother is not without hope, that her little slips of majesty will conduct themselves mercifully towards their subjects, the birds, the agoutis, the geese, and the flamingoes; the —— What more shall I say? for I do not know the family name of all your vassals. Let me therefore end, by hoping that you will not depopulate your kingdom.

Fritz. — No, mother, we will take care of that. We will endeavor to extirpate only those among our subjects who are wicked.

In this pleasing kind of chat, the time of dinner passed agreeably away. We settled the basis of a geography of this our new coun-



try; and amused ourselves with saying, that it must go by the first post to Europe.

As the evening advanced, and the intense heat of the day began to diminish, I invited all my family to take a walk. "Leave your work for this time, my boys," said I, "and let us make a short excursion; let us seek, in the beautiful face of nature, the traces of the wisdom and goodness of the Creator. Which way shall we direct our steps?"

Fritz. — Let us go to Tent House, father; we are in want of powder and shot for the little consumers of our figs; nor must we miss our dinner for to-morrow, or forget that we are to secure a supply for winter.

My Wife. — I too vote for Tent House; my butter is nearly gone, for Fritz took an unreasonable share for his new trade of tanning; also, I have never failed to observe, that those who most zealously preach a life of frugality and economy, are at least as well satisfied as the rest, when I present them with a savory dinner.

Ernest. — If we go to Tent House, let us try to bring away some of the geese and ducks with us; they will look very well



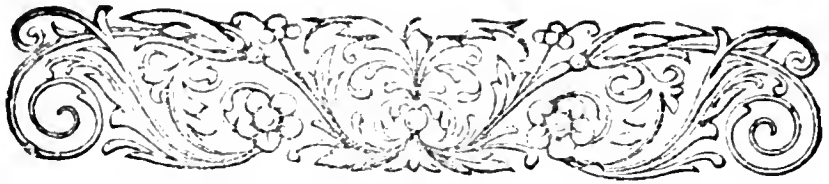
swimming about in our stream here, by Falcon's Nest.

Jack. — I will undertake to catch them, if any one will help to bring them home.

Francis. — And I will catch my handkerchief full of lobsters in the Jackall's River, and we will put them into Falcon's Stream, where, no doubt, they will thrive to admiration.

Father. — You really all of you assign such good reasons, that I see I must yield to them. To Tent House, then, we will go; but we will not take our accustomed road along the sea-shore, but rather vary our pleasure, by trying to explore some other way. We will keep along our own little stream as far as the wall of rocks: it will be easy for us to cross it, by jumping from stone to stone, and so to get to Tent House: we will return with our provisions by the road of Family Bridge, and along the sea-shore. This new route may possibly furnish some additional discoveries.

My idea was highly applauded, and all was soon arranged for our setting out. Fritz was adorned with his fine tiger-cat-made belt.



Jack had his belt also armed with two pistols, round his waist. Each carried a gun and a game bag; even little Francis had his bow in his hand, and his quiver on his shoulder. Their mother was the only person not burdened with a gun; but she carried her large butter-pot, to fill it at our large storehouse. Turk marched before us, with his coat of mail studded with spikes, but it was apparent that he felt intimidated and ill at ease; his step was therefore slow and quiet.

Our rout along the stream was at first extremely agreeable, being sheltered by the shade of large trees, while the ground under our feet was a short and soft kind of grass. To prolong the pleasure of our walk, we proceeded slowly, amusing ourselves with looking about us to the right and left; the eldest boys made frequent escapes on before, so that we sometimes lost sight of them. In this manner we reached the end of the wood; but the country now appeared to be less open, we thought it would be prudent to bring our whole company together. On looking forward, we saw the boys approaching us full gallop, and this time, for a wonder, the grave



Ernest was first. He reached me panting for breath, and so full of joy and eagerness, that he could not pronounce a single word distinctly; but he held out his hand, which contained three little balls of a light green color.

“We have found a prize, indeed, father,” cried he at last, when he had recovered his voice; “we have found some potato seed!”

“What say you? potato seed?” inquired I joyfully; “have you really been so fortunate? Come near, every one of you, and let me look at your little balls;” for I scarcely dared believe in so happy an event, as the discovery of a plant which would place us forever beyond the reach of hunger, and even of apprehension.

We all hastened to the place where these tubercles had been gathered, and, with extreme joy we found there a large plantation of potato plants; a number of them were covered with their lilac and yellow blossoms, the sight of which conveyed more pleasure to our hearts than if they had been the most fragrant roses. Jack bawled out, jumping for joy, “They are really potatoes! and



though it was not I who discovered them, at least it shall be I who will dig them up." Saying this, he knelt down and began to scratch them up from the earth with his hands; the rest of us, unwilling to be idle spectators, set to work also: with our knives and sticks we soon procured a sufficient number to fill our bags and our pockets.

"There are," observed I, "different kinds of vegetables, more succulent and more delicate than the potato; but it is this plain sustenance that can be eaten for the longest time together, without satiety: accordingly, food of this nature, such as bread, rice, potatoes, obtains on the whole, a preference over provisions possessing a higher flavor. Can you tell me, boys, the reason of this?"

Ernest. — I know; it is because they are more wholesome.

Jack. — And because they occasion no disgust; I could eat potatoes every day of my life, without being tired of them.

Father. — All you say is true: in future they will serve us for bread, and often indeed for our whole dinner. But let us for the present dismiss the subject of our unexpected good fortune, and resume our expedition.



CHAPTER XIV.

Continuation of the preceding Chapter; and more Discoveries.

CONVERSING on different subjects, we reached the long chain of rocks, over which our pretty Falcon Stream made its escape in a cascade, delighting at once the eye and the ear in its progress. We thus reached Jack-all's River, and from thence to Tent-House, having with difficulty pushed through the high grass which presented itself. Our fatigue, however, was relieved by the uncommon beauty of the scenery around: on the right hand was a boundless sea; on the left, the island, with the bay by which it was accessible, and the chain of rocks, forming altogether an assemblage of the picturesque, equal to what the liveliest fancy could desire. We distinguished different families of grasses, many of them of the thorn-leaved species, and stronger than those cultivated in the



green-houses of Europe. There was also in abundance the Indian fig, with its large broad leaf; aloes of different forms and colors; the superb prickly candle, or cactus, bearing straight stalks, taller than a man, and crowned with long, straight branches, forming a sort of star. The broad plantain spread along the rocks its innumerable boughs twisted with each other, hanging down perpendicularly, and ornamented with flowers, which grew in large tufts, and were of the brightest rose-color, while that which pleased us best, and which was found there in great abundance, was the king of fruits, both for figure and relish, the crowned pine-apple, of which we all partook with avidity.

Soon after, I was fortunate enough to discover among the multitude of plants which grew either at the foot or in the clefts of the rock, the karata (the *Bromelia Karata* of Linnaeus), many of which were now in blossom. Travelers have given so perfect a description of this plant, that it was impossible I should mistake it. I pointed out to the boys the immense size of its leaves, hollowed in the middle like a saucer, in which rain is



for a long time preserved; also, its beautiful red flowers. As I was acquainted with the properties of this useful plant, the pith of which is used as tinder by the Negroes, who also make a strong kind of thread from the fibres of its leaves, I was not less satisfied with the discovery than I had been with that of the potatoes. Wishing to exhibit one of its uses to my children, I desired Ernest to take out my flint and steel.

I took a dried stalk of the tree, stripped off the bark, and there appeared a kind of dry spongy substance, which I laid upon the flint; and then striking it with a steel, it instantly caught fire. The boys looked on with astonishment, and soon began to caper about, exclaiming: "Long live the tender-tree!"

"Here, then," said I, "we have an article of greater usefulness than if it served merely to gratify the appetite. Your mother will next inform us what materials she will use for sewing your clothes, when her provision of thread from the enchanted bag is exhausted."

My Wife.—I have long been uneasy upon this very subject, and would willingly ex-

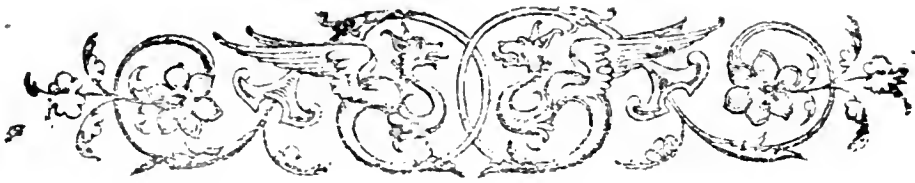


change our greatest luxury for some hemp or flax.

Father. — And your wish shall be accomplished. If you examine, you will find some excellent thread under the leaves of this extraordinary plant, where all-provident nature has placed a storehouse of this valuable article, though the lengths of thread will be found not longer than the leaf. I accordingly drew out of one of the leaves a strong piece of thread of a red color, which I gave to my wife. “How fortunate it is for us,” said she, “that you have had the habit of reading and of study! None of us would have had a thought about this plant, or have conceived that it could be of any use:— but will it not be difficult to draw out the lengths of thread through the prickles that surround them?”

Father. — Not in the least; we shall put the leaves to dry, either in the sun, or by a gentle fire. The useless part of the leaf will then separate by being beaten, and the mass of thread will remain.

Fritz. — I see clearly, father, that we ought not to trust to appearances; but one



may, I suppose, assert that there are no good qualities in the prickly plants, which are growing here in all directions, and wounding the persons who go near them: of what use can they possibly be?

Father. — The greatest part of these possess medicinal virtues; great use is made in pharmacy of the aloe, which produces such abundance of beautiful flowers; in greenhouses in Europe, some have been seen to bear more than three thousand blossoms. At Carlsbad, upon the estates of Count de Limbourg, there was an aloe-tree twenty-six feet in height; it had twenty-eight branches, which branches bore more than three thousand blossoms in the space of a month. At Paris, at Leyden, in Denmark, there have been also some exceedingly curious specimens of this tree; many of them are full of a resinous sort of sap, of which valuable gums are made. But look, here, too, is the Indian fig, or prickly pear, a vegetable of no common interest; it grows in the poorest soils, and, as you see, upon the rocks; the poorer the soil, the more luxuriant and succulent its leaves; I should be tempted to believe that



it was nourished by the air rather than by the earth. It is also called the racket-tree, from the resemblance of its long, thick, flat leaves to that well-known instrument. The plant bears a kind of fig, which is said to be sweet and palatable when ripened in its native sun, and it is a salutary and refreshing food. This, then, is another plant of great utility. I next instructed them how to gather this prickly fruit without injury to their fingers. I threw up a stone, and brought down a fig, which I caught upon my hat; I cut off one end, and was thus enabled to hold it on a knife while I peeled off the skin. I then resigned it to the curiosity of my young companions.

The novelty, rather than the taste, of the fruit, made them think it excellent: they all found means to gather some of the figs, and each was busied in inventing the best method of taking off the skins. In the meantime, I perceived Ernest holding a fig upon the end of his knife, turning it about in all directions, and bringing it close to his eye with a look of curious inquiry. — “I wish I could know,” said at length our young observer, “what



little animals these are in the fig, which feed so eagerly upon it, and are of quite a scarlet color."

Father. — Ha, ha! this too will perhaps turn out a new discovery, and an additional source of usefulness. Let me look at your fig; I will wager that it is the insect called the cochineal.

Jack. — The cochineal! what a droll name! What is the cochineal, father.

Father. — It is an insect of the kind called *suckers*, or *kermes*. He feeds upon the Indian fig, which, no doubt, is the cause of his beautiful color, so much esteemed in dyeing; for nothing else produces so fine a scarlet. In America, they stretch pieces of linen under the branches, and then shake the tree; and when the insects have fallen in great numbers, the ends of the linen are folded together to enclose them; the insects are sprinkled with vinegar or cold water, and sent to Europe, where a high price is paid for them. But I have not yet mentioned a still superior usefulness, peculiar to the Indian fig-tree: — what if I should assert that it can be used as a protection to man?

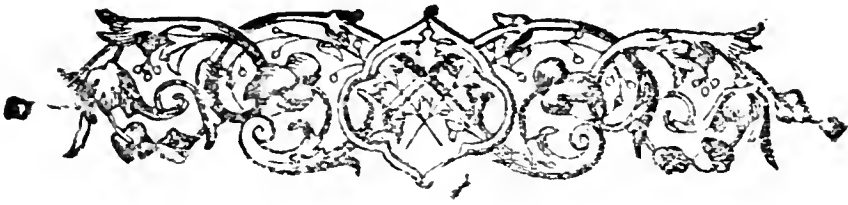


Fritz. — As a protection to man! Why, how can that be, father?

Father. — It is well adapted for enclosing the dwellings of man; for you see, that besides the prickles, there is a large thorn at each of the knots in the stalk, well calculated for repelling the attacks of animals or men.

This, then, you see, is a third usefulness the Indian fig-tree can boast, and of which I was not at first aware. You must perceive of what importance these enclosures are; and the rather, as they are made with so little trouble; for if you plant only one of its leaves in the ground, it immediately takes root, and grows with astonishing rapidity.

Jack, the thoughtless, here cried out, that with the assistance of a knife, or even a stick, it would be easy to get over such a hedge; and he began to cut down with his clasp-knife a pretty large plant, striking to right and left with all his might, till one of the divided leaves fell with such violence on his leg, that the thorns struck into the flesh, and Jack roared out piteously, and quickly sat down to draw them out. I could not, as I assisted him, refrain from laughing a little at his ad-



venture. I observed to him, how difficult it must be for savages, who wear no clothes, to force such a barrier as they formed; and for this once; I had the pleasure of convincing him.

Ernest. — Ah, father, do let us make a hedge of these plants round our tree; we shall then have no further occasion for fires to preserve us from wild beasts, or even from the savages, who may arrive in their canoes, as they did on Robinson Crusoe's Island.

Fritz. — And we could, then, easily gather the cochineal, and try to make the same beautiful scarlet color.

Father. — We shall have time enough for many things my dear children; but for the present, it is sufficient to prove to you, that God has not made any thing to be wholly useless; and that it is the duty of man, on whom he has bestowed the gifts of wisdom and intelligence, to employ those faculties in discovering the utility of the different productions he has allowed to exist.

Jack. — For my part, I have done with the Indian fig-tree, its fruit, its cochineal, and its ugly thorns, and I will never go near it again.



Father. — If the plant could speak, it would most likely say, That little boy shall not come near me any more. Without any reason, or any necessity, but purely out of contradiction to his father, he attacks and destroys me; me, who would have done him service, if he would but have treated me with kindness, and have been careful in coming near me. — And now, Jack, if your leg is still painful, apply a leaf of the karata to it, for I recollect that the plant possesses the property of curing wounds. He accordingly took my advice, and in a few minutes was able to join us on our road to Tent-House.

“Now then,” said Ernest, “I have had an opportunity of learning the valuable properties of the karata tree, and of the Indian fig tree; but I wish I could also be informed what those tall plants are which look like sticks covered with thorns, that I perceive every where about us; I see neither fruit nor insects on them: of what use, then, father, do you think they can be?”

Father. — It is not in my power to explain to you the uses of all the plants in the world; I presume that many exist which have **no**



other than that of contributing to the sustenance of different kinds of animals; and, as I have already told you, it is for man, by his superior intelligence, to discover those that can be applied to his own use. Many possess medicinal qualities of which I am ignorant, and which will become better known as the world advances in age. The plant you speak of is perhaps the prickly candle, described by Bruce, in his *Travels to Abyssinia*, and of which he gives a drawing; the only difference that I perceive being the size. "They serve," says he, "for food to the elephant and the rhinoceros; the first with his strong teeth, or his trunk, and the latter with his horn, lays hold of this seeming stick, and rips it up from one end to the other; they then devour the pith, and sometimes the rind."

Ernest. — The palate of these animals must surely be made of iron, to be able to chew such a thorny substance without injury.

Fritz. — Why so? Camels and asses are very fond of thistles, and appear to digest them extremely well. It is probable, therefore, that the stomach of these animals is so



formed, that these prickly substances occasion in it only an agreeable excitation favorable to their appetite and their digestion.

Father. — Your idea is not a bad one; and if it be not true, it is at least probable.

Fritz. — Will you tell me, father, the precise difference between *true* and *probable*?

Father. — Your question is one of those which have occupied the attention of philosophers for countless years, and would be too tedious for discussion at this moment; I will, however, endeavor to make my answer such, as to be of use to you, in the science of logic, or the art of reasoning. Let us see if you will understand it — What we call *true*, is that which cannot in any way be contradicted, and which exactly agrees, in every point, with the idea we conceive of a certain object, or as it really exists before our eyes: for example, when I make an impression with my seal on some warm wax, it is absolutely *true* that the figure impressed on the wax, is the same as that on the seal. A thing is *probable*, when we have a variety of motives for believing it true, without, however, being able to bring any proof. Again, we



call *false*, that which is in positive contradiction to all our notions, our reason, and our experience. Is it, *true*, *probable*, or *false*, that a man can fly up into the air?

All. — It is false, absolutely false.

Father. — How so?

Jack. — Because the thing is impossible.

Father. — Very well, my young philosopher, and why is the thing impossible?

Jack. — Because it is not possible.

Father. — Ha, ha, ha! here is a pretty round of *possible* and *impossible*. *It is false because no such thing can be done, and no such thing can be done, because it is not possible.* Presently you will tell me that it is impossible because it is false. Try again, my lads, we must have some better reasons. What say you, Ernest?

Ernest. — I say, that the thing cannot be done, because it is not in the nature of man to fly; that having no wings, he is not formed for flying.

Father. — Well, if some one should assert, that a man is able to make a machine, by the assistance of which he can raise and support himself in the air without wings, and without



the machine resting upon any thing; would this be *probable* or *improbable*? What think you, Fritz?

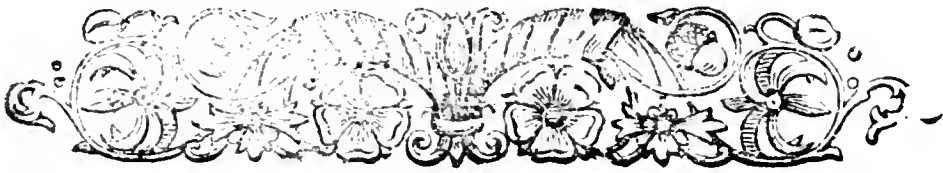
Fritz. — I think I should have said *improbable*, if I had not known that people have accomplished what you describe, by the invention of balloons.

Father. — And why should you have thought it *improbable*?

Fritz. — Because man is, in his nature, heavier than the air; and I should have supposed, that a machine of whatever kind, instead of diminishing, would only add to his weight.

Father. — Very well reasoned. But you would be told that this machine is of large dimensions, and composed of a close, light kind of silk, and that it is filled with air chemically prepared, which being much lighter than atmospheric air, tends perpetually to ascend, and supports the man in the air, as bladders support you upon the water. Do you understand **all** this, my boy? and what have you to say in **answer**?

Fritz. — Yes, father, I understand it; and I perceive how it might be probable, that



since man has discovered a means to be sustained upon water, he might also find the means to raise and sustain himself in the air.

Father. — And when a multitude of persons of veracity, and of different ages, shall declare that with their own eyes they saw a balloon, to which a parachute was fastened filled with men, and that all mounted in the air together, and disappeared above the clouds; should you still maintain that it is false that a man can fly?

All. — No, to be sure, we should say that it is quite true that he can fly.

Father. — And yet you all said, but a minute ago, that it was absolutely false.

Fritz. — Ah! but we said that, father, of a man by himself, independently of any machine he might construct; for though nature has refused him wings, she has not failed to bestow on him an inventive mind, which more than compensates for that deficiency.

Father. — Your observation is perfectly just, and I hope you will not fail to profit by it. With the aid of his intelligence, and his reason, there is scarcely any thing which man cannot attain to. But to return to our



example: you will find in it the definition of the words which you ask me about: it is *false*, that a man of himself can fly; it is *probable*, that by the aid of a machine of his own invention he may be enabled to mount and sustain himself in the air; and it is also *absolutely true*, that this has been effected by man, though without his having yet found a certain means of guiding these factitious wings; a defect which, in a great measure, renders his discovery useless.

At this point of our discourse, we reached Jackall's River, which we crossed, stepping with great care from stone to stone, and shortly arrived at our old habitation, where we found every thing as we had left it; and each went in pursuit of what he intended to take away. Fritz loaded himself with powder and shot: I and my wife and Francis employed ourselves in filling our pot with butter, the carrying of which on our return it was agreed was to fall on me. Ernest and Jack looked about for the geese and ducks; but as they were become somewhat savage, the boys could not succeed in catching one of them. The idea then occurred to Ernest,



of taking a small bit of cheese, and tying it to the end of a piece of string, and holding it to float in the water. The voracious animals hastened eagerly to seize it. In this way, Ernest drew them towards him, one by one, with the cheese in its mouth, till he had caught the whole: each bird was then tied in a pocket handkerchief, leaving the head at liberty, and fastened one to each game-bag, so that all had a share in carrying them.

We had a thought of taking back a provision of salt; but the sacks being occupied with potatoes, we could only throw a small quantity loose into one of them, to lie between the potatoes; in this way we secured a tolerable supply.

We now set out loaded on our return. The ducks and geese, with their heads and necks stretching out at our shoulders, cackling with all their might, gave us a truly singular and ludicrous appearance, and we could not help laughing immoderately as we passed the bridge, one after another, accoutred in so strange a fashion. Our mutual jokes, and the general good humor which prevailed, served to shorten the length of the walk, and



none complained of fatigue, till seated under our tree at Falcon's Stream. My wife now prepared to console us, by putting some of the potatoes which we so eagerly desired to taste, immediately on the fire. She next milked the cow and the goat, and gave us a draught of their warm milk. The kind creature, fatigued at least as much as any of us, made no attempt to rest herself, till she had provided us with all she had to give for our refreshment. Having dined heartily on our potatoes, we concluded the day with evening-prayers, and then joyfully climbed our ladder to seek the blessing of repose in our aerial castle.

CHAPTER XV.

Hopes of a Sledge—Some short Lessons in useful Things.

I HAD observed along the shore many pieces of wood, of which I thought I could make a kind of conveyance for our cask of butter



and other provisions from Tent-House to Falcon's Stream, and had secretly determined to go early the next morning, before my family should be awake, to the spot. I had fixed upon Ernest for my assistant, thinking that his indolent temper required to be stimulated to exertion. I made him feel as a great favor the preference I gave him, and he promised to be ready at a very early hour. I was also desirous to leave Fritz with the family, as, being the tallest and strongest, he was more able to afford protection.

At the first dawn of morning I quietly awoke Ernest. He got up, and we descended the ladder without being perceived by the rest, who continued to sleep soundly. We roused the ass, and I made him draw some large branches of a tree, which I wanted for my undertaking.

We were not long in finding the pieces of wood, and set to work to cut them the proper length, and we then laid them cross-ways on the branches, which we thus converted into a kind of vehicle. We added to the load a little chest, which we found half buried in the sands, quite close to the waves, and then



we set out on our return to Falcon's Stream. When we reached our abode, the chest we had brought was soon opened by a strong hatchet, for all were eager to see what was within. It contained only some sailors' dresses and some linen: and both were wet with the sea.

We then sat down tranquilly to breakfast; and I next inspected the booty of the young sportsmen, who had shot, in all, no less than fifty ortolans and thrushes, and had used so large a quantity of powder and shot, that when they were about to resume their sport, my wife and I stopped them, recommending a more frugal use of those valuable materials. I taught them how to make some snares, to be suspended from the branches of the fig-tree, and advised them to use the thread of the karata, which is as strong as horse-hair, for the purpose. What is new always amuses young persons, and the boys accordingly took a great fancy to this mode of sporting. Jack succeeded in his very first attempt; I left Francis to assist him, and took Fritz and Ernest to help me in making the new carriage.

As we were hard at work, a prodigious



“Fritz, with a strong hatchet, forced the chest open, and we all crowded eagerly to see the contents.”





clatter was heard among the fowls; the cock crowed louder than the rest, and the hens ran to and fro, as if pursued. "I wonder what is the matter with the creatures," cried my wife, rising; "every day I hear the hens clucking as if they had been laying eggs." At this moment Ernest happened to look at the monkey, and remarked that he fixed his piercing eyes on the hens; and when he saw my wife approaching, driving the hens before her, he jumped quickly into a hollow place under one of the roots of the tree, and hid himself. Ernest was at the place as soon as he, and caught him with a new-laid egg in his paw, which he was going to conceal. The monkey sprang away to another hole, and Ernest followed; here also he found some eggs, and brought them in his hat to his mother, who received them with great pleasure. The monkey, greedy of such food, had seized the egg as soon as the hens had laid them. We inflicted no other punishment upon him for this little piece of knavery, than that of tying him up when the hens were about to lay. My wife expressed her joy at this new acquisition, and soon collected a



great number of eggs, and we waited with impatience for the time when the hens would sit, in the hope of seeing their species multiplied.

In the meanwhile, Jack had got into the tree, and had suspended some of the snares to the branches, to catch the little devourers of our figs; he came down again to bring us the acceptable intelligence, that our pigeons had made a sort of nest there of some dry grass, and that it already contained several eggs. I therefore forbade the boys from firing any more in the tree, for fear of alarming or wounding these gentle creatures. I also directed that the snares should be frequently examined, to see that the pigeons were not caught in them, as they might be strangled in their efforts to get loose. My sons had all murmured a little at my prohibition of the gunpowder; and little Francis with his innocent face came running to tell me, that he was going to ask his brother to help him to sow some gunpowder, that they might have plenty. We all laughed heartily at the idea, and Professor Ernest did not overlook the occasion to display his science.



During these arrangements, the boys and I had been busily employed: our work was completed. Two bent pieces of wood, the segments of a circle, which I fixed in their places by a straight piece of wood placed across, and firmly fixed to the bent pieces in the middle, and at the rear, formed the outline of my machine. I then fastened two ropes in front, and here was a sledge as perfect as could be desired. As I had not raised my eyes from my work, I did not know what my wife and the two youngest boys had been about. On looking up, I perceived that they had been stripping off the feathers from a quantity of birds which the boys had killed, and that they afterwards spitted them on an officer's sword, which Fritz had fancied and brought from the ship, and which my wife had turned into this useful kitchen utensil. I approved of the idea; but I blamed her profusion, in dressing more birds at once than we could eat. She reminded me, that I had myself advised her to half roast the birds before putting them into the butter, to be preserved for future use. She was in hopes, she said, that as I had now a



sledge, I should not fail of going to Tent-House after dinner, to fetch the cask of butter, and in the meanwhile, she was endeavoring to be ready with the birds. I had no objection to this, and determined on going to Tent-House the same day, requesting my wife to hasten the dinner for that purpose. She replied, that this was already her intention, as she also had a little project in her head, which I should be informed of at my return. I, for my part, had one too, which was to refresh myself after the heat and fatigue of my laborious occupations, by a plunge into the sea. I wished that Ernest, who was to accompany me, should bathe also; while Fritz was to remain at home for the protection of the family.

CHAPTER XVI.

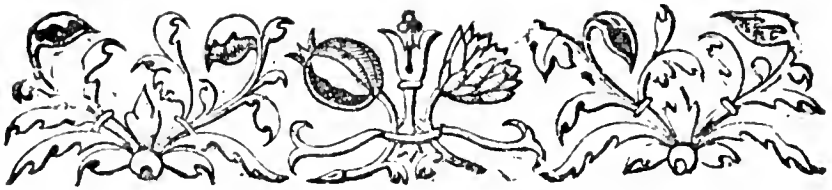
A Bathing, a Fishing, the jumping Hare, and a Masquerade.

AT the moment of departure, Fritz presented his brother and myself with a case of



his own workmanship, which we stuck into our belts, and which, in reality, were well contrived for holding spoons, and knives and forks, while room was left in the middle for a little hatchet. I praised Fritz for having thus brought his idea to perfection, and for contriving to make two cases with his skin instead of one.

We had harnessed the ass and the cow to our sledge; we each took a piece of bamboo-cane in hand, to serve as a whip; and resting our guns upon our shoulders, began our journey. Flora was to accompany us, and Turk to remain behind. We bade adieu to our companions, and put our animals in motion. We took the road by the sea-shore, where the sands afforded better traveling for our vehicle, than the thick wild grass. We reached Family Bridge, on Jackall's River, and arrived at Tent-House without either obstacle or adventure, and unharnessed the animals to let them graze, while we set to work to load the sledge with the cask of butter, the cask of cheese, a small barrel of gunpowder, different instruments, some ball, and some shot. These exertions had so oc-



cupied our thoughts, that it was late when we first observed that our animals, attracted by the excellent quality of the grass on the other side of the river, had repassed the bridge, and wandered so far as to be out of sight. I was in hopes they would be easily found, and directed Ernest to go with Flora and bring them back, intending in the meantime to look for a convenient place, on the other side of Tent-House, to bathe in. In a short time I found myself at the extremity of Providence Bay, which ended, as I now perceived, in a marsh, producing some fine bulrushes; and further on, a chain of steep rocks, advancing somewhat into the sea, and forming a kind of creek, as if expressly contrived for bathing. The juttings of the rock even seemed like little cabinets, for separate accommodation. Enchanted with this discovery, I called out to Ernest to come and join me, and in the meantime amused myself with cutting some of the rushes, and imagining what use I could apply them to.

I desired him to fill a small bag with some of the salt he had formerly observed here, and then to empty it into the large one for



the ass to carry; and to take care to fill equally on each side. "During this time, I will take the refreshment of bathing; and then it will be your turn to bathe, and mine to take care of the animals."

I returned to the rocks, and was not disappointed in my expectation of an enjoyment the most delicious; but I did not stay long, fearing my boy might be impatient for his share of so new a pleasure. When I had dressed myself, I returned to the place to see if his work had advanced: presently I heard his voice calling out, "Father, father, a fish! a fish of monstrous size! Run quickly, father, I can hardly hold him! he is eating up the string of my line!" I ran to the place from which the voice proceeded, and found Ernest lying along the ground on his face, upon the extremity of a point of land, and pulling in his line, to which a large fish was hanging, and struggling to get loose. I ran hastily and snatched the rod out of his hand, for I feared the weight and activity of the fish might pull him into the water. I gave the line length, to calm the fish, and then contrived to draw him gently along, into



a shallow, from which he could no longer escape, and thus he was effectually secured. We examined him thoroughly, and he appeared to weigh not less than fifteen pounds; so that our capture was magnificent, and would afford the greatest pleasure to our good steward of provisions at Falcon's Stream. "You have now really labored," said I to Ernest, "not only with your head, but with your whole body; and I would advise you to wipe the perspiration from your face, and keep a little quiet before you venture into the water. You have procured us a dish of great excellence, which will last for several days, and have conducted yourself like a true cavalier, *without fear and without reproach.*"

"It was at least fortunate," observed he in a modest tone, "that I thought of bringing my fishing-rod."

Father. — Certainly it was. But tell me how you came to see this large fish, and what made you think you could catch it?

Ernest. — I used to remark great quantities of fish in the water, just hereabout, and this made me determine to bring my fishing-tackle with me. In my way to the salt, I



perceived a great number of little crabs, upon which fishes feed, near the water's brink; I thought I would try to bait my hook with one of them; so I hastened my work, and came to this spot, where I caught only a dozen little fish, which are there in my handkerchief; but I remarked, that they were chased in the water by fishes of larger size. This gave me the idea of baiting my hook with one of the small ones; but the hook was too small, and my rod too weak. I then took one of the finest of the bulrushes you had just gathered, and put a larger hook to my line, and in a short time the large fish you see there seized upon the bait, and paid his life for his voracity. However, I must confess, that if you had not come to my assistance, I must either have let go my line, or have been dragged into the water; for the fish was stronger than I.

We now examined the smaller fishes, which were mostly trout and herrings, while I felt certain that the large one was a salmon. I cut them all open, and rubbed them in the inside with salt, that they might not be injured by the heat. While I was thus em-



ployed, Ernest went to the rocks and bathed, and I had time to fill some more bags with salt, before his return. We then harnessed and loaded our animals, and then resumed the road to Falcon's Stream.

When we had proceeded about half way, Flora, who was before us, suddenly sprang off, and by her barking gave notice that she scented some game. We soon after saw her pursuing an animal, which seemed endeavoring to escape, and made the most extraordinary jumps imaginable. The dog continuing to follow, the creature, in trying to avoid him, passed within gun-shot of the place where I stood. I fired, but its flight was so rapid, that I did not hit. Ernest, who was at a small distance behind, hearing the report of my gun, prepared his own, and fired it off at the instant the singular animal was passing near him, seeking to hide itself among the tall herbage just by: he had fired so skillfully, that the animal fell dead at the same instant. I ran with extreme curiosity to ascertain what kind of quadruped it might be. It was as large as a sheep, with the tail resembling that of a tiger; both its snout and



hair were like those of a mouse, and its teeth were like a hare's, but much larger; the fore legs resembled those of the squirrel, and were extremely short; but to make up for this, its hind legs were as long as a pair of stilts, and of a form strikingly singular. We examined the creature a long time in silence; I could not be sure that I had ever seen an engraving or description of it in any natural history, or book of travels. Ernest at length, clapping his hands together, joyously exclaimed, "And have I really killed this wonderful animal. What will my mother and my brothers say? How astonished they will be! and how fortunate I am in securing so fine a prize! What do you think is its name, I would give all the world to know."

Father. — And so would I, my boy; but I am as ignorant as you. One thing, however, is certain, that this is your lucky day. Let us again examine this interesting stranger, that we may be certain to what family of quadrupeds it belongs: this will perhaps throw a light upon its name.

Ernest. — I think it can hardly be named a quadruped; for the little fore legs look



much more like hands, as is the case with monkeys.

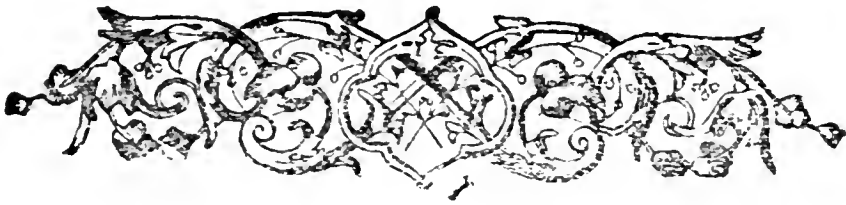
Father. — They are notwithstanding legs, I can assure you. Let us look for its name among the animals who give suck; on this point we cannot be mistaken. Now let us examine its teeth.

Ernest. — Here are the four incisory teeth, like the squirrel.

Father. — Thus we see that it belongs to the order of Nibblers. Now let us look for some names of animals of this kind.

Ernest. — Besides squirrels, I recollect only mice, marmots, hares, beavers, porcupines, and jumpers.

Father. — Jumpers! That short word furnishes the necessary clue; the animal is completely formed like the gerboa or jumping hare, except that it is twice the size of those of which I have read a description Wait a moment — an idea strikes me: I will wager that our animal is one of the large jumpers, called kangaroo; it belongs properly to the genus *Didelphis* or *Philander*; because the female, who never bears more than one young one, carries it in a kind of



purse placed between her hind legs. To the best of my knowledge, this animal has never been seen but on the coast of New Holland, where it was first observed by the celebrated navigator, Captain Cook. You may then be highly flattered with your adventure of killing an animal at once so rare and so remarkable. But now let us see how we shall manage to drag him to the sledge. Ernest requested that I would rather assist him to carry it, as he was afraid of spoiling its beautiful mouse-colored skin by dragging it on the ground. I therefore tied the fore legs of the kangaroo together; and, by means of two canes, we with considerable trouble contrived to carry it to the sledge, upon which it was securely fastened.

Having now nothing more to detain us, we continued our road towards Falcon's Stream, conversing on the subject of natural history, and on the necessity of studying it in our youth, that we might learn to class plants and animals according to their characteristic marks; and we observed, that to such a knowledge as this it was owing that we had recognized the kangaroo. Ernest entreated



me to tell him all I knew about the animal. "It is," said I, "a most singular kind of creature. Its fore legs, as you see, have scarcely the third part of the length of the hind ones, and the most it can do, is to make them serve the purpose of walking; but the hind legs enabled it to make prodigious jumps, the same as in the flea and the grasshopper. The food of the kangaroo consists of herbs and roots, which they dig up very skilfully with their fore legs. They place themselves upon their hind legs, which are doubled under them, as if on a chair, and by this means are able to look above even the tall kinds of grass; they rest too upon their tail, which is exceedingly strong, and is also of great use to them in jumping, by assisting the spring from the ground. It is said that the kangaroo, if deprived of its tail, would scarcely be able to jump at all."

We at length arrived happily, though somewhat late, at Falcon's Stream, having heard from a great distance the salutations of our family. Our companions all ran to meet us; but it was now, on seeing the ludicrous style of the dress of the three boys, our turn for



immoderate fits of laughter: one had on a sailor's shirt, which trained round him like the robe of a spectre; another was buried in a pair of pantaloons, which were fastened round his neck, and reached to the ground; and the third had a long waistcoat, which came down to the instep, and gave him the exact form of a traveling portmanteau. They all tried to jump about, but finding this impossible, from the length of their garments, they next resolved to carry off the whole with an air, by strutting slowly to and fro, in the manner of a great personage in a theatre. After some hearty laughing, I inquired of my wife what could be the cause of this masquerade, and whether she had assisted them in attempting to act a comedy for our amusement. She disclosed the mystery by informing me, that her three boys had also been bathing, and that, while thus engaged, she had washed all their clothes; but as they had not dried so soon as she expected, her little rioters had become impatient, and had fallen on the chest of sailor's clothes, and each had taken from it what article he had pleased. "I preferred," said she, "that you should



see them in this odd sort of a disguise rather than quite naked, like little savages;" in which opinion I assured her that I heartily joined.

It was now our turn to give an account of our journey: as we advanced in our narrative, we presented, one after another, casks, bulrushes, salt, fish, and lastly, with infinite triumph, our beautiful kangaroo. In a trice it was surrounded, examined, and admired by all, and such a variety of questions asked, that Ernest and I scarcely knew which to answer first. Fritz was the only one who was a little silent. I saw plainly by his countenance what was passing in his mind. He was jealous of the good fortune of his brother Ernest; but I also saw that he was struggling manfully against the ascendancy of so mean a passion. In a short time he had succeeded so completely, that he joined frankly and unaffectedly in our conversation and merriment. He came near the kangaroo, and examined it; then turning to his brother, he observed to him, in a kind tone, that he had had good luck, and that he must be a good shot to have killed the animal with



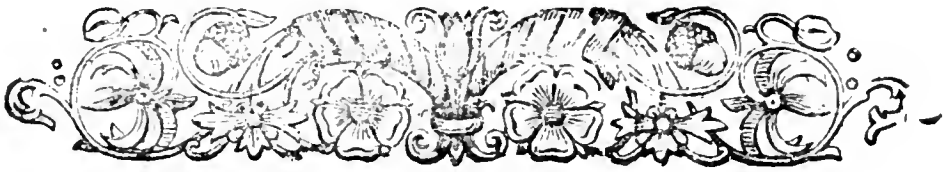
so little difficulty. — “But, father,” said he, “when you go again to Tent House, or on any other excursion, will it not be my turn to accompany you? For here at Falcon’s Stream there is nothing new to amuse us; a few thrushes, and some pigeons; this is all we have from day to day, and I find it very tiresome.”

“I promise you cheerfully what you desire, my dear boy,” said I, “for you have valiantly combated the jealousy and ill-humor which assailed you on witnessing your brother’s success with the kangaroo. I therefore engage that you shall accompany me in my very next excursion, which will probably take place at no greater distance of time than to-morrow; and it will be another journey to the vessel. But in the meantime, let me observe to you, that the high opinion I have shown of your prudence and judgment, in leaving you here, in charge of your mother and your brothers, ought to be felt by you as more flattering than the applause you would have gained by killing a kangaroo. You have accomplished an important duty, in keeping near them all the time, and not



suffering yourself to be allured by such amusements as presented themselves to your fancy; and this conduct has increased my affection and respect for you. Praise is also due to Ernest, for the moderation with which he has felt his triumph, in so extraordinary an occurrence; for he has not even told you of my humiliating failure in attempting to shoot the kangaroo. To triumph over our passions, and to have on all occasions a perfect government of our temper, is an acquisition of infinitely more value than the showing a certain skill in firing off a gun, and happening to kill an animal. In our situation, we are forced upon the cultivation of such arts as these; but though we may practise them as necessary for our existence, we have no reason to be proud of them."

We concluded the day with our ordinary occupations: I gave some salt to each of our animals, to whom it was an acceptable treat. We then skinned our kangaroo, and put it carefully aside till the next day, when we intended to cut it to pieces, and lay such parts in salt as we could not immediately consume. We made an excellent supper on our little



fish, to which we added some potatoes; nor were our faithful companions Turk and Flora neglected. The labors of the day had more than usually disposed us all to seek repose; we therefore said our prayers at an early hour, mounted our ladder, and were soon asleep.

CHAPTER XVII.

More Stores from the Wreck.

I ROSE with the first crowing of the cock, descended the ladder, and set about skinning the kangaroo, taking care not to deface its beautiful smooth coat. Our dogs relished their meal on the entrails of the animal so much, that they intended themselves the pleasure of a breakfast on the carcass. Before I could descend, they had got off its head, as it hung by the hind feet, and, half friends, half foes, they were going to share their price when I made my appearance. Recollecting our want of the means of protection against similar depredations, I thought



it right to give them a slight correction for their fault. My wife, awaked by the growling they made as they slunk away to the hollow of a tree, was alarmed, and came down the ladder to see what was the matter; and now I had to perform the farther task of appeasing her kind heart for what she called a cruel act. "Kind-hearted creature," said I, "well I know how glad you would be if there were not a stick in the world! But I did not beat Turk and Flora through anger or revenge, but from prudence and precaution: they intended modestly only to eat up our kangaroo, which you promised yourself such pleasure in cooking; and unable as I was to acquaint them in the canine tongue, that it was not placed there for their use, it was proper to let them know this in such a way as to deter them in future; otherwise, as they are strongest, they would end by devouring all our stock."

My wife owned I was in the right: but I observed her from a corner of my eye hovering about the hollow tree, and patting the dogs to console them. I now set about stripping my kangaroo, without injuring the skin;



but I advanced so slowly in the business, that my family were assembled about us, and calling out Famine! before I had finished my work. Having at last completed it, I went to the river to wash myself thoroughly, and then to the sailors' chest to change my coat, that I might appear with decency at breakfast, and give my sons an example of that cleanliness which their mother was so eager to inculcate. Breakfast over, I ordered Fritz to get ready for Tent-House, where we should prepare the boat, and proceed to the vessel.

After taking an affectionate leave of my wife, we began our journey. I left Flora with her, and entreated her not to be uneasy, and to commit herself to the care of the kind Providence who had till then so graciously watched over us, and who would again bring us back to her safe and sound, enriched with many things conducive to our welfare. But to bring her to reason on the subject of these trips to the vessel was impracticable: I left her bathed in tears, and praying God that **this** might be the last.

We took Ernest and Jack a little way with



us, and then I sent them back with a message to their mother, which I had not the resolution to deliver myself—that we might be forced to pass the night on board the vessel, and not return till the evening of the following day. It was most essential to get out of it, if yet afloat, all that could be saved, as a moment might complete its destruction. I instructed my sons how they should soothe their mother; I exhorted them to obey and to assist her; and that their excursion might not be useless, I directed them to gather some salt, and enjoined them to be at Falcon's Stream before noon.

We got into the boat, and gaining the current, quickly cleared Safety Bay, and reached the vessel, whose open side offered us an ample space to get on board. When we had fastened our boat, our first care was to select fit materials to construct a raft, as suggested by my son Ernest. Our boat of staves had neither room nor solidity enough to carry a considerable burden; we therefore looked about, and found a sufficient number of water-casks which appeared to me proper for my new enterprise. We emptied them,



replaced the bungs carefully, and threw the casks overboard, after securing them with ropes and cramps, so as to keep them together at the vessel's side: this completed, we placed a sufficient number of planks upon them to form a firm and commodious platform or deck, to which we added a gunwale of a foot in depth all round, to secure the lading. Thus we contrived a handsome raft, in which we could stow thrice as much as in our boat. This laborious task had taken up the whole day; we scarcely allowed ourselves a minute to eat some cold meat we had provided, that we might not lose any time in looking for the provisions on board the vessel. In the evening, Fritz and I were so weary, that it would have been impossible for us to row back to land; so having taken all due precautions in case of a storm, we lay down in the captain's cabin, on a good elastic mattrass, which induced such sound repose, that our prudent design to watch in turn, for fear of accident, was forgot, and we both slept heavily, side by side, till broad daylight opened our eyes. We rose, and actively set to work to load our raft.



We began with stripping the cabin of its doors and windows, with their appendages, next we secured the carpenter's and gunner's chests, containing all their tools and implements: those we could remove with levers and rollers were put entire upon the raft, and we took out of the others what rendered them too heavy. One of the captain's chests was filled with costly articles, which no doubt he meant to dispose of to the opulent planters of Port Jackson, or among the savages: In the collection were several gold and silver watches, snuff-boxes of all descriptions, buckles, shirt-buttons, necklaces, rings; in short, an abundance of all the trifles of European luxury. But the discovery that delighted me most, was a chest containing some dozens of young plants of every species of European fruits, which had been carefully packed in moss for transportation. I perceived pear, plum, almond, peach, apple, apricot, chestnut trees, and vine shoots. I beheld with a feeling I cannot describe, those productions of my dear country, which once so agreeably embellished my rural dwelling, and which, I might hope, would thrive in a foreign soil.



We discovered a number of bars of iron, and large pigs of lead, grinding-stones, cart wheels ready for mounting, a complete set of farrier's instruments, tongs, shovels, plough-shares, rolls of iron and copper wire, sacks full of maize, pease, oats, vetches, and even a little hand-mill. The vessel had been freighted with every thing likely to be useful in an infant colony so distant. We found a saw-mill, in a separated state, but each piece numbered, and so accurately fitted, that nothing was easier than to put it together for use.

I had now to consider what of all these treasures I should take or leave. It was impossible to carry with us in one trip such a quantity of goods; and to leave them in the vessel, was exposing ourselves to be wholly deprived of them.

We with difficulty and hard labor finished our loading, having added a large fishing-net, quite new, and the vessel's great compass. With the net, Fritz found two harpoons and a rope-windlass, such as they use in the whale-fishery. He asked me to let him place the harpoons, tied to the end of the rope, over the bow of our tub-boat, and



thus be in readiness in case of seeing any large fish; and I indulged him in his fancy.

Having completely executed our undertaking, we stepped into the tub-boat, and with some small difficulty, which a little reflection and a few experiments soon enabled us to overcome, we pushed out for the current, drawing our raft triumphantly after us with a stout rope, which we had been careful to fasten securely at its head.

CHAPTER XVIII.

The Tortoise harnessed.

THE wind was favorable, and briskly swelled our sail. The sea was calm, and we advanced at a considerable rate. Fritz had for some time fixed his eyes on something of a large size which was floating on the water, and he now desired me to take the glass, and see what it could be. I soon perceived that it was a tortoise, which had fallen asleep in the sun on the surface of the water. No



sooner had Fritz learned this, than he entreated me to steer softly within view of so extraordinary a creature. I readily consented; but as his back was towards me, and the sail between us, I did not observe his motions, till a violent jerk of the boat, a sudden turning of the windlass, and then a second jerk, accompanied by a rapid motion of the boat, gave me the necessary explanation. "For Heaven's sake, what are you about, Fritz?" exclaimed I, somewhat alarmed.

— "I have caught him!—I touched him!" cried Fritz, without hearing one word I had been saying. — "The tortoise is ours; it cannot escape, father! Is not this, then, a valuable prize, for it will furnish dinners for us all for many weeks?"

I soon perceived that the harpoon had caught the animal, which, feeling itself wounded, thus agitated the vessel in its endeavors to get away. I quickly pulled down the sail, and seizing a hatchet, sprung to the boat's head to cut the rope, and let the harpoon and the tortoise go; but Fritz caught hold of my arm, conjuring me to wait a moment, and not so hastily bring upon him the



mortification of losing, at one stroke, the harpoon, the rope, and tortoise: he proposed watching himself, with the hatchet in his hand, to cut the rope suddenly, should any sign of danger appear; and I yielded to his entreaties.

Thus, then, drawn along by the tortoise, we proceeded with a hazardous rapidity. I soon observed that the creature was making for the sea; I therefore again hoisted the sail: and as the wind was to the land, and very brisk, the tortoise found resistance of no avail: he accordingly fell into the track of the current, and drew us straight towards our usual place of landing, and by good fortune without striking upon any of the rocks. We, however, did not disembark without one difficult adventure. The state of the tide was such as to throw us upon a sand bank: we were at this time within a gunshot of the shore; the boat, though driven with violence, remained upright in the sand. I stepped into the water, which did not reach far above my knees, for the purpose of conferring upon our conductor his just reward for the alarm he had caused us, when he suddenly gave a



plunge, and then disappeared. Following the rope, I presently saw the tortoise stretched at length at the bottom of the water, where it was so shallow that I soon found means to put an end to his pain by cutting off his head with the hatchet, and he bled to death. Being now near Tent-House, Fritz gave a halloo, and fired a gun, to apprise our relatives that we were not only arrived, but arrived in triumph. This soon produced the desired effect: the mother and her three young ones soon appeared, running towards us; upon which Fritz jumped out of the boat, placed the head of our sea-prize on the muzzle of his gun, and walked to shore, which I reached at the same moment; and all were once more received with the kindest salutations, and such questions as kindness best knows how to propose.

After some gentle reproaches from my wife, for leaving her and the boys for so long a time, the history of the tortoise was related, and excited much merriment in our auditors. The tender-hearted mother, after heaving a sigh for the hard fate of the creature, began to shudder at the thought of the danger we had been exposed to, and the escape we had effected.



Our conversation ended, I requested my wife to go with two of the younger boys to Falcon's Stream, and fetch the sledge and the beasts of burden, that we might see at least a part of our booty from the ship put safely under shelter the same evening. A tempest, or even the tide, might sweep away the whole during the night! We took every precaution in our power against the latter danger, by fixing the boat and the raft, now, at the time of its reflux, as securely as we could without an anchor. I rolled two prodigious masses of lead, with the assistance of levers, from the raft upon the shore, and then tied a rope to each, the other ends of which were fastened, one to the raft, and the other to the boat, and thus satisfied myself that they could not easily be forced away.

While we were employed on this scheme, the sledge arrived, and we placed the tortoise upon it, and also some other articles of light weight, mattresses, pieces of linen, &c.; for I reckoned that the animal itself weighed at least three quintals. The strength of our whole party was found necessary to move it from the raft to the sledge; we therefore all



set out together to unload it again at Falcon's Stream.

Our first concern, on reaching our abode, was the tortoise, which we immediately turned on his back, that we might strip off the shell, and make use of some of the flesh while it was fresh. Taking my hatchet, I separated the upper and under shell all round, which were joined together by cartilages. The upper shell of the tortoise is extremely convex; the under, on the contrary, is nearly flat. I cut away as much of the flesh of the animal as was sufficient for a meal, and laid the rest carefully on the under shell, which served as a dish, recommending my wife to cook what I had cut off, on the other shell, with no other seasoning than a little salt, and pledged myself that she would produce a luxurious dish. "We will then," said I, "rub salt on what we mean to keep, and distribute the head, entrails, and feet to the dogs; for all, you know, must live."

"Oh dear papa," cried Francis, "do give me the shell, it will be such a pretty plaything!"

"No, no," bawled out another; and one



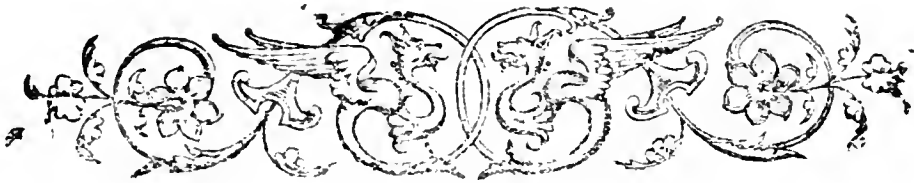
and all contended for the preference. I imposed silence, declaring that the right was entirely in Fritz; "but," continued I, "it may be well to ask what each of you thought of doing with the shell, if he had obtained it?"

Ernest. — I should turn it into a shield to defend myself with, if the savages should come upon us.

Father. — Ah, there is my egotist again; but let us see in what way you would use it. You would fling it across your shoulders, no doubt, and take to your heels manfully. I have guessed right, my poor Ernest, have I not? — And you, Jack, what have you to say?

Jack. — I should make a nice little boat of it, which would help to amuse us all. I was thinking how cleverly we could fill it with potatoes, or the other things we want to take from Tent-House to Falcon's Nest; it would glide along so nicely with the stream, and we should be saved all the fatigue we now have in carrying them.

Father. — Your scheme, I grant, is not ill-imagined; but a small raft, or an old chest,



would do just as well for your purpose. — And now for my little Francis; I wonder what pretty plan he had thought of?

Francis. — I thought I should build a little house, papa, and the shell would make such a nice roof to it!

Father. — Vastly well, my lads, if we had only our amusement or our ease to think of; but I want you all to form the habit of thinking and acting for the general good, rather than that of what will most gratify or accommodate his single self. — Now, then, let me ask, to what use Fritz, the only rightful claimant to the shell, had intended to apply it?

Fritz. — I thought, father, of cleaning it thoroughly, and fixing it by the side of our river, and keeping it always full of pure water for my mother's use, when she has to wash the linen, or cook our victuals.

Father. — Excellent, excellent, my boy! all honor to the founder of the *pure water-tub!* This is what I call *thinking for the general good.* And we will take care to execute the idea as soon as we can prepare some clay, as a solid foundation for its bottom.



Jack. — Hah, hah! Now then it is my turn; for I have got some clay, which I have put by to keep for use, behind those old roots yonder.

Father. — And where did you get it, boy?

Mother. — Oh, you may apply to me for this part of the information; to my cost I know where the clay was got. This morning early my young hero falls to digging and scrambling on the hill you see to the right, and home he comes with the news, that he has found a bed of clay; but in so dirty a condition himself, that we were obliged to think next of the washing-tub.

Jack. — And if I had minded a little dirt, mother, I should not have discovered this bed of clay, which you will see will be of great use to us. As I was returning from looking for potatoes, I thought I would take the high path along the river, just to see how rapidly it runs and forms those nice cascades: by and by I came to a large slope, watered by the river; it was so slippery, that I could not keep upon my legs; so I fell, and dirtied myself all over; on looking, I saw that the ground was all of clay, and almost liquid, so



I made some of it into balls, and brought them home.

Ernest. — When the water-tub is complete, I will put some roots I have found to soak a little in it, for they are now extremely dry. I do not exactly know what they are; they look something like the radish, or horse-radish: but the plant from which I took them was almost the size of a bush: being ignorant, however, of its name or nature, I have not yet ventured to taste the roots, though I saw our sow eat heartily of them.

Father. — If my suspicion is right, you have made a beneficial discovery, which, with the assistance of our potatoes, may furnish us the means of existence as long as we may remain in this island! I think your roots are *manioc*, of which the natives of the West Indies make a sort of bread or cake which they call *cassave*. But we must first carry the production through a certain preparation, without which it possesses pernicious properties. Try to find the same place, and bring a sufficient quantity for our first experiment.

We had finished unloading the sledge, and I bade the three eldest boys accompany me



to fetch another load before it should be dark. We left Francis and his mother busy in preparing a refreshing meal for supper, the tortoise having presented itself most opportunely for this purpose.

Having reached the raft, we took from it as many effects as the sledge could hold, or the animals draw along. One object of my attention was to secure two chests which contained the clothes of my family, which I well knew would afford the highest gratification to my wife, who had frequently lamented that they were all compelled to wear clothes that were not their own; reminding her at every moment, she said, how much they might be wanted by their proper claimants. I reckoned also on finding in one of the chests some books on interesting subjects, and principally a large handsomely printed Bible. I added to these, four cart-wheels and a hand-mill for grinding; which, now that we had discovered the manioc, I considered of signal importance. These and a few other articles completed our present load.

On our return to Falcon's Nest, we found my wife looking anxiously for our arrival,



and ready with the welcome she had promised, of an ample and agreeable repast. Before she had well examined our new stores, she drew me, with one of her sweetest smiles, by the arm, — “Step this way,” said she, and leading to the shade of a tree, — “this is the work I performed in your absence,” pointing to a large cask half sunk in the ground, and the rest covered over with branches of trees. She then applied a small cork-screw to the side, and filling the shell of a cocoa-nut with the contents, presented it to me. I found the liquor equal to the best canary I had ever tasted. — “How then,” said I, “have you performed this new miracle? I cannot believe the enchanted bag produced it.” — “Not exactly,” replied she; “for this time it was an obliging white wave which threw it on shore. I took a little ramble in your absence yesterday, to see what I could find, and well my trouble was rewarded! The boys ran for the sledge, and had but little difficulty in getting the cask to Falcon’s Stream, where we dug this place in the earth to keep it cool.”

My wife now proposed that all should be



regaled with some of the delicious beverage. My own share so invigorated me, that I found myself able to complete my day's work, by drawing up the mattresses we had brought from the ship, to our chamber in the tree, by means of a pulley. When I had laid them along to advantage, they looked so inviting, that I could scarcely resist my desire of at once committing myself to the kind relief they seemed to offer to my exhausted strength.

But now the savory smell of the tortoise laid claim to my attention. I hastened down, and we all partook heartily of the luxurious treat. We returned thanks to God, and speedily retired to taste the blessing of sound repose upon the said mattresses.

CHAPTER XIX.

Another Trip to the Wreck.

I ROSE before day to go to the sea-side and inspect our two vessels. I gently descended the ladder without awaking my family.



Above, the scene was all repose; below, every thing was in life and motion. The dogs jumped about me, the cock and the hens flapped their wings and chuckled, and our goats shook their long beards as they browsed. I quickly roused and harnessed the ass, and the dogs followed without bidding. As I approached the shore, animated at different moments by hope and fear, I soon saw that the boat and raft had resisted the tide, though it had partially heaved them up. I got quickly on the raft, took a small loading, and returned to Falcon's Stream in time for breakfast; but not a single creature of its inhabitants appeared, though the sun was high above the horizon. — I gave a shout as loud as a war-whoop, which awoke my wife. "Really, my dear," said she, "there must be a magic charm in the mattrass you brought yesterday, that has lulled us into so sound a sleep." — "Up, my lads," exclaimed I, once again; "the more we venture to parley with sloth, the longer she holds us in her chains; brave youths like you ought to awake at the first call, and leap quick and gaily out of bed. Fritz, a little ashamed, was dressed



first; Jack soon after him, and Francis next; the ever slothful Ernest was the last. — “It is so delightful,” cried he, “to lose oneself again after having been awakened! one feels sleep come on afresh so gently.” — “But it is my duty to tell you, Ernest, and that gravely, that he who indulges himself in all that flatters his senses, will end by falling a victim to them.”

After this short admonition, we all came down; and breakfast over, we returned to the sea-side to complete the unloading of the raft, that it might be ready for sea on the ebbing of the tide. We were not long in taking two cargoes to Falcon’s Stream. At our last trip the water was nearly up to our craft. I sent back my wife and the boys, and remained with Fritz till we were quite afloat; when observing Jack still loitering near, I guessed at his wish, and consented to his embarking with us. Shortly after, the tide was high enough for us to row off. Instead of steering for Safety Bay, to moor our vessels there securely, I was tempted by a fresh sea-breeze to go out again to the wreck; but it was too late to undertake



much, and I was unwilling to cause my dear partner uneasiness by passing another night on board. I therefore determined to bring away only what could be obtained with ease and speed: we searched hastily through the ship for any trifling articles that might be readily removed. Jack was up and down every where, at a loss what to select; and when I saw him again, he drew a wheelbarrow after him, shouting that he had found a vehicle for carrying our potatoes.

But Fritz next disclosed still better news, which was, that he had discovered behind the bulk-head amid ship, a pinnace (*i. e.* a small craft, the forepart of which is square) taken to pieces, with all its appurtenances, and even two small guns for its defense. This intelligence so delighted me, that I quitted every thing else to run to the bulkhead, when I was convinced of the truth of the lad's assertion: but I instantly perceived, that to put it together, and launch it, would be an Herculean task. I collected various utensils, a copper boiler, some plates of iron, tobacco-graters, two grinding-stones, a small barrel of gunpowder, and another full of flints,



which I much valued. Jack's barrow was not forgotten; two more were afterwards found and added, with straps belonging to them. All these articles were hurried into the boat, and we re-embarked with speed, to avoid the land wind that rises in the evening. As we were drawing near to shore, we were struck with the appearance of an assemblage of small figures ranged in a long line on the strand, that seemed to be viewing us attentively: they were dressed in black, and all uniform, with white waistcoats and full cravats: the arms of these beings hung down carelessly; now and then, however, they seemed to extend them tenderly, as if they wished to embrace or offer us a token of friendship.

"I really think," said I to the boys, who were steadfastly gazing at them, "that we are in the country of the pygmies, and that they wish to form a friendly alliance with us."

Jack. — Oh, no! father, they are certainly Lilliputians, though somewhat bigger than those of whom I read the description in Gulliver's Travels.

"You then, child," said I, "consider those travels as true; that there is an island of Lilliput, and inhabited by dwarfs.



Jack. — Gulliver says so. He met also with men of an immense stature, besides an island inhabited by horses —

“And yet I must tell you that the only reality in all his discoveries is the rich imagination of the author, whose taste and feeling led him to resort to allegory for the purpose of revealing grand truths. Do you know, Jack, what an allegory is?”

“It somewhat resembles a parable, I presume.”

“Right, one is very similar to the other.”

Jack. — And the pygmies you mentioned, are any to be found?

“No more than there are Lilliputians: they exist only in poetical fiction, or in the erroneous account of some ancient navigators, in which a group of monkeys has been fallaciously described as diminutive men.”

Fritz. — Such probably are the manikins that we see now stretching out their arms towards us. — Ah, now I begin to perceive that they have beaks, and that their arms are short drooping wings:— what strange birds!

“You are right, son, they are penguins or



ruffs. Ernest killed one soon after our arrival. They are excellent swimmers, but cannot fly; and so confused are they when on land, that they run in the silliest way into danger."

While we were talking, I steered gently towards shore, to enjoy the uncommon sight the longer; but the very moment we got into shallow water, my giddy Jack leaped up to his waist into it, and was quickly on land, battering with his stick among the penguins before they were aware of his approach, so that half a dozen of them were immediately laid flat; the remainder, seeing they were so roughly accosted, plunged into the sea, dived, and disappeared.

As the sun declined, and we despaired of finishing before night set in, each of us filled a barrow, in order to take home something. I requested that the tobacco-graters and iron plates might be in the first load.

Arrived at Falcon's Stream, my wife exhibited a good store of potatoes which she had got in during our absence, and a quantity of the roots I had taken for manioc, and in which I was not mistaken; I much ap-



plauded her diligence and foresight, and gave Ernest and little Francis their share of approbation.

“But now,” said I, “for some supper and repose; and if my little workman should be industriously inclined to-morrow, I shall reward them with the novelty of a new trade to be learned.” This did not fail to excite the curiosity of all; but I kept my word, and made them wait till the following day for the explanation I had to give.

I waked the boys very early, reminding them that I had promised to teach them a new trade. “What is it? What is it?” exclaimed they all at once, springing suddenly out of bed and hurrying on their clothes.

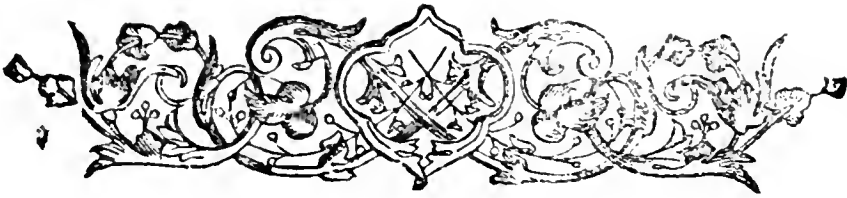
Father. — It is the art of the baker, my boys. Hand me those iron plates that we brought yesterday from the vessel, and the tobacco-graters also, and we will make our experiment. Ernest, bring hither the roots found under ground: but first, my dear, I must request you to make me a small bag of a piece of strong wrapper cloth.

My wife set instantly to work to oblige me; but having no great confidence in my



talents for making either bread or cakes, she first filled a copper boiler with potatoes, and put it on the fire, that we might not be without something to eat at dinner time: in the meanwhile I spread a piece of coarse linen on the ground, and assembled my young ones round me; I gave each of the boys a grater, and showed him at the same time how to rest it on the linen, and then to grate the roots of manioc; in a short time each had produced a considerable heap of a substance somewhat resembling pollard. The occupation, as is always the case with novelties, was amusing to them all, and they looked no further into the matter: one showed the other his heap, saying in a bantering tone: "Will you eat a bit of nice cake made of grated radishes?"

I now informed them that the manioc was known to be the principal sustenance of whole nations of the Continent of America, and which the Europeans who inhabit those countries prefer to even our wheaten bread. I added "there are many kinds of manioc: one of these shoots rapidly, and its roots mature in a short time; a second sort is of more



tardy growth ; and there is another, the roots of which require the space of two years to be fit for use. The first two kinds have pernicious or unwholesome qualities when eaten raw, but the third may be eaten without fear : for all this, the two first are generally preferred, as being more productive, and requiring a shorter time for being fit for use.”

By this time my wife had completed the bag. I had it well filled with what we called our pollard, and she closed it securely by sewing up the end. I was now to contrive a kind of press : I cut a long, straight, stout branch, from a neighboring tree, and stripped it of the bark ; I then placed a plank across the table we had fixed between the arched roots of our tree, and which was exactly the right height for my purpose, and on this I laid the bag ; I put other planks again upon the bag, and then covered all with the large branch, the thickest extremity of which I inserted under an arch, while to the other, which projected beyond the planks, I suspended all sorts of heavy substances, such as lead, our largest hammers and bars of iron, which, acting with great force as a press on



the bag of manioc, caused the sap it contained to issue in streams, which flowed plentifully on the ground.

Fritz. — This machine of yours, father, though simple, is as effectual as can be desired.

Father. — Certainly. It is the simplest lever that the art of mechanism can furnish, and may be made extremely useful.

Ernest. — I thought that levers were never used but for raising heavy masses, such as blocks of stone, and things of that degree of weight; I had no notion that they were ever used for pressing.

Father. — But you see that the point at which the lever rests on the planks must always be the point of rest or compression; the point at which its extremity touches the roots of the tree would no doubt be that of the raising power, if the root was not too strong to yield to the point of the lever; but then the resistance at the point of compression or rest is still stronger, and presses effectually, as you see, the contents of the bag. The Negroes, however, have another manner of proceeding; but it would have been much



too tedious in the process for us to imitate. They make tresses of the bark of a tree, and with it form a kind of basket of tolerable size; they fill it with manioc, and press it so tightly, that the baskets become shorter, and increase in breadth; they then hang the baskets to the strongest branches of trees, and fasten large stones to them, which draw the baskets again lengthways; by which action upon the manioc the sap runs out at the openings left by the tresses.

Mother.—Can one make no use of this sap?

Father.—Certainly, we may: the same Negroes use it as food, after mixing with it some pepper; and when they can procure them, some sea-crabs.

Fritz.—Father, it no longer runs a single drop; may we not now set about making the dough?

Father.—I have no objection; but as there are some poisonous kinds of manioc, it will be prudent to make only a small cake at first, by way of experiment, which we will give to the monkey and the fowls, and wait to see the effect, instead of exhausting our whole store at once.



We now opened the bag, and took out a small quantity of the pollard, which already was dry enough; we stirred the rest about with a stick, and then replaced it under the press. The next thing was to fix one of our iron plates, which was of a round form, and a little hollow, so as to rest upon two blocks of stone at a distance from each other; under this we lighted a large fire, and when the iron plate was completely heated, we placed a portion of the dough upon it with a wooden spade. As soon as the cake began to be brown underneath, it was turned, that the other side might be baked also.

Ernest. — O how nicely it smells! what a pity that we may not eat some of it immediately!

Father. — I believe you might safely venture, but it is perhaps better to wait till the evening, and run no greater risk than the loss of one or two of our fowls or of the monkey; and we may say this trial of the cake will be the first service he has rendered us.

As soon as the cake was cold, we broke some of it into crums, and gave it to two of the fowls, and a larger piece to the monkey,



who nibbled it with a perfect relish, making all the time a thousand grimaces, while the boys stood by envying the preference he enjoyed.

Fritz. — Now tell me, father, how the savages manage to grate their manioc, for surely they have not, like us, an instrument fitted for the operation; — and tell me also, if they call their composition by the name of cake or bread, as we do?

Father. — The savages having no such article as bread in their bill of fare, have consequently no word in their language to express it. At the Antilles, the bread from the manioc is called *cassave*; the savages make a kind of grater with sharp stones, or shells; or when they can get nails, on which they set a high value, they drive them into the end of a plank, and rub the manioc upon it. But now, I pray you, good wife, give us quickly our potato dinner, and we will afterwards resume the baking trade.

The first thing after dinner was to visit our fowls. Those which had eaten the manioc were in excellent condition, and no less so the monkey. — “Now then to the bakehouse,



young ones," said I, "as fast as you can scamper."—The grated manioc was soon emptied out of the bag, a large fire was quickly lighted, and I placed the boys where a flat surface had been prepared for them, and gave to each a plate of iron and the quantity of a cocoa-nut full to make a cake a piece, and they were to try who could succeed the best. They were ranged in a half circle round me, that they might observe how I proceeded, and adopt the same method for themselves. The result was not discouraging for a first experiment, though it must be confessed we were now and then so unlucky as to burn a cake; but there was not a greater number of these than served to feed the pigeons and the fowls, which hovered about us to claim their share of the treat. My little rogues could not resist the pleasure of frequently tasting their cake, a little bit at a time, as they went on. At length the undertaking was complete; the cakes were put in a dish, and served, in company with a handsome share of milk, to each person; and with this addition they furnished us with an excellent repast; what remained we distributed among our animals and fowls.

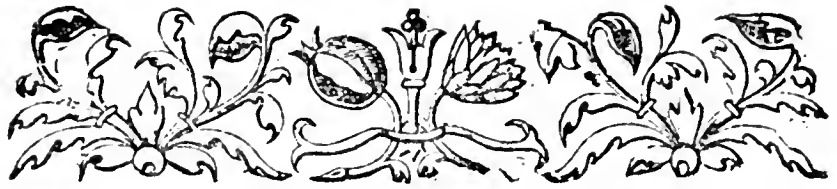


The rest of the day was employed by the boys in making several turns with their wheelbarrows, and by myself in different arrangements in which the ass and our raft had a principal share, both being employed in drawing to Tent-House the remaining articles we had brought from the ship. When all this was done we retired to rest, having first made another meal on our cakes, and concluded all with pious thanks to God for the blessings his goodness thought fit to bestow upon us.

CHAPTER XX.

The Cracker and the Pinnace.

FROM the time of discovering the pinnace, my desire of returning to the vessel grew every moment more irresistible; but one thing I saw was absolutely necessary, which was, to collect all my hands to get her out from the situation where we had found her. I therefore thought of taking with me the

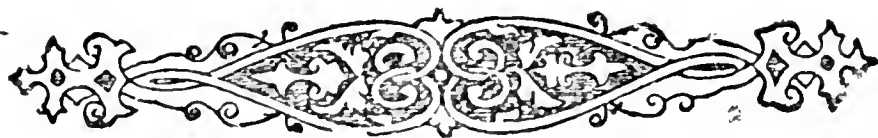


three boys: I even wished that my wife should accompany us; but she had been seized with such a horror of the perfidious element, as she called it, the sea, that she assured me the very attempt would make her ill and useless. I had some difficulty to prevail upon her to let so many as three of the children go: she made me promise to return the same evening, and on no account to pass another night on board the wreck; and to this I was, though with regret, obliged to consent.

After breakfast then, we prepared for setting out. The boys were gay and on the alert, in the expectation of the pleasure that awaited them, particularly Ernest, who had not yet made a single voyage with us to the vessel. We took with us an ample provision of boiled potatoes and cassave; and in addition, arms and weapons of every kind. We reached Safety Bay without any remarkable event: here we thought it prudent to put on our cork jackets; we then scattered some food for the geese and ducks which had taken up their abode there, and soon after stepped gaily into our tub-raft, at the same time fast-

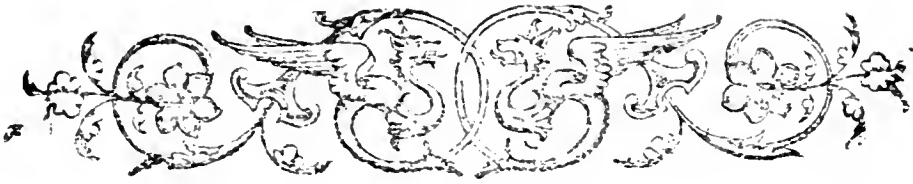


ening the new boat by a rope to her stern, so that she could be drawn along. We put out for the current, though not without considerable fear of finding that the wreck had disappeared. We soon, however, perceived that it still remained firm between the rocks. Having got on board, all repaired, on the wings of curiosity and ardor, to that part of the vessel called the bulkhead, which contained the enviable prize, the pinnace. On further observation, it appeared to me that the plan we had formed was subject to at least two alarming difficulties; the one was the situation of the pinnace in the ship; and the other was the size and weight it would necessarily acquire when put together. The enclosure which contained the pinnace was in the interior of the ship, and timbers of prodigious bulk and weight separated it from the breach, and in this part of the deck there was not sufficient space for us to put the pinnace together, or to give her room when done. The breach also was too narrow and too irregular to admit of her being launched from this place, as we had done with our tub-raft. In short, the separate pieces of the pinnace



were too heavy for the possibility of our removing them even with the assistance of our united strength. What therefore was to be done? and how could we meet such formidable difficulties? I stood on the spot absorbed in reflection, while the boys were running from place to place, conveying every thing portable they could find on board the raft.

The cabinet which contained the pinnace was lighted by several small fissures in the timbers, which after standing in the place a few minutes to accustom the eye, enabled one to see sufficiently to distinguish objects. I discovered, with pleasure, that all the pieces of which she was composed were so accurately arranged and numbered, that without too much presumption, I might flatter myself with the hope of being able effectually to collect and put them together, if I could be allowed the necessary time, and could procure a convenient place. I therefore, in spite of every disadvantage, decided on the undertaking; and we immediately set about it. We proceeded at first so slowly as to have produced discouragement, if the desire of possessing so admirable a little vessel, quite new,



perfectly safe, easy to conduct, and which might at some future day be the means of our deliverance, had not at every moment inspired us with new strength and ardor.

Evening, however, was fast approaching, and we had made but small progress; we were obliged to think of our promise to my wife; and, though with reluctance, we left our occupation and re-embarked. On reaching Safety Bay, we found there our kind steward and little Francis; they had been, during the day, employed in arrangements for our living at Tent-House as long as we should have occasion to continue the excursions to the vessel: this she did to shorten the length of the voyage, and that we might be always in sight of each other. In return for her kindness, I made the best display I could of two casks of salted butter, three of flour, some small bags of millet seed and of rice, and some other articles of utility and comfort for our establishment; and the whole was removed to our storehouse at the rocks.

We passed an entire week in this arduous undertaking of the pinnace. I embarked every morning with my three sons, and re-



turned every evening, and never without some small addition to our stores. We were now so accustomed to this manner of proceeding, that my wife bade us good-by without concern, and we, on our parts, left Tent-House without anxiety; she even had the courage to go several times, with no companion but her little Francis, to Falcon's Stream, to feed and take care of the poultry, and to bring back potatoes for our use. As night successively returned, we had a thousand interesting things to tell each other, and the pleasure of being together was much increased by these short separations.

At length the pinnacle was completed, and in a condition to be launched: the question now was, how to manage this remaining difficulty. She was an elegant little vessel, perfect in every part: she had a small neat deck; and her mast and sails were no less exact and perfect than those of a little brig. It was probable she would sail well, from the lightness of her construction, and in consequence drawing but little water. We had pitched and towed all the seams, that nothing might be wanting for her complete ap-

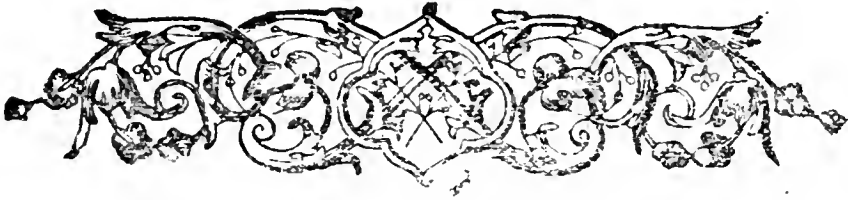


pearance: we had even taken the pains of further embellishing, by mounting her with two small cannon of about a pound weight; and, in imitation of larger vessels, had fastened them to the deck with chains. But in spite of the delight we felt in contemplating a work, as it were, of our own industry; the great difficulty still remained: the said commodious, charming little vessel, still stood fast enclosed within four walls; nor could I conceive of a means of getting her out. To effect a passage through the outer side of the vessel, by means of our united industry in the use of all the utensils we had secured, seemed to present a prospect of exertions beyond the reach of man, even if not attended with dangers the most alarming. We examined if it might be practicable to cut away all intervening timbers, to which, from the nature of the breach, we had easier access; but should we even succeed in this attempt, the upper timbers being, in consequence of the inclined position of the ship, on a level with the water, our labor would be unavailing: besides, we had neither strength nor time for such a proceeding; from one



moment to another, a storm might arise and engulf the ship, timbers, pinnace, ourselves, and all. Despairing, then, of being able to find a means consistent with the sober rules of art, my impatient fancy inspired the thought of a project, which could not however be tried without hazards and dangers of a tremendous nature.

I had found on board a strong iron mortar, such as is used in kitchens. I took a thick oak plank, and nailed to different parts of it some large iron hooks: with a knife I cut a groove along the middle of the plank. I sent the boys to fetch some match-wood from the hold, and I cut a piece sufficiently long to continue burning at least two hours. I placed this train in the groove of my plank: I filled the mortar with gunpowder, and then laid the plank, thus furnished upon it, having previously pitched the mortar all around; and, lastly, I made the whole fast to the spot with strong chains, crossed by means of the hooks in every direction. Thus I accomplished a sort of cracker, from which I expected to effect a happy conclusion. I hung this machine of mischief to the side of the



bulk head next the sea, having taken previous care to choose a spot in which its action could not affect the pinnace. When the whole was arranged, I set fire to the match, the end of which projected far enough beyond the plank to allow us sufficient time to escape. I now hurried on board the raft, into which I had previously sent the boys before applying a light to the match; and who, though they had assisted in forming the cracker, had no suspicion of the use for which it was intended, and believing all the while it concealed some subject of amusement for their next trip to the vessel. I confess I had purposely avoided giving them the true explanation, from the fear of the entire failure of my project, or that the vessel, pinnace, and all that it contained, might in consequence be blown up in a moment. I had naturally, therefore, some reluctance to announce myself before the time as the author of so many disasters.

On our arrival at Tent-House, I immediately put the raft in a certain order, that she might be in readiness to return speedily to the wreck, when the noise produced by the



cracker should have informed me that my scheme had taken effect. We set busily to work in emptying her; and during the occupation, our ears were assailed with the noise of an explosion of such violence, that my wife and the boys, who were ignorant of the cause, were so dreadfully alarmed as instantly to abandon their employment. "What can it be? — what is the matter? — what can have happened?" cried all at once. "It must be cannon. It is perhaps the captain and the ship's company who have found their way hither! Or can it be some vessel in distress? Can we go to its relief?"

Mother. — The sound comes in the direction of the wreck: perhaps she has blown up. — From the bottom of her heart she made this suggestion, for she desired nothing more earnestly than that the vessel should be annihilated, and thus an end be put to our repeated visits.

Father. — If this is the case, said I, we had better return immediately, and convince ourselves of the fact. Who will be of the party?

"I, I, I," cried the boys; and the three



young rogues lost not a moment in jumping into their tubs, whither I soon followed them, after having whispered a few words to my wife, somewhat tending to explain, but still more to tranquilize her mind during the trip we had now to engage in.

We rowed out of the bay with more rapidity than on any former occasion; curiosity gave strength to our arms. When the vessel was in sight, I observed with pleasure that no change had taken place in the part of her which faced Tent-House, and that no sign of smoke appeared: we advanced, therefore, in excellent spirits; but instead of rowing, as usual, straight to the breach, we proceeded round to the side, on the inside of which we had placed the cracker. The horrible scene of devastation we had caused now broke upon our sight. The greater part of the ship's side was shivered to pieces; innumerable splinters covered the surface of the water; the whole exhibited a scene of terrible destruction, in the midst of which presented itself our elegant pinnace, entirely free from injury! I could not refrain from the liveliest exclamations of joy, which excited the surprise of



the boys, who had felt the disposition such a spectacle naturally inspired, of being dejected. They fixed their eyes upon me with the utmost astonishment. — “Now then she is ours!” cried I — “the elegant little pinnace is ours! for nothing is now more easy than to launch her. Come, boys, jump upon her deck, and let us see how quickly we can get her down upon the water.”

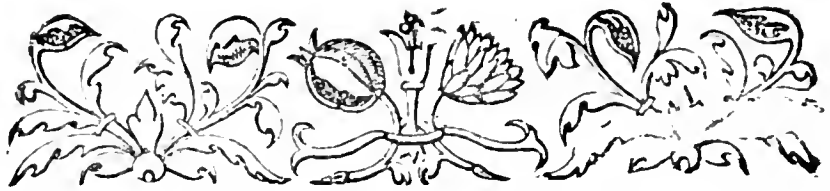
Fritz. — Ah! now I understand you, father, you have yourself blown up the side of the ship with that machine you contrived in our last visit, that we might be able to get out the pinnace; but how does it happen that so much of the ship is blown away?

Father. — I will explain all this to you when I have convinced myself that the pinnace is not injured, and that there is no danger of any of the fire remaining on board; let us well examine. We entered by the new breach, and had soon reason to be satisfied that the pinnace had wholly escaped from injury, and that the fire was entirely extinguished. The mortar, however, and pieces of the chain, had been driven forcibly into the opposite side of the enclosure. Having



now every reason to be satisfied and tranquil, I explained to the boys the nature of a cracker, the manner of its operation, and the important service for which I was indebted to the old mortar.

I then examined the breach we had thus effected, and next the pinnace. I perceived that it would be easy, with the help of the crow and the lever, to lower her into the water. In putting her together, I had used the precaution of placing her keel on rollers, that we might not experience the same difficulty as we had formerly done in launching our tub-raft. Before letting her go, however, I fastened the end of a long thick rope to her head, and the other end to the most solid part of the wreck, for fear of her being carried out too far. We put our whole ingenuity and strength to this undertaking, and soon enjoyed the pleasure of seeing our pretty pinnace descend gracefully into the sea; the rope keeping her sufficiently near, and enabling us to draw her close to the spot where I was loading the tub-boat, and where, for that purpose, I had lodged a pulley on a projecting beam, from which I was enabled also



to advance with the completing of the necessary masts and sails for our new barge. I endeavored to recollect minutely all the information I had ever possessed on the art of equipping a vessel; and our pinnace was shortly in a condition to set sail.

On this occasion, a spirit of military affairs was awakened in the minds of my young group, which was never after extinguished. We were masters of a vessel mounted with two cannon, and furnished amply with guns and pistols! This was at once to be invincible, and in a condition for resisting and destroying the largest fleet the savages could bring upon us! In the height of exultation, it was even almost wished they might assail us! For my own part, I answered their young enthusiasm with pious prayers, that we might ever escape such a calamity as the being compelled to use our fire-arms. Night surprised us before we had finished our work, and we accordingly prepared for our return to Tent-House, after drawing the pinnace close under the vessel's side. We arrived in safety, and took great care, as had been previously agreed on, not to mention our new



and invaluable booty to the good mother, till we could surprise her with the sight of it in a state of entire completeness. In answer, therefore, to her inquiries as to the noise she heard, we told her that a barrel of gunpowder had taken fire, and had shivered to pieces a small part of the ship.

Two whole days more were spent in completely equipping and loading the beautiful little barge we had now secured. When she was ready for sailing, I found it impossible to resist the earnest importunity of the boys, who, as a recompense for the industry and discretion they had employed, claimed my permission to salute their mother, on their approach to Tent-House, with two discharges of cannon. These accordingly were loaded, and the two youngest placed themselves with a lighted match in hand, close to the touch-holes, to be in readiness. Fritz stood at the mast, to manage the ropes and cables, while I took my station at the rudder. These matters being adjusted, we put off with sensations of lively joy, which was demonstrated by loud huzzas and suitable gesticulation. The wind was favorable, and so brisk, that



we glided with the rapidity of a bird along the mirror of the waters; and while my young ones were transported with pleasure by the velocity of the motion, I could not myself refrain from shuddering at the thought of some possible disaster.

Our old friend the tub-raft had been deeply loaded, and fastened to the pinnace, and it now followed as an accompanying boat to a superior vessel. We took down our large sail as soon as we found ourselves at the entrance of Safety Bay, to have the greater command in steering the pinnace; and soon the smaller ones were lowered one by one, that we might the more securely avoid being thrown with violence upon the rocks so prevalent along the coast: thus, proceeding at a slower rate, we had greater facilities for managing the important affair of the discharge of the cannon. Arrived within a certain distance — “*Fire!*” cried Commander Fritz. The rocks behind Tent-House returned the sound. — “*Fire!*” said Fritz again — Ernest and Jack obeyed, and the echoes again majestically replied. Fritz at the same moment had discharged his two pistols, and all joined instantly in three loud huzzas.



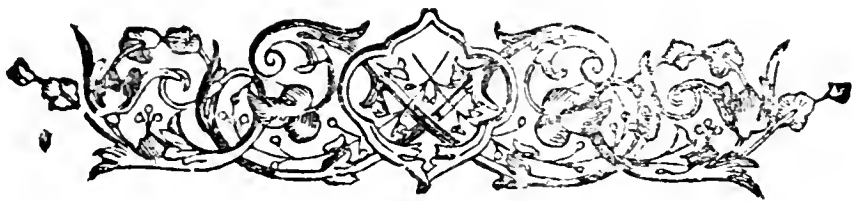
“Welcome! welcome! dear ones,” was the answer from the anxious mother, almost breathless with astonishment and joy! “Welcome!” cried also little Francis, with his feeble voice, as he stood clinging to her side, and not well knowing whether he was to be sad or merry! We now tried to push to shore with our oars in a particular direction, that we might have the protection of a projecting mass of rocks, and my wife and little Francis hastened to the spot to receive us: “Ah, dear deceitful ones!” cried she, throwing herself upon my neck, and heartily embracing me, what a fright have you, and your cannon, and your little ship, thrown me into! I saw it advancing rapidly towards us, and was unable to conceive from whence it could come, or what it might have on board: I stole with Francis behind the rocks, and when I heard the firing, I was near sinking to the ground with terror; if I had not the moment after heard your voices, God knows where we should have run to — but come, the cruel moment is now over, and thanks to Heaven, I have you once again in safety! But tell me where you got so unhopèd-for a prize as this neat charming little vessel? In



good truth, it would almost tempt me once more to venture on a sea-voyage, especially if she would promise to convey us back to our dear country! I foresee of what use she will be to us, and for her sake I think that I must try to forgive the many sins of absence you have committed against me."

Fritz now invited his mother to get on board, and gave her his assistance. When they had all stepped upon the deck, they entreated for permission to salute, by again discharging the cannon, and at the same moment to confer on the pinnacle the name of their mother — *The Elizabeth*.

My wife was particularly gratified by these our late adventures; she applauded our skill and perseverance: "but do not," said she, imagine that I bestow so much commendation without the hope of some return in kind: on the contrary, it is now my turn to claim from you, for myself and little Francis, the same sort of agreeable recompense; for we have not, I assure you, remained idle while the rest were so actively employed for the common benefit. — No, not so; little Francis and his mother found means to be doing some-



thing also, though not at this moment prepared to furnish such unquestionable proofs as you, by your salutations of cannon, &c. ; but wait a little, good friends, and our proofs shall hereafter be apparent in some dishes of excellent vegetables which we shall be able to regale you with. — It depends, to say the truth, only on yourselves, dear ones, to go with me and see what we have done.”

We did not hesitate to comply, and jumped briskly out of the pinnace for the purpose. Taking her little coadjutor Francis by the hand, she led the way, and we followed in the gayest mood imaginable. She conducted us up an ascent of one of our rocks, and stopping at the spot where the cascade is formed from Jackall’s River, she displayed to our astonished eyes a handsome kitchen-garden, laid out properly in beds and walks, and, as she told us, everywhere sowed with the seed of useful plants.

“This,” said she, “is the pretty exploit we have been engaged in, if you will kindly think so of it. In this spot the earth is so light, being principally composed of decayed leaves, that Francis and I had no difficulty



in working in it, and then dividing it into different compartments: one for potatoes, one for manioc, and other smaller shares for lettuces of various kinds, not forgetting to leave a due proportion to receive some plants of the sugar-cane. You, dear husband, and Fritz, will easily find means to conduct sufficient water hither from the cascade, by means of pipes of bamboo, to keep the whole in health and vigor; and we shall have a double source of pleasure from the general prosperity; for both the eye and the palate will be gratified. But you have not yet seen all: there, on the slope of the rock, I have transplanted some plants of the annas. Between these I have sowed some melon seeds, which cannot fail to succeed, thus securely sheltered, and in so warm a soil: here is a plot allotted to peas and beans, and this other for all sorts of cabbage. Round each bed or plot I have sowed seeds of maize, on account of its tall and bushy form, to serve as a border, which at the same time will protect my young plants from the scorching heat of the sun."

I stood transported, in the midst of so per-



fect an exhibition of the kind zeal and persevering industry of this most amiable of women! I could only exclaim, that I should never have believed in the possibility of such a labor in so short a time, and particularly with so much privacy as to leave me wholly unsuspecting of the existence of such a project.

Mother. — To confess the truth, I scarcely myself expected to succeed, so I resolved to be silent, to avoid being put to the blush for my presumption. But as I found my little calculations answer better than I expected, I was encouraged, and the hope of surprising you so agreeably gave me new strength and activity. I, however, was not without my suspicions that your daily visits to the wreck were connected with some great mystery, which at a certain time you would unfold. — So, mystery for mystery, thought I; and thus my love, it has turned out. Though acting in different directions, one only object has been our mutual aim — the substantial good of our beloved companions of the desert!

After a few jocose remarks, with which we closed this conversation, we moved towards Tent-House. This was one of our happiest



days; for we were all satisfied with ourselves and with each other; we had conferred and received benefits; and I led my children to observe the goodness of Providence, who renders even labor a source of enjoyment, and makes our own happiness result from that of the objects of our affection, and our pride to arise from the commendations of which those objects may be deserving.

“I had almost forgot, though,” said my wife, after a short pause, “one little reproach I had to make you: your trips to the vessel have made you neglect the bundle of precious fruit-saplings we laid together in mould at Falcon’s Stream; I fear they by this time must be dying for want of planting, though I took care to water and cover them with branches. Let us go, my love, and see about them.”

I readily consented, as many other matters required our presence at Falcon’s Stream. We had now in possession the greater part of the cargo of the vessel; but almost the whole of these treasures were at present in the open air, and liable to injury from both sun and rain.



My wife prepared with alertness for our walk. We hastened to unload the boat, and to place the cargo safely under shelter along with our other stores.

The pinnacle was anchored on the shore, and fastened with a rope, by her head, to a stake. When all our stores were thus disposed of, we began our journey to Falcon's Stream, but not empty-handed; we took with us every thing that seemed to be absolutely wanted for comfort; and when brought together, it was really so much, that both ourselves and our beasts of burden had no easy task to perform.

CHAPTER XXI.

Gymnastic Exercises; various Discoveries; singular Animals, &c.

I RECOMMENDED to my sons to resume the exercise of the shooting of arrows; for I had an extreme solicitude about their preserving and increasing their bodily strength and agility. Nothing tends more to the extinc-



tion of personal courage in a human being, than the consciousness of wanting that strength of limb, or that address which may be necessary to aid us in defending ourselves, or in escaping from dangers. On this occasion, I added the exercises of running, jumping, getting up trees, both by means of climbing by the trunk, or by a suspended rope, as sailors are obliged to do to get to the mast-head. We began at first by making knots in the rope, at a foot distance from each other; then we reduced the number of knots, and before we left off we contrived to succeed without any. I next taught them an exercise of a different nature, which was to be effected by means of two balls made of lead, fastened one to each end of a string about a fathom in length. While I was preparing this machinery, all eyes were fixed upon me. "What can it be intended for?" cried one: "How can we use it?" asked another: "Will it soon be ready?" continued a third.

"I am endeavoring," said I, "to imitate the arms used by a valiant nation, remarkable for their skill in the chase, and whom you all must have heard of: I mean the Pat-



agonians, inhabitants of the most southern point of America; but, instead of balls, which they are not able to procure, they tie two heavy stones, one at each end of a cord, but considerably longer than the one I am working with: every Patagonian is armed with this simple instrument, which they use with singular dexterity. If they desire to kill or wound an enemy, or an animal, they fling one of the ends of this cord at him, and begin instantly to draw it back by the other, which they keep carefully in their hand, to be ready for another throw if necessary: but if they wish to take an animal alive, and without hurting it, they possess the singular art of throwing it in such a way as to make it run several times round the neck of the prey, occasioning a perplexing tightness; they then throw the second stone, and with so certain an aim, that they scarcely ever miss their object: the operation of the second is, the so twisting itself about the animal as to impede his progress, even though he were at a full gallop. The stones continue turning, carrying with them the cord: the poor animal is at length so entangled, that



he can neither advance nor retire, and thus falls a prey to the enemy.”

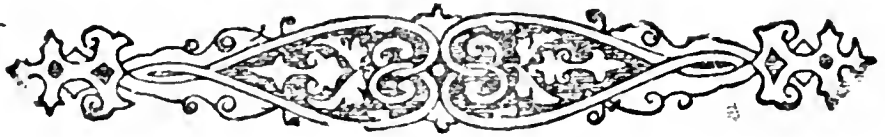
This description was heard with much interest by the boys, who now all entreated I would that instant try the effect of my own instrument upon a small trunk of a tree which we saw at a certain distance. My throws entirely succeeded; and the string with the balls at the end so completely surrounded the tree, that the skill of the I'atagonian hunters required no further illustration. Each of the boys must then needs have a similar instrument; and in a short time Fritz became quite expert in the art, as indeed he was in every kind of exercise that required strength or address: he was not only the most alert of my children, but being the eldest, his muscles were more formed, and his intelligence was more developed, than could yet be expected in the other three.

The next morning as I was dressing, I remarked from my window in the tree, that the sea was violently agitated, and the waves swelled with the wind. I rejoiced to find myself in safety in my home, and that the day had not been destined for out-of-door oc-



cupation. I observed then to my wife, that I should not leave her the whole day, and therefore was ready to execute any thing she found wanting in our domestic arrangement. We now fell to a more minute examination than I had hitherto had time for, of all our various possessions at Falcon's Stream. She showed me many things she had herself found means to add to them during my repeated absences from home: among these was a pair of young pigeons which had been lately hatched, and were already beginning to try their wings, while their mother was again sitting on her eggs. From these we passed to the fruit trees we had laid in earth to be planted, and which were in real need of our assistance. I immediately set myself to prevent so important an injury. I had promised the boys, the evening before, to go all together to the wood of gourds, to provide ourselves with vessels of different sizes to keep our provisions in: they were enchanted with the idea, but I bargained that they must first assist me to plant all the young trees; which was no sooner said than set about.

When we had finished, the evening was too



far advanced for so long a walk. By sunrise the next morning all were on foot; for nothing can exceed the alertness of young persons who act in expectation of a pleasurable change of scene. The ass, harnessed to the sledge, played the principal character: his office was to carry our dinners, a bottle of Canary wine, and some powder and shot, and to bring home our service of empty gourds. Turk, according to custom, led the way as our advanced guard: next followed the three eldest boys, equipped for sporting: after them, the tender mother, leading the little one: and Flora brought up the rear, with the monkey on her back, to which the boys had given the name of Knips. On this occasion I took with me a double-barreled gun, loaded on the one side with shot for game, and on the other with ball, in case of meeting with an enemy.

In this manner we set out, full of good-humor and high spirits, from Falcon's Stream. Turning round Flamingo Marsh, we soon reached the pleasant spot which before had so delighted us. Fritz took a direction a little further from the seashore; and sending



Turk into the tall grass, he followed himself, and both disappeared. Soon, eager for sport, we heard Turk barking loud; a large bird sprung up, and almost at the same moment a shot from Fritz brought it down: but though wounded it was not killed; it raised itself, and got off with incredible swiftness, not by flying but by running. Turk followed, and seizing the bird, held it fast till Fritz came up. Now a different scene succeeded from that which took place at the capture of the flamingo. The legs of that bird are long and weak, and it was able to make but a poor resistance. The present captive was large in size, and strong; it struck the dogs, or whoever came near, with its legs, with so much force, that Fritz, who had received a blow or two, dared not again approach the enemy. Fortunately I reached the spot in time to give assistance, and was pleased to see that it was a female bustard of the largest size. I had long wished to possess and to tame a bird of this species for our poultry-yard, though I foresaw that it would be somewhat difficult.

To secure the bird without injuring it, I



threw my pocket-handkerchief over the head of the bustard; it could not disengage itself, and its efforts only served to entangle it the more. As it could not now see me, I got near enough to pass a string with a running knot over its legs, which, for the present, I drew tight, to prevent further mischief from such powerful weapons. I gently released its wing from Turk's mouth, and tied it, with its fellow, close to the bird's body. In short, the bustard was our own! and that in a condition to promise its preservation when we should once have conveyed it to Falcon's Stream, and could administer care and kindness to compensate for the rough treatment it had experienced at our hands.

We removed the prisoner to the spot where our companions had been waiting our return. Ernest and Jack ran briskly forward, bawling out, "Oh, what a handsome bird! And what a size! What beautiful feathers!" — "I think it is a female bustard," said Ernest. "And you are right," answered I; "its flesh is excellent, having somewhat of the flavor of the turkey, to which it also in some other respects has resemblance. Let us endeavor



to tame and preserve it by all means. We have gained for our poultry-yard a bird of rare value on account of its size, which will, it may be hoped, attract its mate, and thus furnish us with a brood of its species.”

I now fixed the bustard on the sledge, in a posture the most favorable to its ease. As we advanced on our way, I was frequently obliged to use the hatchet to make a free passage for the ass in the tall grass. The heat also increased, and we were all complaining of thirst, when Ernest, whose discoveries were generally of a kind to be of use, made one of a most agreeable nature. He has already been described as a lover of natural history, and now he had gathered, as he proceeded, such plants as he met with, with the view of adding to his stock of knowledge. He found a kind of hollow stalk of some height, which grew at the foot of trees, and entangled our feet in walking. He cut one of them, and was surprised to see a drop of pure fresh water issue at the place where the knife had been applied; he showed it to us, put it to his lips, and found it pure, and felt much regret that there was no more. I



then fell to examining the phenomenon myself, and soon perceived that the want of air prevented a more considerable issue of water. I made some more incisions, and presently water flowed out as if from a small conduit. Ernest, and after him the other boys, quenched their thirst at this new fountain, in the completest manner. I tried the experiment of dividing the plants longways, and they soon gave out water enough to supply even the ass, the monkey, and the bustard. For my own part, touched with deep gratitude for the goodness of God towards me and my beloved family, I raised my eyes to Heaven in thankfulness.

We were still compelled to fight our way through thick bushes, till at length arrived at the wood of gourds, we were not long in finding the spot where Fritz and I had once before enjoyed so agreeable a repose. Our companions had not soon done admiring and wondering at the magnificence of the trees they now beheld, and the prodigious size of the fruit which grew upon the trunk.

Jack and Ernest employed themselves in collecting dried branches and flints, while



their mother was occupied in attending to the poor bustard. She remarked to me, that it was cruel to keep her any longer blinded, and her legs tied together on the sledge. To please her, I took off the covering and loosened the string on the legs, but still left it so as to be a guard against its running away, or inflicting blows on those who might approach. I tied her by a long string to the trunk of a tree, that she might relieve herself by walking about.

My wife now gave us notice, that she should want some vessels to contain milk, a large flat spoon to cut out butter by pieces, and next, some pretty plates for serving it at table, made from the gourd rinds.

Father. — You are perfectly reasonable in your demand, dear wife, said I; and, on my part, I require some nests for the pigeons, some baskets for eggs, and some hives for bees.

All. — Oh yes, these things must all be made, we will set earnestly to work.

Jack. — But first, father, tell us how to divide one of the rinds with a string.

I made them gather or collect, till we were



in possession of a sufficient number. We now began our work: some had to cut; others to saw, scoop out, and model into agreeable forms. It was a real pleasure to witness the activity exhibited in this our manufacture of porcelain: each tried what specimens he could present for the applause of his companions. For my own part, I made a pretty basket, large enough to carry eggs, with one of the gourds, leaving an arch at the top to serve as a cover. I likewise accomplished a certain number of vessels, also with covers, fit to hold our milk, and then some spoons to skim the cream. My next attempt was some bottles large enough to hold fresh water, and these occasioned me more trouble than all the rest. It was necessary to empty the gourd through the small opening of the size of one's finger, which I had cut in it; I was obliged, after loosening the contents with a stick, to get them out by friction with shot and water well shaken on the inside. Lastly, to please my wife, I undertook the labor of a set of plates for her use. Fritz and Jack engaged to make the hives for the bees and nests for the pigeons and hens. For this last object,



they took the largest gourds, and cut a hole in front, the size of the animal for whose use it was intended: they had, when finished, so very pretty an appearance, that little Francis was ready to cry that he was not quite small enough to get into and live in one of them. The pigeons' nests were intended to be tied to the branches of our tree; those for the hens, the geese, and the ducks, were to be placed between its roots, or on the sea-shore, and to represent a sort of hen-coop.

Our work, added to the heat of the day, had made us all thirsty; but we found nothing on this spot like our *fountain* plants, as we had named them. The boys entreated me to go with them in different directions, and try to find some water, not daring by themselves to venture further into the wood.

Ernest with great eagerness proposed relieving me of this trouble, and putting himself in my place. It was not long before we heard him calling loudly to us, and saw him returning in great alarm. "Run quick, father," said he, "here is an immense wild boar. Oh, how he frightened me! I heard him grunting quite close to me, and then he



scampered away to the wood. I hear him at this very moment."

I then cried out to the boys to call the dogs quickly. "Halloo, here, Turk! Flora!" The dogs arrived full gallop. Ernest was our leader, and conducted us to the place where he saw the boar; but he was gone, and we saw nothing but a plot of potatoes which appeared to have been ransacked by the animal. The ardor for the chase had been somewhat checked in Jack and Ernest, when they considered that they had so formidable a creature to encounter: they stopped short, and began to dig potatoes, and left it to Fritz and me to follow the traces of the dogs. We soon heard the cry of the latter; for they had overtaken the runaway, and soon after the most hideous growling assailed our ears from the same quarter. We advanced with caution, holding our guns in readiness to fire together the instant the animal should be within the proper distance. Presently the spectacle of the two brave creatures attacking him on the right and left presented itself; each held one of his ears between their teeth. But it was not a boar, but our



own sow which had run away and so long been lost! After the first surprise we could not resist a hearty laugh; and then we hastened to disencumber our old friend of the teeth of her two adversaries. Her frightful squalling resounded through the wood, and drew our young companions to the place, when a warfare of banter and accusation went round among the parties. But here the attention of all was attracted to a kind of small potato which we observed lying thick on the grass around us, and which had fallen from some trees which appeared loaded with the same production: our sow devoured them greedily, thus consoling herself for the pain and fright the dogs had occasioned her.

The fruit was of different colors, and extremely pleasing to the eye. Fritz expressed his apprehension that it was the poisonous apple called the Mancenilla; but the sow ate them with so much eagerness, and the tree which bore them having neither the form nor foliage ascribed by naturalists to the Mancenilla, made me doubt of the truth of his idea. I desired my sons to put some of the fruit in their pockets, to make an

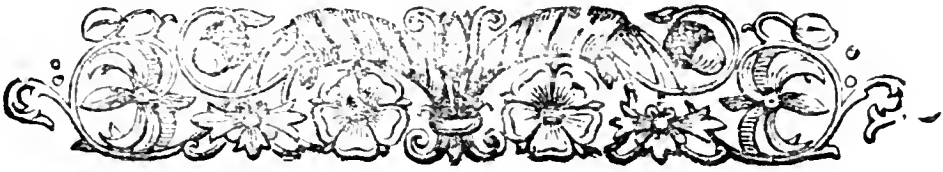


experiment with them upon the monkey. We now again, from extreme thirst, began to recollect our want of water, and determined to seek for some in every direction. Jack sprang off, and sought among the rocks, hoping that he should discover some little stream; but scarcely had he left the wood, than he bawled to us that he had found a crocodile!

“A crocodile!” cried I with a hearty laugh, “you have a fine imagination, my boy! who ever saw a crocodile on such scorching rocks as these, and with not a drop of water near? Now, Jack, you are surely dreaming”

“Not so much of a dream as you may think, father,” answered Jack, trying to speak in a low voice; “fortunately he is asleep;—he lies here on a stone at his full length;—do, father, step here and look at it; it does not stir in the least.”

We stole softly to the place where the animal lay; but instead of a crocodile, I saw before me a large sort of lizzard, named by naturalists *Leguana* or *Yguana*, an animal by nature of a mild character, and excellent



as food. Instantly all were for seizing him, and presenting so rare a prize to their mother. Fritz was already taking aim with his gun; but I prevented him, observing, that the animal being protected by a coat of scale, it might be difficult to destroy him, and that he is known to be dangerous, if approached when angry. "Let us try," said I, "another sort of experiment; as he is asleep, we need not be in a hurry; only a little contrivance is necessary to have him safe in our power alive, and the process will afford us an amusing spectacle."

I cut a stout stick from a bush, to the extremity of which I tied a string with a running knot. I guarded my other hand simply with a little switch, and thus with cautious steps approached the creature. When I was very near to him, I began to whistle a lively air, taking care to make the sounds low at first, and to increase in loudness till the lizard was awaked. The creature appeared entranced with pleasure as the sounds fell upon his ear; he raised his head to receive them still more distinctly, and looked round on all sides to discover from whence they came. I



now advanced by a step at a time, without a moment's interval in the music, which fixed him like a statue to the place. At length I was near enough to reach him with my switch, with which I tickled him gently, still continuing to whistle, one after the other, the different airs I could recollect. The lizard was bewildered by the charms of the music; the attitudes he threw himself into were expressive of a delirious voluptuousness; he stretched himself at full length, made undulating motions with his long tail, threw his head about, raised it up, and by this sort of action, disclosed the formidable range of his sharp-pointed teeth, which were capable of tearing us to pieces if we had excited his hostility. I dexterously seized the moment of his raising his head, to throw my noose over him. When this was accomplished, the boys drew near also, and wanted instantly to draw it tight and strangle him at once; but this I positively forbade, being unwilling to cause the poor animal so unmerited a suffering. I had used the noose only to make sure of him, in case it should happen that a milder mode of killing him, which I intended to try, failed



of success, in which case I should have looked to the noose for protection ; but this was rendered unnecessary. Continuing to whistle my most affecting melodies, I seized a favorable moment to plunge my switch into one of his nostrils. The blood flowed in abundance, and soon deprived him of life, without his exhibiting the least appearance of being in pain : on the contrary, to the last moment, he seemed to be still listening to the music.

As soon as he was dead, I allowed the boys to come quite near, and to tighten the noose, which we now found useful to draw him to the ground from the large stone on which he lay. My sons were delighted with the means I had used for killing him without pain. We had now to consider of the best way for transporting to Falcon's Stream so large and valuable a booty. After a moment of reflection, I perceived that I had better come at once to the determination of carrying him across my shoulders ; and the figure I made with so singular an animal on my back, with his tail dragging on the ground, was not the least amusing circumstance of the adventure. Fritz and Jack presented themselves as



pages, contending which should support my train, as they called the tail, which, independently of the good humor inspired amongst us, considerably eased me of the weight, and gave me the air of an old Chinese emperor, habited in a superb royal mantle of many colors ; for those of the lizard shone like precious stones in the eyes of the sun.

We were proceeding in our return, when we distinguished the voice of my wife and little Francis calling loudly upon my name. Our long absence had alarmed them : we had forgot on this occasion to give them notice of our approach by firing our gun, and they had imagined some terrible disaster must have befallen us. No sooner, however, did our cheerful notes reach their ear, than their lamentations were changed to joy, and we were soon the happiest of beings, assembled under a large gourd tree, where we related every particular of the excursion we had made, and laid the lizard at her feet. We had so many things to tell, that, till reminded by my wife, we forgot to mention that we had failed of procuring any water. My sons had taken out some of the unknown apples from their pockets,



and they lay on the ground by our side. Knips soon scented them, and came slyly up and stole several, and fell to chewing them with great eagerness. I myself threw one or two to the bustard, who also ate them without hesitation. Being now convinced that the apples were not of a poisonous nature, I announced to the boys, who had looked on with envy all the time, that they also might begin to eat them, and I myself set the example. We found them excellent in quality, and I began to suspect that they might be the sort of fruit called *guava*, which is much esteemed in such countries. The tree which bears them is sometimes twenty feet in height, and of so fertile a nature, that in inhabited countries they are sometimes thinned and cut down, on account of the quantity of land they would occupy. This regale of the apples had in some measure relieved our thirst; but on the other hand, they had increased our hunger; and as we had not time for preparing a portion of the lizard, we were obliged to content ourselves with the cold provisions we had brought with us.

We had scarcely finished, before my wife



earnestly entreated we would begin our journey home, and it appeared to me, as the evening was so far advanced, that it would be prudent to return this once without the sledge, which was heavy laden, and the ass could have drawn it but slowly: I therefore determined to leave it on the spot till the following day, when I could return and fetch it, contenting myself with loading the ass, for the present, with the bags which contained our new sets of porcelain; the lizard, which I feared might not keep fresh so long; and our little Francis, who began to complain of being tired. I took these arrangements upon myself, and left to my wife and Fritz the care of confining the bustard in such a manner that she could walk before us without danger of escaping.

When these preparations were complete, our little caravan was put in motion, taking the direction of a straight line to Falcon's Stream. The course of our route now lay along a wood of majestic oaks, and the ground was covered with acorns. My young travellers could not refrain from tasting them, and finding them both sweet and mild to the pal-



ate, I had the pleasure of reckoning them as a new means of support. On considering, I recognized that they were a kind of oak which remains always green, and are a common production of the woods in Florida, and that the Indians of North America extract from its fruit an excellent kind of sweet oil, which they use in cooking their rice. Numerous kinds of birds subsist upon these acorns. This we were led to remark, by the wild and discordant cries of several sorts of jays and parrots, which were skipping merrily among the foliage and the branches.

We arrived shortly at Falcon's Stream, and had time to employ ourselves in some trifling arrangements, before it was completely dark. My wife had great pleasure in taking out her service of porcelain, and using some of the articles that very evening; particularly the handsome egg-basket, and the vessels for the milk. Fritz was instructed to dig a place in the ground, to serve for a kind of cooler, the better to preserve the milk; and we covered it with boards, and put heavy stones to keep them down. Jack took the pigeons' nests, and scampered up the tree,



where he nailed them to the branches; he next laid some dry moss within, and placed one of the female pigeons we had contrived to tame, and which at the time was brooding, upon it; he put the eggs carefully under the mother, who seemed to accept his services, and to coo in return, with gratitude.

We concluded the exertions of the day with a plain repast, and the contriving a comfortable bed for the bustard by the side of the flamingo, and then stretched our weary limbs upon the homely couch, rendered by fatigue luxurious, in the giant tree.

CHAPTER XXII.

Excursion into Unknown Tracts.

MY first thought the next morning, was to fetch the sledge from the wood. I had a double motive for leaving it there, which I had refrained from explaining to my wife, to avoid giving her uneasiness. I had formed a



wish to penetrate a little farther into the land, and ascertain whether any thing useful would present itself beyond the wall of rocks. I was, besides, desirous to be better acquainted with the extent, the form, and general productions of our island: I wished Fritz only, who was stronger and more courageous than his brothers, and Turk, to accompany me. We set out very early in the morning, and drove the ass before us for the purpose of drawing home the sledge.

As we were picking up some acorns, different birds of exquisite plumage flitted about us; for this once, I could not refuse Fritz the pleasure of firing upon them, that we might learn their species. He brought down three. I recognized one to be the great blue Virginia jay, and the other two were parrots. One of the two was a superb red parrot; the other was green and yellow.

While Fritz was reloading his gun, we heard a singular sort of noise, which came from a distance. At one moment it resembled a muffled drum, at another, the noise made in sharpening a saw. My first idea was of music played by savages, and we re-



treated quickly to hide ourselves among the bushes to listen. By degrees we advanced towards the place from whence the sound appeared to come: but perceiving nothing to alarm us, we separated some of the branches with our hands, and then discovered a handsome bird, about the size of the English cock; and, like it too, adorned with elegantly formed smooth feathers round the neck, and a comb upon his head. The animal stood erect on a decayed trunk of a tree, which was lying on the ground, and at this moment exhibited some singular gestures. His tail was spread in the form of a fan, similar to that of the turkey-cock, but shorter; the feathers round his neck and head were erect and bristling. He sometimes agitated them with so quick a motion, as to make them appear like a vapor which suddenly inclosed him: sometimes he whirled himself round and round on the trunk of the tree; at others he moved his head and eyes in such a manner as to express a state of distraction, making, at the same time, the singular kind of noise with his voice which had alarmed us, and which was preceded and followed by a sort of explosion. This last



was caused by the motion of his wing striking in a quick measure on the trunk, which was hollow and dry, and made the noise resemble a muffled drum. There were assembled around him a great number of birds of the same species, but much smaller, and of a less beautiful form. One and all fixed their eyes upon him, and seemed delighted with the pantomime. I contemplated this extraordinary spectacle, of which I had formerly read an account, with astonishment. The number of the spectators of the feathered actor increased every moment, and the performance increased in spirit also in proportion, presenting the idea of a perfect intoxication or delirium of the creature. At this moment Fritz, who stood a little behind me, put an end to the scene by firing off his gun. The actor fell from the stage, and stretching himself on the sand, breathed his last, and the spectators betook themselves suddenly to flight. I must confess, the interest I took in the exhibition was of so lively a nature, that I could not refrain from reproaching Fritz in an angry tone. "Why," said I, "must we be always applying the means of death and



annihilation to the creatures that fall in our way? Is not nature a thousand times more exhilarating in her animated movements, which express life and enjoyment, than in the selfish scheme of destruction you seem so fond of? Some allowance should no doubt be made for the curiosity of youth, for necessities caused by our situation, and even the taste you have acquired for sporting. I, therefore, as you well know, do not object to your killing now and then a little game, or some singular or dangerous kind of animal; but moderation is on all occasions useful, and the spectacle of this bird, employed in such earnest endeavors to draw his females around him, was at least as amusing, as to see him stretched there at length, and lifeless, who but two minutes ago exhibited such rapid and lively motions! His pretty hens too, all dispersed in terror, and deprived of the possibility of ever more admiring him, or being his companions!”

Fritz looked down, ashamed and sorry. I observed to him, the thing being done, there was now no remedy; that the heath-cock, or heath-cock, was much esteemed as game;



and that he had better take it from the ground, and carry it to his mother.

We now laid the dead cock upon the ass's back, and proceeded on our journey. We soon arrived at the guava trees, and a little after at the spot where we had left the sledge, when we found our treasures in the best possible condition: but as the morning was not far advanced, we entered upon our intended project of penetrating beyond the wall of rocks.

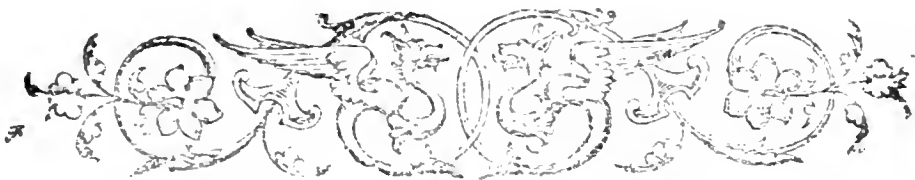
We pursued our way in a straight line at the foot of these massy, solid productions of nature, every moment expecting to reach their extremity, or to find some turn, or breach, or passage through them, that should conduct us into the interior of the island, if, as I presumed, it was not terminated by these rocks. We walked on, continually looking about, that nothing might escape us worthy of notice, and to anticipate and avoid such dangers as should threaten. Turk, with his usual bravery, took the lead, the ass followed with lazy steps, shaking his long ears, and Fritz and I brought up the rear.

We next entered a pretty little grove, the



trees of which were unknown to us. Their branches were loaded with large quantities of berries of an extraordinary quality, being entirely covered with a wax which stuck to our fingers as we attempted to gather them. I knew of a sort of bush producing wax that grows in America, and named by botanists *Myrica cerifera*; I had no doubt that this was the plant, and the discovery gave me great pleasure. "Let us stop here," said I to Fritz, "for we cannot do better than collect a great quantity of these berries as a useful present to your mother."

A short time after, another object presented itself with equal claims to our attention; it was the singular modes of behavior of a kind of bird scarcely larger than a chaffinch, and clothed in feathers of a common brown color. These birds appeared to exist as a republic, there being among them one common nest, inhabited at pleasure by all their tribes. We saw one of these nests in a tree, in a somewhat retired situation; it was formed of plaited straws and bulrushes intermixed; it inclosed great numbers of inhabitants, and was built round the trunk of



the tree: it had a kind of roof formed of roots and bulrushes, carefully knit together. We observed in the sides small apertures, seemingly intended as doors and windows to each particular cell of this general receptacle; from a few of these apertures issued some small branches, which served the birds as points of rest for entering and returning: the external appearance of the whole, excited the image of an immensely large open sponge. The inhabitants were very numerous; they passed in and out continually, and I estimated that it might contain at least a million. The males were somewhat larger than the females, and there was a trifling difference in their plumage: the number of the males was very small in proportion to the females: I do not know whether this had been the cause of their thus assembling together.

While we were attentively examining this interesting little colony, we perceived a very small kind of parrot hovering about the nest. Their gilded green wings, and the variety of their colors, produced a beautiful effect; they seemed to be perpetually disputing with the



colonists, and not unfrequently endeavoured to prevent their entrance into the building; they attacked them fiercely, and even tried to peck at us, if we but advanced our hand to the structure. Fritz, who was well trained in the art of climbing trees, was earnestly desirous to take a nearer view of them, and to secure, if possible, a few individuals. He threw his burden down, and climbed to the nest; he then tried to introduce his hand into one of the apertures, and to seize whatever living creature it should touch in that particular cell; what he most desired, was to find a female brooding, and to carry both her and the eggs away. Several of the cells were empty, but by perseverance he found one in the situation he wished; but he received so violent a peck from an invisible bird, that his only care was now to withdraw his hand; presently, however, he ventured a second time to pass his hand into the nest, and succeeded in seizing his prey, which he laid hold of, and, in spite of the bird's resistance, he drew it through the aperture, and squeezed it into the pocket of his waistcoat; and buttoning it securely, he slid down the tree, and



reached the ground in safety. The signals of distress sent forth by the prisoner collected a multitude of birds from their cells, who all surrounded him, uttering loud cries, and attacking him with their beaks, till he had made good his retreat. He now released the prisoner, and we discovered him to be a beautiful little green parrot, which Fritz entreated he might be allowed to preserve, and make a present of to his brothers, who would make a cage to keep him in, and would then tame him and teach him to speak.

On the road home, we observed to each other, that from the circumstance of this young nestling within the structure, it appeared probable that the true right of property was in this species, and that the brown-colored birds we at first observed, were intruders, endeavoring to deprive them of it. "Thus we find," said I to Fritz, "the existence of social dispositions in almost every class of the animal kingdom, which leads to the combining together for a common cause or benefit. A multitude of causes may induce animals to form a body or society, instead of living singly: among them may be



supposed the deficiency of females or of males; the charge of the young; providing them with food; or as a means for their safety and protection. Who shall dare to fix limits to the instinct or to the faculties of the animal creation?"

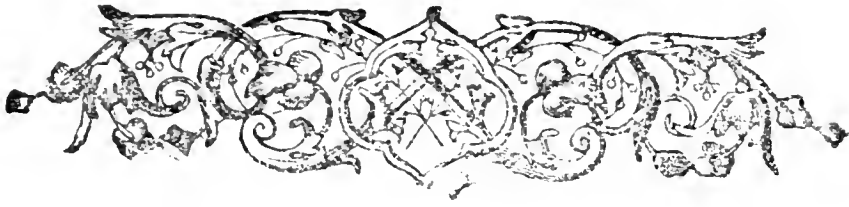
Fritz. — I do not, however, recollect any kind of animals who live thus together in society, except the bees.

Father. — What say you then to wasps, drones, and different kinds of ants?

Fritz. — I did not indeed recollect the ants, though I have so often amused myself with looking at them: nothing can be more interesting than the ingenious little houses they construct; observing them attentively, we perceive their industry, their economy, their care of their young, in a word, all their undertakings, conducted on a plan of society and numbers.

Father. — Have you also observed with what a provident kind of instinct they bring out their eggs to be warmed by the sun, and for this end remove them from place to place till the time of their maturity?

Fritz. — Is it not probable, father, that



what we take for eggs, are chrysales of ants, which, like many other insects, are thus shut up while the process of their taking wings is in the operation?

Father. — You may be right. Writers on natural history have considered the industry and frugality of these insects, as a subject not unworthy of their consideration; but if the common ant of our own country excited so much of your admiration, what will be your astonishment at the labors performed by the ants of other regions! There is a kind which build nests of four, six, and eight feet in height, and large in proportion: the external walls of these structures are so thick and solid, that neither sun nor rain can penetrate them. They are houses which contain within, little streets, arched roofs, piazzas, colonades, and particular apartments for the offices of housewifery. The ant is an animal of pilfering propensities, on the profits of which it principally lives; it is also remarkable for constancy in its designs, and remaining ever in one place: a species of them exists, however, in America, which is known by the name of the cephalate, or visiting ant;



they make their appearance in numerous troops every two or three years, and disperse themselves in every house; as soon as their visit is observed, it is customary to open all the apartments and receptacles for stores; they enter every where, and in a short time it is found that they have exterminated as effectually the rats, mice, bugs, kakerles (a sort of insect that gives great annoyance in hot countries); — in a word, all the different animals offensive or injurious to man, as if sent on a special mission to remedy the evils these occasion. They do no injury to man, unless they find in him an enemy, who pursues and disturbs their quiet; in which case they attack his shoes so violently, that they are destroyed with incredible rapidity. This curious species does not build its house above ground, but digs holes, sometimes not less than eight feet in depth, and plaster the walls according to the rules of the art of masonry.

Fritz. — You mentioned just now, that in each class of the animal creation there were some individuals which formed themselves into societies; pray tell me which they are?

Father. — I know of no instance among



birds, but that we have just been witnessing ; but among quadrupeds there is at least one striking example of the social principle : — try to recollect it yourself.

Fritz. — It is perhaps the elephant or the sea-otter.

Father. — Neither is the one I thought of : the animals you have named discover also a strong disposition to live in society with their species, but they build nothing like a common house of reception : — try again.

Fritz. — Ah, is it not the beaver, father ? Is it not true, that these animals possess an intelligence, that enables them to contrive and place dams to such streams or rivers as obstruct their design of building entire villages, and that by this operation they are furnished with a sort of ditch, which they use for their purposes ?

Father. — You are quite right ; and strictly speaking, the marmoset also may be included in the number of sociable quadrupeds ; for they dig themselves a common place of abode, a sort of cavern, in the mountains, and in these whole families of them pass the winter comfortably, in a continual sleep.



We reached a wood, the trees of which in a small degree resembled the wild fig-tree; at least the fruit they bore, like the fig, was round in form, and contained a soft juicy substance, full of small grains. Their height was from forty to sixty feet: the bark of the trunk was scaly, like the pine-apple, and wholly bare of branches, except at the very top.

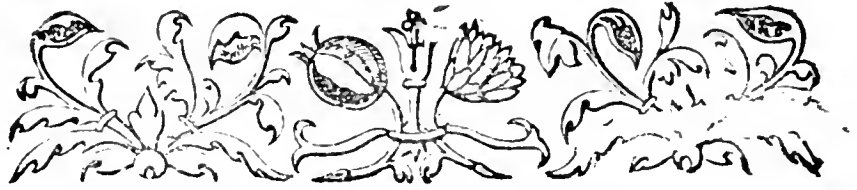
The leaves of these trees are very thick; in substance, tough, like leather; and their upper and under surfaces are different in color. But what surprised us the most, was a kind of gum, which issued in a liquid state from the trunk of the tree, and became immediately hardened by the air. This discovery awakened Fritz's attention: in Europe he had often made use of the gum produced by cherry-trees, either as a cement or varnish, in his youthful occupations; and the thought struck him, that he could do the same with what he now saw.

As we walked, he looked frequently at his gum, which he tried to soften with his breath, but without success: he now discovered a still more singular property in the substance;



that of stretching on being pulled at the extremities; and, on letting go, of reducing itself instantly, by the power of an elastic principle. He was struck with surprise, and sprang towards me, repeating the experiment before my eyes, and exclaiming, "Look, father! if this is not the very thing we formerly used, to rub out bad strokes in our drawings."

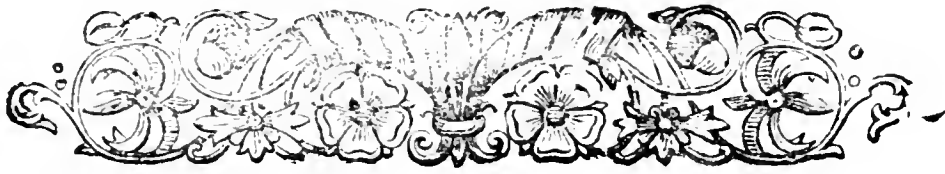
"Ah! what do you tell me?" cried I with joy: "such a discovery would be valuable indeed. The best thanks of all will be due to you, if it is the true *caoutchouc* tree which yields the Indian rubber. Quick, hand it here, that I may examine it." — Having satisfied myself of our good fortune, I had now to explain, that *caoutchouc* is a kind of milky sap, which runs from its tree, in consequence of incisions made in the bark. "This liquor is received in vessels placed expressly for the purpose: it is afterwards made to take the form of dark-colored bottles, of different sizes, such as we have seen them, in the following manner. Before the liquor has time to coagulate, some small earthen bottles are dipped into it a sufficient number of times to form



the thickness required. These vessels are then hung over smoke, which completely dries them, and gives them a dark color. Before they are entirely dry, a knife is drawn across them, which produces the lines or figures with which you have seen them marked. The concluding part of the operation is to break the mould, and to get out the pieces by the passage of the neck, when there remains the complete form of a bottle.”

Fritz. — This process seems simple enough, and we will make some bottles of it for carrying liquids, when we go far in pursuit of game. But still I do not perceive how the discovery is of so much value to us?

Father. — Not by this use of it alone, certainly; but its quality is excellent for being made into shoes and boots without seams, if we can add the assistance of earthen moulds of the size of the leg or foot to be fitted. We must consider of some means of restoring masses of the caoutchouc to its liquid form, for spreading upon the moulds; and if we should not succeed, we must endeavor to draw it in sufficient quantities, in its liquid state, from the trees themselves.



We continued our way till we reached another wood, the skirts of which we had already seen, it being the same which stretches from the sea shore to the top of the rocks. In this spot alone, and mixed with a quantity of cocoa-trees, I discovered a sort of tree of smaller growth, which I presumed must be the sago palm: one of these had been thrown down by the wind, so that I was able to examine it thoroughly. I perceived that the trunk of it contained a large quantity of a mealy substance; I therefore, with my hatchet, laid it open longways and cleared it of the whole contents; and I found on tasting, it was exactly like the sago I had often eaten in Europe. We now began to consider how much further we would go: the thick bushes of bamboo, through which it was impossible to pass, seemed to furnish a natural conclusion to our journey. We were therefore unable to ascertain whether or not we should have found a passage beyond the wall of rocks: we perceived then no better resource than to turn to the left towards Cape Disappointment, where the luxurious plantations of sugar-canes now again drew our at



tention. That we might not return empty-handed to Falcon's Stream, and might deserve forgiveness for so long an absence, we each took the pains to cut a large bundle of the canes, which we threw across the ass's back, not forgetting the ceremony of reserving one apiece to refresh ourselves with along the road. We soon arrived on the well-known shore of the sea, which at length afforded an open and a shorter path; we next reached the wood of gourds, where we found our sledge loaded as we had left it the night before; we took the sugar-canes from the ass, and fastened them to the sledge, and then we harnessed the ass, and the patient animal began to draw towards home.

We arrived at Falcon's Stream without any further adventure. We received at first some kind reproofs: we were next questioned, and lastly thanked, as we displayed our various treasures, but particularly the sugar-canes: each of the boys seized one and began to suck it, as did their mother also. Nothing could be more amusing than to hear Fritz relate, with unaffected interest, our new discoveries, and to see him imitate the gestures



of the heath-cock, as he held it up for examination:—his hearers continued to shout with laughter for many minutes. Then came the history of the colony of birds and their singular habitation, and of the green parrot, all of which was listened to with the delight excited by a fairy tale. Fritz showed them the handsome red parrot dead, also the great blue jay, both of which they did not cease to admire; but when he took out of his pocket the little green parrot all alive, there were no bounds to their ecstasy: they jumped about like mad things, and I was obliged to interpose my authority to prevent their tearing him to pieces, in the struggle who should have him first. Francis nearly devoured the little animal with kisses, repeating a thousand times pretty little parrot! At length the bird was fastened by the leg to one of the roots of the trees till a cage could be made for him; and was fed with acorns, which he appeared exceedingly to relish. We next gave an account of the prospect I now had of furnishing not only candles, but boots and shoes. Fritz took a bit of the rubber from his pocket and drew it to its full length, and



then let it go suddenly, to the great amusement of little Francis.

Soon after night-fall, we partook of a hearty meal: being much fatigued, we went earlier than usual to rest, and having carefully drawn up the ladder, we fell exhausted, into sound and peaceful slumbers.

CHAPTER XXIII.

Candle-making.—The Ship blown up.—The Caoutchouc Cocoa-nuts.—The Buffalo.

THE next morning my wife and children besought me to begin my manufacture of candles. I put the berries over a moderate fire: as the wax rose I carefully skimmed it, and put it in a vessel; my wife supplied wicks, made from sail-cloth; I dipped them into the wax, as often as was necessary to make them the proper thickness, and then placed them in a cool spot to harden. Though rude, they prolonged our days by useful hours we had lost before.



My wife had long desired, but had not been able, to make butter. I cut a large gourd in two, filled it with three quarts of cream, then united the parts. I then placed the gourd in the middle of a piece of sail-cloth, and, giving a corner to each of my sons, directed them to rock the cloth with a slow, regular motion. This was quite an amusement; and at the end of an hour, my wife had excellent butter.

Of the chestnut, walnut, and cherry-trees, we formed an avenue from Falcon's Nest to Family Bridge. We planted round the Tent-House every tree that required heat. These succeeded admirably. As this place was the magazine for our arms, ammunition, and provisions, we made a fortress of it, surrounding it with a high hedge of strong, thorny trees, so that it was inaccessible. We always carefully removed the first planks of our bridge after crossing. We also placed our cannon on a little elevation; and these labors occupied us three months. All went on well in our little colony. We had an abundant and certain supply of provisions; but our wardrobe, notwithstanding



ing continual repairing, was wretched, and we had no means of renewing it, except by again visiting the wreck, which I knew still contained some chests of clothes and bales of cloth. This decided me to make another voyage.

We selected for our cargo bales of linen and woollen, barrels of tar, doors, windows, tables, benches, locks and bolts, all the ammunition, and even cannon. Some boilers, intended for a sugar-manufactory, we tied to some large, empty casks.

When we had completed our arrangements, I resolved to blow up the ship. Just as the sun was going down, a column of fire, announced the destruction of the vessel. At this time, two of our ducks and one goose hatched each a brood, and were leading their noisy young families to the water.

On our arrival at Falcon's Nest, we discovered many supplies wanting: the candles were failing; my wife wanted some wild-fowl's eggs to set under her hens; Jack wanted some guavas, and Francis some sugar-canes. So we made a family tour of



it, taking the cart, with the cow and ass, to contain our provisions, and a large sail-cloth, to make a tent. The weather was delightful, and we set out singing, in great spirits. The road was rugged, but we rested frequently. We stopped to see the bird-colony, which greatly delighted them all, and Ernest declared *Loxia gregaria*, the sociable grosbeak. We filled two bags with wax-berries, and another with guavas.

We then proceeded to the caoutchouc-tree. I made incisions in the trees, and placed bowls to receive the gum, which soon began to run in a milky stream. We turned a little to the left, and entered a beautiful and fertile plain, bounded on one side by the sugar-canes and wood of palms, on the other by the bamboos; and before us was Cape Disappointment, backed by the ocean—a magnificent picture.

We at once decided to make this our resting-place on our excursions; we even thought of transferring our residence from Falcon's Nest to this spot. We loosed our animals, and separated on our several employments—some to cut sugar-canes, others



bamboos, and, after stripping them, to make them into bundles, and place them in the cart. This hard work made the boys hungry; they refreshed themselves with sugar-canes, but had a great desire to have some coconuts. Their attempts to climb the lofty, bare trunk of the palm ended only in disappointment, till I gave them pieces of shark-skin to brace on their legs, showing them how to climb, by the aid of a cord fastened round the tree with a running noose.

Ernest, who had not climbed the tree, then bound his legs, and sprung up a palm which he had been examining. His brothers laughed at his taking the trouble to ascend a tree that had not a single nut. As soon as he reached the top, he struck with his hatchet, and a tuft of tender, yellow leaves fell at our feet, which I recognized as the product of the cabbage-palm, a delicate food. But our hero did not descend; and I asked him if he wanted to replace the cabbage?

“Wait a little,” said he; “I am bringing you some wine to drink my health; but it comes slower than I could wish.”



He now descended, holding his cocoa-cup, into which he poured from his flask a clear, rose-colored liquor, and begged me to drink. It was the true palm-wine, as pleasant as champagne, and a great restorative, and thanking our learned Ernest, we all drank.

We were putting up our tent for the night, when our ass, which had been quietly grazing, began to bray furiously, erected his ears, and, plunging into the bamboos, disappeared. I could not lose the useful animal; we decided that I should go, with Jack, and the two dogs, in search of him, leaving Fritz and Ernest as a guard for their mother. After an hour's fruitless search among the canes, we emerged beyond them, in an extensive plain on the bay. A river flowed into the bay here, and between the river and the rock was a narrow passage, which at high water would be overflowed. We thought it likely that our ass had passed by this defile; we therefore went forward till we met with a stream, which fell in a cascade, from a mass of rocks, into the river. We ascended the stream till we found a place shallow enough to cross. Here we saw the



shoe-marks of our ass, mingled with the footsteps of other animals, and at a distance we saw a herd of animals, but could not distinguish what they were. We ascended a little hill, and, at a distance, saw some specks, which I concluded were the animals we had first seen, and I resolved to go nearer, in hopes our ass might have joined them. We made towards the spot, and, when we had crossed a little cluster of bamboos, we suddenly came on a herd of buffaloes. At the sight, I was absolutely petrified, and my gun useless. Fortunately the dogs were in the rear, and the animals, lifting their heads, and fixing their large eyes on us, seemed more astonished than angry—we were the first men, probably, they had ever seen.

The dogs, notwithstanding our efforts to restrain them, flew at the buffaloes, and falling on a young buffalo that had strayed before the rest, seized it by the ears. The creature began to bellow, and struggle to escape; its mother ran to its assistance, and, with her, the whole herd. At that moment we fired on the herd. The effect was wonderful: they paused a moment, and then took to



flight with incredible rapidity, and were soon out of sight. My dogs still held their prize, and the mother, though wounded by our shot, tore up the ground in her fury; but a pistol soon put an end to her life.

I praised Jack for his courage and presence of mind. The dogs still held the young calf by the ears. Jack always carried his lasso; he flung it so dexterously that he completely wound it round the hind legs of the calf, and threw it. I replaced the lasso by a stronger cord, and used another to bind his fore-legs loosely. Jack cried victory, and already thought how his mother and brothers would be delighted.

I began by tying to the foot of a tree the cords that held the legs; then I caught hold of his mouth, and with a sharp knife perforated the nostril, and passed a cord through. This cord was to guide the animal. As soon as the blood ceased to flow, I took the cord, uniting the two ends, and the creature followed me without resistance.

I was unwilling to abandon the whole of the buffalo I had killed, as it is excellent meat; I therefore cut out the tongue, and



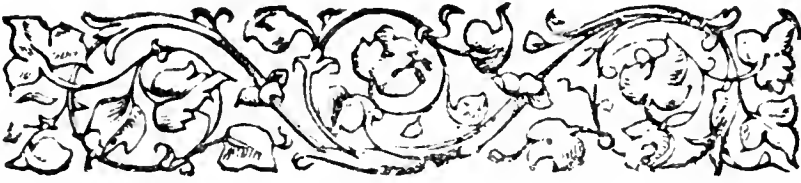
some of the best parts from the loin, and covered them well with salt, of which we had taken a provision with us. I then carefully skinned the four legs, remembering that the American hunters use these skins for boots, being remarkably soft and flexible. We permitted the dogs to feast on the remainder; and while they were enjoying themselves, we sat down under a tree to rest. We cut several of the very thick reeds, which make excellent vessels when separated at the joints; but I perceived that Jack was cutting some of small dimensions, and I inquired his purpose. He replied:

“I am cutting these reeds to make moulds for our candles.”

“An excellent thought, my dear boy!” said I; “if even we break our moulds in getting out the candles.”

We crossed the narrow pass in the rocks, and here our dogs killed a large jackal, and Jack saved, with difficulty, one of the young cubs, a pretty little gold-colored creature.

In the mean time I had tied the calf to a low tree, which I discovered was the thorny dwarf palm. It bears an oblong fruit, about



the size of a pigeon's egg, from which is extracted an oil which is an excellent substitute for butter. I determined to return for some young shoots of this palm.

It was almost night when we joined our family; and endless were the questions the sight of the buffalo produced, and great was the boasting of Jack. I was compelled to lower his pride a little by an unvarnished statement.

CHAPTER XXIV.

The Sago-Palm.—Back to Falcon's Nest.—The Staircase in the Tree.—Honey.

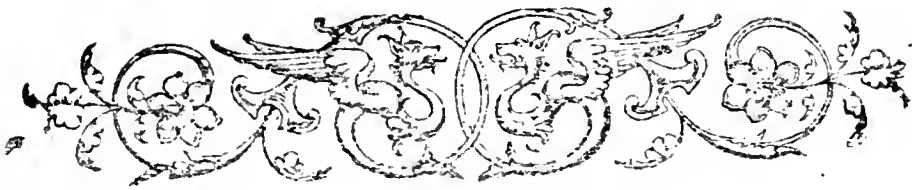
IN my absence, Fritz and Ernest had cut down an immense sago-palm, seventy feet high, intending to extract its precious pith; but this they had been unable to accomplish alone. While they were engaged in this monkeys had broken into the tent and destroyed everything; they had drunk or overturned the milk, and spoiled all our provisions; and even so much injured the



palisade I had erected round the tent, that it took them an hour, after they returned, to repair the damage. Fritz had also taken a Malabar eagle. I advised him to train it as a falcon, to chase other birds.

We then made a fire of green wood, in the smoke of which we placed the buffalo-meat, leaving it during the night, that it might be perfectly cured. We had had some for supper, and thought it excellent. We then retired to our mossy beds, to recruit our strength for the labors of another day.

At break of day we rose, made a light breakfast, and I decided to remain here another day; for it was no trifling undertaking to split up the sago-tree. I thought, after removing the useful pith from the trunk, to obtain two large channels to conduct the water from Jackal River to the kitchen-garden. We first sawed off the head; after four hours' labor we succeeded in splitting it. When parted, we pressed the pith with our hands, to get the whole into one division of the trunk, and began to make our paste. At one end of the spout we nailed one of the graters, through which



we intended to force the paste, to form the round seeds. My little bakers set vigorously to work, some pouring water on the pith, while the rest mixed it into paste. When sufficiently worked, I pressed it strongly with my hand against the grater; the farinaceous parts passed easily through the holes, while the *ligneous* part, consisting of splinters of wood, &c., was left behind. My wife spread the grains on sail-cloth, in the sun, to dry. I also formed some vermicelli.

The next morning the whole caravan began to move at an early hour. The buffalo, harnessed to the cart, by the side of the cow, took the place of our lost ass, and began his apprenticeship as a beast of draught. We took the same road on our return, that we might carry away the candle-berries and the India-rubber.

In crossing the wood of guavas, we suddenly heard our dogs, who were before us. They were endeavoring to enter a thicket, in the midst of which Fritz declared he had caught a glimpse of an animal larger than the buffalo, with a black, bristly skin. I was just about to discharge my gun into the



thicket, when Jack, who had lain down on the ground, to look under the bushes, burst into a loud laugh. "It is another trick of that vexatious animal, our old sow! she is always making fools of us," cried he. Half-merry and half-angry, we made an opening into the thicket, and there discovered the lady lying, surrounded by seven little pigs only a few days old. We were very glad to see our old friend so attended, and stroked her. She seemed to recognize us, and grunted amicably. We supplied her with some potatoes, sweet acorns, and cassava bread, and took two of her young ones to be brought up at home, and left the rest to support themselves on acorns in the woods, where they would become game for us. At length we arrived at Falcon's Nest, which we regarded with all the attachment of home.

The next day we began to discuss a plan I had long had in my head; but the execution of it presented many difficulties. It was, to substitute a firm and solid staircase for the ladder of ropes, which was a source of continual fear to my wife.

"Have you not said there was a swarm of



bees in the trunk of the tree?" I inquired of my wife. "Yes," said little Francis, "they stung my face dreadfully the other day, when I was on the ladder."

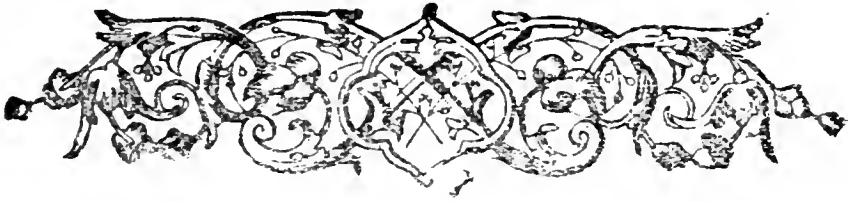
"Now, then," cried I, "let us find out how far the tree is hollow: we can increase the size of the tunnel, and I have already planned the sort of staircase I can construct." I had hardly spoken, when the boys began to sound the tree. This rash proceeding had nearly been fatal to Jack, who, having placed himself just before the opening, and striking violently, the whole swarm issued forth. Nothing was heard but cries. My wife hastened to cover the stings with moist earth; but it was some hours before they could open their eyes. They begged me to get them the honey, and I prepared a hive—a large gourd, which I placed on a board nailed upon a branch of our tree, and covered with straw.

The next day I plastered up the entrance to the hive with clay, leaving only room to admit the bowl of my pipe, and began to smoke to stupefy the bees, when the murmur ceased. Fritz and I, with a chisel and small



axe, made an opening about three feet square, below the bees' entrance. The interior of the tree was filled with the honeycombs; I cut them out carefully, and placed the upper comb, on which the bees were hanging in clusters, in the new hive, and put it on the plank prepared for it; I then descended with the rest of the honeycomb, and filled a cask with it. The bees finally settled in the new hive, where the queen bee, doubtless, had fixed herself. The tree was entirely hollow, and I thought I could easily fix a winding staircase in this wide tunnel.

We began by cutting a doorway, on the side facing the sea, of the size of the door we had brought from the captain's cabin, with its framework. We smoothed the cavity, fixing in the middle a post about ten feet high, to serve for the axis of the staircase. We had prepared, the evening before, a number of boards, to form our steps. We made deep notches corresponding in the pillar; I placed my steps in these notches. We then fixed on the central pillar another of the same height. Four times we had to repeat this operation, and, finally, we reached



our branches, and terminated the staircase on the level of the floor of our apartment. I cleared the entrance by some strokes of my axe. A rope for a railing, and windows completed it.

My boys, meanwhile, were training their pets: Jack his jackal, Fritz his young eagle, which he trained to hawk, and Ernest his monkey. After perfecting my candle-manufacture, I made a pair of India-rubber or caoutchouc boots using as a mould a stocking, filled with sand, and covered with clay. One of our next tasks was to bring water from the river, by means of a dam and our sago pipes.

CHAPTER XXV.

The Ass Returns with a Companion.—Flax.—Preparing for Winter.

ONE morning we were alarmed at hearing at a distance strange, sharp, prolonged sounds. At length, Fritz, who was leaning forward to listen, threw down his gun, and



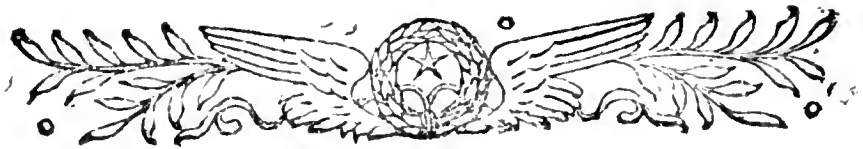
bursting into a loud laugh, cried out, "It is the ass come back." We could not but feel a little vexation at being put into such a fright by a donkey. Soon after, we had the pleasure of seeing him appear, accompanied by another animal of his own species, but infinitely more beautiful. I knew it at once to be the onager, or wild ass, and hastened down, with Fritz, to secure it, taking a noose, and also a piece of bamboo, about two feet long, split, and tied firmly. Fritz went up to our old servant, and offered him oats mixed with salt. The ass came directly to eat; its companion followed; Fritz adroitly threw the noose over its head. The terrified animal attempted to fly, but that drew the cord tight, and he lay down, his tongue hanging out. I hastened up and threw the halter of the ass round his neck, and placed the split cane over his nose, tying it firmly below with a string. I then took off the noose, and tied the halter, by two long cords, to the roots of two separate trees, and left him. After a while it rose, and stamped furiously, trying to release itself; but pain obliged it to lie down. Then we dragged it



between two roots very near to each other, to which we tied the cords so short, that it could not escape. We took care our own donkey should not stray again, by tying his fore-feet.

At the end of a month the onager was so far subdued, that we placed burdens on his back; but the obedience necessary before we could mount him, it seemed impossible to instil into him. At last, I leaped on his back, and seizing one of his long ears between my teeth, I bit it till the blood came. In a moment he reared on his hind-feet, remained for a while stiff and motionless, then came down on his fore-feet slowly, I still holding on his ear. At last I ventured to release him; he made some leaps, but soon subsided into a sort of trot, I having previously placed loose cords on his fore-legs. From that time we were his masters: my sons mounted him one after another; they gave him the name of Lightfoot, and never animal deserved his name better.

The approach of the rainy season warned me to construct, under the roots of the trees, covered houses for the animals. We began



by making a roof above the roots of our tree, so firm that it formed a platform, which we surrounded with a railing; and thus we had a balcony, and a pleasant promenade. We made several divisions in the interior, each little inclosure being appropriated to some useful purpose; and thus, stables, poultry-houses, dairy, larder, hay-house, store-room, &c., besides our dining-room, were all united under one roof.

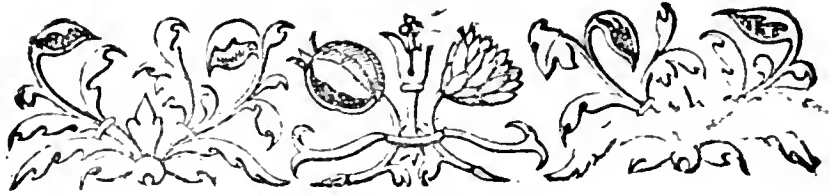
One evening, as we were bringing home a load of potatoes, I saw the cart was not full, and went with Fritz and Ernest to collect a sack of sweet acorns—Fritz mounted on his onager, Ernest followed by his monkey, and I carrying the bag. On arriving at the wood, we tied Lightfoot to a tree, and all three began to gather the dropped acorns, when we were startled by the cries of birds, and a loud flapping of wings. Ernest went softly to see what was the matter, and we soon heard him calling out, “Be quick! a fine heath-fowl’s nest, full of eggs! Knips wants to suck them, and the mother is beating him.”

Fritz ran up, and they secured the two



birds, and a large nest filled with eggs. My wife placed the valuable eggs under a sitting hen. In a few days the eggs were hatched, and the poultry-yard had an increase of fifteen little strangers, who soon became as tame as any of our fowls.

Francis, to whom Ernest gave some sharp leaves from the heath-hen's nest, had soon become tired of playing with them, and they were thrown aside. Fritz happened to take some of the withered leaves up, and advised Francis to make whip-lashes of them, to drive the goats and sheep with. He was pleased with the idea, and began to split the leaves into strips, which Fritz platted together into very good whip-lashes. I found they were the *Phormium tenax*, or New Zealand flax; and when I communicated it to my wife, it almost overwhelmed her with joy. "Bring me all the leaves you can, without delay," cried she, "and I will make you stockings, shirts, coats, sewing-thread, cords—in fact, give me but flax and work-tools, and I can manage all." My boys, always ready to second the wishes of their beloved mother, soon mounted their coursers,



Fritz on Lightfoot, and Jack on the great buffalo, to procure supplies.

In a short time our young cavaliers returned with huge bundles of the precious plant. The first operation necessary was to steep the flax, so as in a certain degree to separate the fibrous and ligneous parts.

In a fortnight the flax was ready; we spread it in the sun, which dried it effectually. We brought in continually loads of sweet acorns, manioc, potatoes, wood, fodder for the cattle, sugar-canes, fruit, indeed every thing that might be useful. We profited by the last few days to sow the wheat and other grains. The rainy season came, and we were in a real lake; fortunately, the waters did not quite reach our tree, but surrounded us about two hundred yards off, leaving us on a sort of island. We set about bringing down our hammocks and bedding to the sheltered space under the roots of the trees. We were painfully crowded; the provisions, cooking-utensils, and especially the animals, made our retreat almost insupportable. We were choked with smoke if we lighted a fire, and inundated with rain if we



opened a door. For the first time since our misfortune, we sighed for the comforts of our home; but we set about endeavoring to amend our condition.

The winding staircase was very useful to us; the upper part was crowded with things we did not want, and my wife frequently worked in the lower part, at one of the windows. We crowded our beasts a little more, and gave a current of air to the places they had left. I gave a half-liberty to the buffalo and the onager, tying their legs loosely, to prevent them straying. We made as few fires as possible, as, fortunately, it was never cold, and we had no provisions that required much cookery. As we sent out some of our animals in the morning, with bells round their necks, Fritz and I had to bring them in every evening, when we were invariably wet through. This induced my wife to make us a sort of cloak and hood, which we covered with caoutchouc, and thus obtained two capital water-proof dresses.

Though we had a glazed door to our hut, the gloominess of the weather made night come on early. We then lighted a candle,



on the table, round which we were all assembled. The good mother labored with her needle, mending the clothes; I wrote my journal; while Fritz and Jack taught their young brother to read and write, or amused themselves with drawing the animals or plants they had been struck with.

We now decided not to expose ourselves to another rainy season in such habitation; even my wife begged we would build a better winter-house; stipulating, however, that we should return to our tree in summer.

The last work of the winter was, at my wife's incessant request, a beetle for her flax, and some carding-combs. The beetle was easily made, but the combs cost much trouble.

CHAPTER XXIV.

The Grotto.—Herring-fishing.

I CANNOT describe our delight when we saw, at length, the sky clear. All our plantations and seeds had prospered. The corn



was springing, and the trees were covered with leaves and blossoms. We began our summer occupation by cleaning and putting in order our dormitory in the tree, which the rain and the scattered leaves had greatly deranged. We now began to strip, beat, and comb the flax, and drew out such handfuls of soft, fine flax, ready for spinning, that my wife was overjoyed, and begged me to make her a wheel, that she might commence. By dint of application I succeeded in completing these two machines. She began to spin with so much earnestness, that she would hardly take a walk, and reluctantly left her wheel to make dinner ready.

Winter had done more damage at Tent-House than at Falcon's Nest. The storm had overthrown the tent, carried away some of the sail-cloth, and injured our provisions. Fortunately our beautiful pinnace had not suffered much; but our tub-boat was entirely destroyed. Although the rocks which surrounded Tent-House presented an unbroken surface, to all appearance, so hard as to leave little hopes of success, it was necessary to try to contrive some sort of cel



lar, if only for our gunpowder. I marked out with chalk the dimension of the entrance I wished to give to the cellar; then my sons and I took our chisels, pickaxes, and heavy miner's hammers, and began boldly to hew the stone. At the end of five or six days, when the surface was removed, we found the stone easier to work; and finally, only a sort of hardened clay, which we could remove with spades. One day, while I was working at the higher part, Jack, as the least, worked below, hammering an iron bar, which he had pointed at the end, into the rock, to loosen the earth, when he suddenly cried out:

“Papa! papa! I have pierced through!”

“Not through your hand, child?” asked I.

“No, papa!” cried he; “I have pierced through the mountain! Huzza!”

Moving the bar, I felt there was really a hollow apparently very little below the level we were working on. I took a long pole, and probed the cavity, and found that it must be of considerable size. My boys wished to have the opening enlarged, and to enter, but this I forbade; for, as I leaned



forward to examine, a rush of mephitic air gave me a sort of vertigo. "Come away, children," cried I, in terror; "the air you would breathe there is certain death." I sent them to collect hay, which I lighted and threw into the cave; this was immediately extinguished. I next threw into the cave, by a cord, a quantity of rockets, grenades, &c., and scattered a train of gunpowder from them; to this I applied a long match, and we retired to a little distance. A torrent of the carbonic acid gas rushed through the opening, and was replaced by the pure air. I threw in some more lighted hay, which blazed, then I knew all danger was over, and sent Jack for candles. During his absence, Fritz and I enlarged the opening, and swept a road. We had just finished, when we heard the sound of wheels crossing the bridge, and the cart appeared, drawn by the cow and ass. Jack rode before, on his buffalo, blowing through his hand, to imitate a horn. I then proceeded into the rock; my sons followed, and their mother came last, with Francis. We had gone but a few steps, when we stopped,



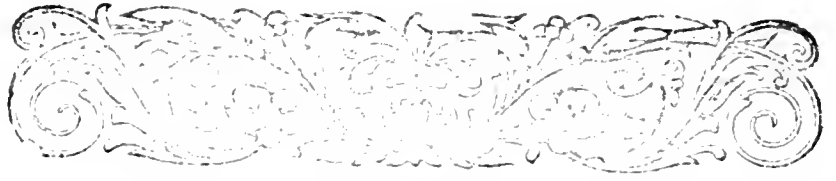
struck with admiration ; all was glittering around us ; we were in a grotto of diamonds ! From the height of the lofty vaulted roof hung innumerable crystals, which formed colonnades, altars, and every sort of gothic ornament of dazzling lustre. The grotto was spacious, the floor smooth, and covered with a fine, dry sand. On breaking off a piece, and tasting it, I found, to my great joy, that we were in a grotto of rock-salt. The acquisition of salt was almost as valuable as this brilliant retreat was in itself. Some blocks of salt were scattered on the ground, which had, apparently, fallen from the vaulted roof. I was alarmed ; for such an accident might destroy one of my children. I therefore sent out my wife and younger sons. Fritz and I remained, and, after carefully examining the suspected parts, we fired our guns, and watched the effect ; one or two pieces fell, but the rest remained firm, though we struck with long poles as high as we could reach. We were now satisfied, and began to plan converting it into a habitation.

I then laid out the grotto. On the right of the entrance was to be our dwelling ; on



the left were, first, our kitchen, then the workshop and the stables; behind these were the store-rooms and the cellar. We inserted in the rock the windows from the ship; and this cost us many days of labor. The right-hand portion was divided into three rooms: the first our own bedroom; the middle, the common sitting-room, and beyond, the boys' room. As we had only three windows, we appropriated one to each bedroom, and the third to the kitchen, contenting ourselves, at present, with a grating in the dining-room. I constructed a sort of chimney in the kitchen, through a hole made in the face of the rock. These various labors took us a great part of the summer.

Large turtles often came to deposit their eggs in the sand, and as soon as we saw one on shore, one of my sons ran to cut off its retreat. We then turned the creature on its back, and tied it firmly to a post, close to the water. When we placed it on its legs, it, of course, made for the water, but could only ramble the length of its cord. The lobsters, crabs, muscles, and every sort of fish which abound on the coast, plentifully



supplied our table. One morning a large portion of the sea appeared in a state of ebullition, with flocks of birds hovering over, uttering piercing cries, and plunging into the waves. Suddenly this extraordinary mass advanced to the bay; and as it proved to be a shoal of herrings, I at once organized my fishery. Fritz and Jack stood in the water, and filled baskets, taking them up as you would water in a pail; they threw them on the sand; my wife and Ernest cleaned them, and rubbed them with salt; I arranged them in small barrels, a layer of herrings and a layer of salt; and when the barrel was full, the ass took them up to the storehouse. This labor occupied us several days; and we had for winter use several fine casks of herrings, which I covered over with plaster-of-paris, made from gypsum found in the cave.

The refuse of this fishery, which we threw into the sea, attracted a number of seals; we killed several for the skin and oil, and we also cured some, by smoking. A month after, and another shoal arrived, composed of sturgeons, salmon trout, and many other



fishes. Jack immediately ran for his bow and arrows, and he fastened the end of a ball of string to an arrow, and, aiming at the largest salmon, shot it in the side; the fish tried to escape; I assisted him to draw the cord, and we drew him to land, and dispatched him. Fritz landed some large salmon with his harpoon; Ernest took his rod, and caught trout; and I, armed like Neptune, with an iron trident, succeeded in striking some enormous fish.

The spawn of the sturgeon, a huge mass, weighing not less than thirty pounds, I made into *caviare*, a favorite dish in Holland and Russia. I took the air-bladder and sounds of the fish, cut them in strips, and dried them in the sun. This is all that is necessary to prepare isinglass, when wanted for use; it is cut in small pieces, and dissolved over a slow fire. I hoped to make window-panes from it instead of glass.



CHAPTER XXVII.

A New Establishment.—The Cave.—Winter in the Grotto.

OUR garden produced peas, beans, lentils, and lettuces. We had delicious cucumbers and melons; the maize was already a foot high, the sugar-canes were prospering, and the pine-apples on the high ground promised us a rich treat.

At Falcon's Nest we found my wife's fields ready for cutting. There were barley, wheat, oats, beans, millet, and lentils. We cut sufficient to give us seeds for another year. The richest crop was the maize, which suited the soil. Finding the birds busy robbing our grain-fields, Fritz unhooded his eagle, and the well-trained bird immediately pounced on a superb wild goose.

We next set out to explore, and were soon struck with some bushes apparently covered with snow. Fritz galloped forward and brought a branch, which I recognized to be cotton. We soon gathered as much as



filled three bags, intending to sow seed in the neighborhood of Tent House.

After crossing the plain we reached the summit of a hill, from which the eye rested on a terrestrial paradise. Trees of every sort covered the sides of the hill, and a murmuring stream crossed the plain, adding to its beauty and fertility. The wood we had just crossed formed a shelter against the north winds, and the rich pasture offered food for our cattle. We decided, at once, that this should be the site of our farm.

We erected our tent, made a fire, and set about cooking our dinner. While this was going on, Fritz and I sought a convenient spot for our structure; and we met with a group of beautiful trees, at such a distance one from another, as to form natural pillars for our dwelling. They formed a long square; the long side facing the sea. The dimensions of the whole were about twenty-four feet by sixteen. I cut deep mortices, and set beams in the trees, about ten feet from the ground, and again ten feet higher: this was the frame of my house—solid, if not elegant; I placed over this a rude roof of



bark, cut in squares, and placed sloping, that the rain might run off. We fastened these with the thorn of the acacia. We formed the walls of thin laths, interwoven with long pliant reeds for about six feet from the ground; the rest was merely a sort of light trellis-work, to admit light and air. The door opened to the sea. One small apartment was for ourselves. On the upper story was a sort of hayloft. We had provided a shelter for our cattle and fowls. As I did not wish to return till I had completed my new establishment, I sent Fritz and Jack to look after the animals at home, and bring back a fresh stock of provisions.

During their absence, Ernest and I made a little excursion, to add some potatoes and cocoa-nuts. We ascended the stream, to a lake abounding with water-fowl. This lake was surrounded by tall, thick grass, which I found to be a sort of rice. A little, after we saw Knips collect and carry to his mouth something that seemed particularly to please his palate. We followed him, and, to our great comfort, were able to refresh ourselves with delicious strawberries. We ate plentifully



of this fruit, which was of enormous size; Ernest especially enjoyed them, but did not forget the absent; he filled Knip's little pannier with them, and I covered them with large leaves. I took, also, a specimen of rice.

We proceeded round the lake, which presented a different scene on every side. Birds of all kinds abounded; but we were particularly struck with a pair of black swans, sailing majestically on the water. Flora suddenly pounced upon a creature that was swimming quietly at the edge of the water, and brought it to us. It resembled an otter, but was web-footed, had an erect, bushy tail, like the squirrel, small head, eyes and ears almost invisible. A long, flat bill, like that of a duck, completed its strange appearance. We were completely puzzled—even Ernest could not give its name. I boldly gave it the name of the beast with a bill. I told Ernest to take it, as I wished to stuff and preserve it.

“It will be,” said he, “the first object for our museum.”

We returned by a direct road to the tent, and all sat down together to a cheerful re-



past. Ernest dwelt on his discoveries, and was very pompous in his descriptions, and I was obliged to promise to take Fritz another time. I learnt that all was going on well at Falcon's Nest. This enabled me to complete my farm-house. We remained four days longer, in which time I finished the interior, and my wife arranged in our own apartment the cotton mattresses, to be ready for our visits, and put into the houses the fodder and grain for their respective tenants. We then loaded our cart, and continued our journey till we reached Cape Disappointment. There we ascended a hill, from the summit of which we looked upon rich plains, rivers, and woods. "Here, my children," cried I, "here we will build our summer-house;" and immediately began to erect a new building, like the Farm-House, but executed more quickly. The interior was divided into eating and sleeping apartments, stables and storeroom. This new erection received the name of Prospect Hill.

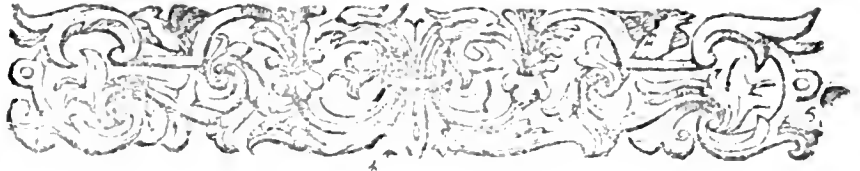
I now sought a tree likely to suit me for a boat, and soon found one. The trunk was at least five feet in diameter, and I fancied it



would answer my purpose. I traced a circle at the foot, and with a small saw cut the bark entirely through; Fritz cut a similar circle eighteen feet above mine. We then cut a slit the whole length, and, with wedges, finally succeeded in loosening the whole, and then gently let it down on the grass. I immediately began to form my boat while the bark was fresh. We began by cutting out at each end a triangular piece of about five feet long; then placing the sloping parts one over the other, I united them with pegs and strong glue, and thus finished the ends of my boat in a pointed form. I had the good fortune to meet with some very hard, crooked wood, admirably suitable for the frame work of the boat. We found, also, a sort of pitch, of which my wife and Francis collected sufficient for my work.

The next morning we returned to Tent-House, where we immediately set to work on our canoe with such diligence that it was soon completed. For distant excursions we could take the pinnace, but the canoe would be invaluable for coasting.

We had still two months before the rainy



season, and this time we devoted to our grotto. We made all the partitions of wood, except those which divided us from the stables, which we built of stone, to exclude any smell from the animals. The privations we had suffered increased the enjoyment of our present comforts. We had now a warm, well-lighted, convenient habitation, and abundance of excellent provision for ourselves and our cattle. In the morning we assembled in the dining-room to prayers. After that we went to our work-room. My wife took her wheel, or her loom, which was a rude construction of mine, but on which she had contrived to weave some useful wool, cotton and linen. Everybody worked; the workshop was never empty. I contrived, with the wheel of a gun, to arrange a sort of lathe, by means of which I and my sons produced some neat furniture and utensils. Ernest surpassed us all, and made some elegant things for his mother.

After dinner our room was lighted up; we did not spare our candles, and enjoyed the reflection in the elegant crystals. We had partitioned off a little chapel in one



corner, and nothing could be more magnificent than this chapel lighted up, with its colonnades, portico, and altar. We had divine service here every Sunday. I erected a sort of pulpit, from which I delivered a short sermon to my congregation.

Jack and Francis had flageolets of reeds, on which they acquired considerable skill. They accompanied their mother, who had a very good voice; and this music, in our lofty grotto, had a charming effect.

Though condemned, perhaps, to pass our lives alone on this unknown shore, we might yet be happy. We were placed in the midst of abundance. We were active, industrious, and content; blessed with health, and united by affection, our minds seemed to enlarge and improve every day. I humbly trusted in the Almighty, either to restore us to the world, or send some beings to join us in this beloved island, where, for two years, we had seen no traces of man. To Him we committed our fate. We were happy and tranquil, looking, with resignation, to the future.



POSTSCRIPT BY THE EDITOR.

THREE or four years after the family had been cast on this desert coast, where, as we see, they lived a happy and contented life, an English transport, the *Adventurer*, Captain Johnson, was driven by a storm upon the same shore, and, as the violence of the wind was lulled, ventured to approach. At a short distance they anchored, and sent Lieutenant Bell, in a boat, to examine the coast. Entering Safety Bay, he was astonished to see a handsome pinnace and boat at anchor; near the strand a tent; and in the rock doors and windows, like those of a European house.

They landed, and saw a middle-aged man coming to meet them. This was the good father; his family were at Falcon's Nest. He had seen the vessel in the morning, through his telescope, but, unwilling to excite vain hopes, he had not spoken of it, but came alone towards the coast.

The party were regaled with all hospitality at Tent-House; and the good Swiss gave the lieutenant this first part of his journal for the Captain. They separated, hoping to meet next day.

During the night, the *Adventurer* was driven out so far from the island, that Captain Johnson reluctantly relinquished the hope of rescuing the family.

Thus it happened that the first part of this journal was brought to England, accompanied by a letter from the captain, declaring, that he would search for the island, and either bring away the family, or, if they preferred to remain, send out colonists, and every thing necessary to promote their comfort.



CONTINUATION OF THE JOURNAL

CHAPTER XXVIII.

*The Adventurer.—My Wife's Accident.—The Storm
and its Results.*

MY interview with Lieutenant Bell lasted till noon, and I wondered at seeing nothing of my wife or sons. Hastening to the tree, I found her on her bed, apparently in great pain. I asked what had happened. I learned, that my dear wife, descending the stairs, had been seized with a giddiness, had fallen down and injured herself so much, that she was unable to raise without assistance; she now felt great pain in her right leg and in her left foot. I examined her foot first, which I found to be violently sprained. She begged me then to look at her leg, and, what was my distress, when I



saw it was fractured above the ancle. I sent Fritz, without delay, to procure me two pieces of bark, between which I placed the leg, after having, with the assistance of my son, stretched it till the two pieces of broken bone united; I then bound it with bandages of linen, and tied the pieces of bark round the leg, so that it might not be moved. I bound the sprained foot very tightly, till I could procure balsam. I felt assured, that the giddiness of the head, which had caused her fall, proceeded from a fulness of blood. I left her, with many charges, to the care of my three younger sons, and proceeded to Tent-House with Fritz, to whom I now related my morning adventure, and consulted how we should mention it to his mother. "As the vessel, evidently needed repairs," I said, "we will show the captain the large bay at the other end of the island, formed by Cape Disappointment; and when his ship is repaired, he will give us a place in it to return to Europe."

"To return to Europe, father!" cried he; "to leave our beautiful winter dwelling, Tent-House, and our charming summer resi-



dence, Falcon's Nest; so much that is our own, and which nobody covets, to return into Europe to poverty, to war. We want nothing. Dear father, can you consent to leave our blessed island?"

"You are right, my dear son," said I. "Would to God we might always remain here happily together; but we are of different ages, and, by the law of nature, we must one day be separated. Consider, my dear son, if you should survive your brothers, how cheerless it would be to live quite alone on this desert island, without any one to close your eyes."

We had now reached the grotto, and getting the necessary medicines, we gathered some oranges, lemons, and tamarinds. Then we pursued our way homewards very quickly, notwithstanding the heat, which was excessively oppressive, though the sun was hidden under clouds, which entirely concealed the sea from us. Nothing was to be seen but the waves breaking against the rocks. Fritz expressed his fears that a storm was coming on, which might prove fatal to the vessel.



The rain soon fell in torrents, and we proceeded with great difficulty. After crossing the bridge, we saw, at a distance, a very extraordinary figure approaching. As it rapidly approached us, we soon recognized the step. "It is Jack," we exclaimed; who was hurrying to meet us, with my large cloak and boots. I had neglected to take them, and my little fellow had volunteered to bring them. To protect himself, he had put the cloak on, covering his head with the hood, and my boots being too large for him, he had put one on each arm, which he held up to secure the hood. I asked how he had left his mother. "Very uneasy," said he, "about you; else I think she must be much better, for her cheeks are very red, and her eyes very bright, and she talks incessantly. She would have come herself to seek you, but could not rise; and when I told her I would come, she bid me be very quick; but when I was coming down stairs, I heard her call me back, for fear of the rain and the thunder."

Jack's account of his mother made me uneasy. I perceived that fever had set in.



Changing my dress, I hastened to her, and concluded to bleed her. I opened my case of instruments, and laying out some that were rusty, for Ernest to clean, was looking for a good lancet, when a terrific clap of thunder nearly blinded and prostrated us. On recovering, I rushed to my wife, whom I found insensible; my children gathered round, and their frantic cries rose above the noise of the elements; but she lay lifeless. Francis threw himself on her, calling her by name. Either his voice, or the cries of her elder children, restored her faculties: she gradually recovered, and called me. I found that the fever had subsided, but that she was very weak. We then prepared a cooling draught, and Fritz began to make her a chicken-broth. All were busy but Ernest, who sat still. "You sit as if the thunderbolt had struck you," said I, to rebuke him.

"It has, indeed," said he, quietly; and he showed me his right hand, most frightfully blackened and burnt.

Although he must have suffered very much, he had never uttered a complaint, for



fear of alarming his mother; and even now he made a sign to me to be silent, lest she should hear. She soon, however, fell into a sleep, which enabled me to question him about the accident. I learned that a long pointed steel instrument had attracted the lightning, which, falling partly on the hand in which he held it, had caused the misfortune. There were traces on his arm of the fire, and his hair was burnt on one side. My son assured me he had seen the fire run along the instrument, and fall perpendicularly to the earth, where it burst with a second explosion. I placed Ernest between two tubs of cold water, and, exhorting him to patience, I left him to bathe his hand, and approaching the opening, to discover what had preserved us, I found the greater part of the instruments either melted or damaged. I remarked one much longer than the rest, which projected beyond the edge of the table, and was much marked by the fire, and that the point, which was beyond the opening, touched a thick wire, which seemed to be suspended from the roof of our tent. I could not account for this wire. It seemed



to be the work of magic. But below the window I found a roll of wire, which I had brought some days before, to make a sort of grating before our poultry-yard. By what chance was it here, and hooked by one end to the roof of our house?

“Ah! father,” said Francis, seeing me so happy, “do not thank me; for I did not know that I was doing good.”

I requested my boy to tell me why and how he had fixed the wire?

“I wanted to reach some figs,” said he, “when you and Fritz were at Tent House, and Jack and Ernest were nursing mamma. I thought she would like some; but there were none in reach, and I had no stick long enough. I found that roll of wire, and tried to break a piece off, but could not. I determined to take it up, and bend one end into a hook, by which I might catch some of the branches, and bring them near. I leaned forward, and extended my hook to a branch, and pulled with all my strength, but in my efforts, struck my foot against the roll of wire, which fell down to the ground without detaching the hook.”



“A good work, indeed, my boy,” said I. “Your conductor shall remain where you have so happily placed it; we may still have need of it. The sky still looks very threatening.”

I then told my sons of Ernest’s accident. They were distressed and astonished, and wished to see their brother. Fritz then requested, in a low tone of voice, that he might go to Tent-House, to see if the vessel and the captain had arrived. Seeing his brothers listening with curiosity, I thought it best to tell them all, requesting them, however, not to name it to their mother.

Going up, we found her awake, with Ernest at her side, his hand tied up, and somewhat relieved; though, from not having applied the water immediately, there were several blisters, which he requested me to open. This I did, and applied some raw potato, an excellent remedy.

Jack and Fritz now set out for some karata-leaves to apply to it, intending, also, to see what had become of the ship. My wife and other sons soon fell asleep, and I remained on the watch. Fritz and Jack did



not return. I passed a most anxious night. Towards morning the storm ceased. I woke Ernest, dressed his hand, and sent him to look for them. He proceeded fearlessly, and was soon out of sight.

I was recalled from the window by my wife, inquiring for her sons. At that moment, the well-known voices were heard under the window.

“Father, I am bringing back my brothers,” cried Ernest.

“Yes, papa, we are all alive, and as wet as fishes,” added Jack.

“But not without having had our troubles,” said Fritz.

Jack produced his bundle of the karata-leaves. “There is enough,” said he; “I will prepare them. I have had experience, and I know the method.”

He soon divided one of the leaves with his knife, after cutting away the triangular thorn from the end, and applied it to his brother’s hand. He then threw off his clothes, and, jumping into his bed, he and his brothers were sound asleep in ten minutes.

I then sat down by my wife, and began



my tale; from my first view of the vessel, and my anxious watching for intercourse with it, in order that we might take the opportunity to return to Europe.

“I see, my dear wife,” said I, “that you, as well as the rest of my family, are contented to remain on this island, where, it seems, it is the will of God for us to dwell, as it is improbable that in such a tempest Captain Johnson would risk approaching the island, if, indeed, it has not been already fatal to him. I am impatient to learn if Fritz has any tidings of him; for he and Jack passed the night on the shore.”

“Well done, my good and courageous boys!” said their mother.

“You are more courageous than I am, my dear Elizabeth,” answered I; “I have passed the whole night mourning for my children, and you think only of the good they might have done.

When my sons awoke, I asked Fritz for an account of his journey. “We proceeded,” said he, “first to the rocks, and secured the karata-leaves, with their ugly thorns at the end. When our sack was full,



we proceeded along the rocks, towards Tent-House. From this height I tried to discover the ship, but the darkness obscured every thing. I perceived, at a great distance, a fixed light, which was neither a star nor the lightning, and which I lost sight of occasionally. At Tent-House we kindled a good fire, and dried ourselves a little. We then took the large lantern, and, filling the lamp, hoisted it on a large bamboo, at the mouth of the bay, securing the pole well with stones. After drying ourselves a little, we set out on our return, when, looking towards the sea, we were startled by the appearance of the same light we had noticed before; we heard, at the same time, the distant report of a gun, which was repeated three or four times at irregular intervals. We were persuaded that it was the vessel calling to us for aid. We entered the canoe, and, rowing into the bay, the sail was spread to the wind, and we had no more trouble. I then took the helm; my own signal-light shone clearly. When we got out of the bay, I perceived the wind was driving us towards Shark's Island, which, being di-



rectly before the bay, forms two entrances to it. We lost sight of the light, and, hearing no more signals, I began to think of your distress when we did not arrive at the hour we promised. I therefore resolved to return by the other side of the bay, carefully avoiding the current, which would have carried us into the open sea. We carefully moored the canoe, and, without returning to Tent-House, took the road home. We crossed the bridge, as Jack had done, found the waterproof cloak and bag of karata-leaves where he had left them, and soon after met Ernest. Our enterprise was imprudent; but we might have saved life, which would have been an ample remuneration.

“I hope they are far from this dangerous coast,” said I; “but if still in our neighborhood, we will do all we can to assist them. As soon as the tempest is subsided, we will take the pinnace, and sail round the island.”



CHAPTER XXIX.

Search for the Adventure.—The Franciade.—Fritzia and Jackia.—The Blacksmiths.

AFTER we had together knelt down to thank God for his merciful protection through the terrors of the past night, we prepared to set out. The waves still ran high, though the wind had subsided, and we determined merely to go along the shore, as the roads still continued impassable, from the rain; besides, our principal motive was, to search for any traces of a recent shipwreck. At first we could discover nothing, even with the telescope; but Fritz, mounting a high rock, fancied he discovered something floating towards the island. He besought me to allow him to take the canoe, which was still where he left it the preceding night. As the bridge was now easy to cross, I consented. Jack, who was much afraid of being left behind, was the first to leap in and seize an oar. There was, however, no need of it; I steered my little boat into the current, and we were soon in the



open sea, and directed our canoe towards the object we had marked, and which we still had in sight. We were afraid it was the boat upset, but it proved to be a tolerably large cask, which had probably been thrown overboard to lighten the vessel; we saw several others, but neither mast nor plank to give us any idea that the vessel and boat had perished. Fritz wished to make the circuit of the island, to assure ourselves of this, but I would not hear of it. I consented to go as far as *Cape Disappointment*. We moored our bark to a large palm-tree we found at the foot of the hill, near the shore, and set out by land to our home. Fritz said he anxiously desired to circumnavigate the island, in order to ascertain the size of it, and if there were similar chains of rocks on the opposite side. I promised him, that as soon as the stormy weather was past, and his mother well enough, we would set out on our little voyage.

He then asked to go and cut some canes, as he projected making a sort of carriage for his mother. He wished to weave of these reeds, which were very strong, a litter,



in which his mother might sit or recline, and which might be suspended between two strong bamboos, by ropes. He then purposed to yoke two of our most gentle animals, the cow and the ass, the one before, and the other behind, between these shafts, the leader to be mounted by one of the children, as director; the other would follow naturally, and his mother would thus be carried, without any danger of jolting. I was pleased with this idea, and we all set to work to load ourselves each with a huge burden of reeds. They requested me not to tell my wife, that they might give her surprise. When my wife saw the rain falling, she had instructed Francis to make a fire in our usual cooking-place. He not only kept up a good fire, to dry us on our return, but had taken the opportunity of roasting two dozen of the little birds his mother had preserved in butter, and which, all ranged on a spit, were just ready on our arrival, and the fire and feast were equally grateful to the hungry, exhausted, and wet travellers.

However, before we sat down, we went up to see our invalids, whom we found



tolerably well, though anxious for our return. After soothing her terrors, I returned to the fire to dry myself, and to enjoy my repast. Besides the birds, Francis had prepared fresh eggs and potatoes. He told me that his mamma had given up her office of cook to him.

The storm continued to rage with the same violence. Happily our tree stood firm, though several branches were broken; amongst others, that to which Francis's wire was suspended. I replaced it with more care, and fixed at the extremity the pointed instrument. In order to carry off the rain, I fixed a sort of spout. I employed those days in which I could not go out, in separating the seeds and grain we should have need, and in mending our work-tools; my sons, in the mean time, were employed in the construction of the carriage for their mother. My dear wife's foot and leg were gradually improving; and I took the opportunity of her confinement to represent to her the gloomy prospect of her sons, if they were left alone in the island. She agreed with me, but could not resolve to

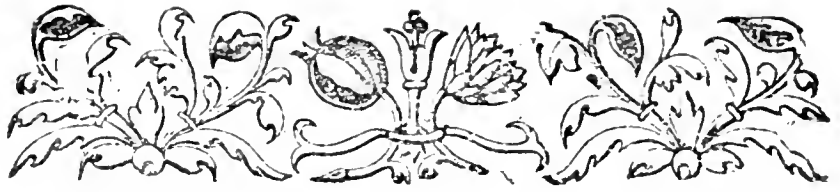


leave it; she hoped God would send some vessel to us, which might leave us some society. "And why should we anticipate evils?" said she. "Let us think only of the present. I am anxious now to know if the storm has spared my kitchen-garden."

"You must wait a little," said I. "I am as uneasy as you, for my sugar-canes, and my corn-fields."

At last, one night, the storm ceased, the clouds passed away, and the moon showed herself in all her glory. How delighted we were! a gentle breeze refreshed us, and so delighted were we, that we could scarcely go to bed, but spent half the night in projects my wife said that she could not join. Jack and Francis smiled at each other, as they thought of their litter, which was now nearly finished.

A bright sun awoke us early next morning. Fritz and Jack had requested me to allow them to finish their carriage; so, leaving Ernest with his mother, I took Francis with me to ascertain the damage done to the garden at Tent-House. Francis ran on before me; but he had a sad shock



when he got to the garden, of which we could not find the slightest trace. All was destroyed: walks, vegetable-beds, the pine-apples, melons—all had vanished.

“Oh! mamma,” said he; “what will she say when she hears of this? But she need not know it, papa,” added he, after a pause; “it would distress her too much; and if you and my brothers will help me, we will repair the damage before she can walk.” We agreed to come next day to begin, for the garden was too well situated to abandon. It was on a gentle declivity, at the foot of the rocks, which sheltered it from the north wind, and was conveniently watered from the cascade. I resolved to add a sort of bank, or terrace, to protect it from the violent rains. I proceeded to the avenue of fruit-trees that led to Tent-House, and was agreeably surprised. All were half-bowed to the ground, as well as the bamboos that supported them, but few were torn up. Francis was gathering some flowers. “It is so dreadful hot here. Oh! if we had but a little shade.”

“That is just what I was thinking of, my



son," said I; "we shall have shade enough when my trees are grown; but, in the mean time——"

"In the mean time, papa," said Francis, 'you must make a very long, broad colonnade to our house, covered with cloth, and open before, so that mamma may have air and shade at once."

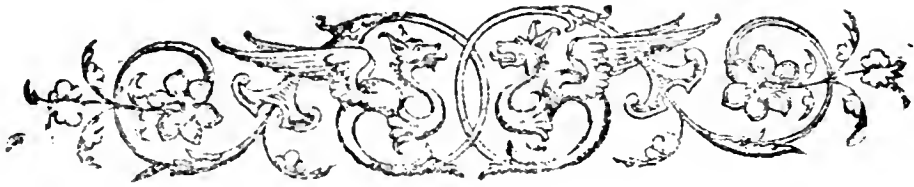
I was pleased with my son's idea, and promised him to construct a gallery soon, of bamboos, covered with sail-cloth made water-proof, and call it the *Franciade*. My boy was delighted at the suggestion, and begged me not to tell his mamma, as he wished to surprise her. As we walked along, we saw his brothers, with their new carriage; and, concluding that his mamma occupied it, Francis hastened to meet them. But on our approach, we discovered that Ernest was in the litter, drawn by the cow before, on which Fritz was mounted, and by the ass behind, with Jack on it. Ernest declared the conveyance was easy and delightful.

I put Francis into the carriage beside his brother; and, ordering Fritz and Jack to



proceed with their equipage to inspect our corn-fields, I returned to my wife. On her awaking, I told her the garden and plantations would require a few days' labor to set them in order, and I should leave Ernest, who was not yet in condition to be a laborer, to nurse her and read to her. My sons returned in the evening, and gave me a melancholy account of our wheat-fields; the wheat was completely destroyed, and we regretted this the more, as we had very little left for seed. We had anticipated a feast of *real bread*, but we were obliged to give up all hope for this year. The maize had suffered less; but Indian meal could not replace wheat-flour.

We rose early next day; and, after our usual morning duties, we left our invalids for the whole day, taking our dinner with us. We harnessed the bull and the buffalo to the cart, and I sent Fritz and Jack to the bamboos, to select some very thick ones for my colonnade, and others for props for my young trees. Francis would have preferred beginning with the *Franciade*, or the garden, but he was finally won over. He went



to cut the reeds to tie them. Suddenly, I heard him cry, "Papa, papa, here is a large chest come for us; come and take it." I ran to him, and saw it was the very chest we had seen floating, and which the waves had left in our bay, almost buried in the sand. Notwithstanding our curiosity, we were compelled to wait for the arrival of my sons. We returned to our work, and it was pretty well advanced when the tired and hungry party returned with their cartload of bamboos. We rested, and sat down to eat. Guavas and sweet acorns completed our repast. Fritz had killed a young cassowary, the first I had seen in the island. The bird is remarkable for its extraordinary size, and for its plumage, so short and fine, that it seems rather to be hair than feathers.

We talked of the chest, and our curiosity being strong, we swallowed our repast hastily, and ran to the shore. No sooner had we placed it in safety than Fritz, with a strong hatchet, forced it open, and we all eagerly crowded to see the contents. Fritz hoped it would be powder and fire-arms; Jack de



clared in favor of clothes; if Ernest had been there, books would have been his desire; for my own part, there was nothing I was more anxious for than European seeds, particularly wheat; Francis assured us that he should like a little pocket-knife, with a small saw; and he was the only one who had his wish. The chest was opened, and we saw that it was filled with a number of trifling things likely to tempt savage nations, and to become the means of exchange—principally glass and iron ware, colored beads, pins, needles, looking-glasses, children's toys, as hatchets, saws, planes, gimlets, etc.; knives, scissors, nails of every size and kind, besides iron hooks, staples, etc.; which I needed greatly. After we had examined the contents, and selected what we wanted immediately, we conveyed it to Tent-House. We had spent so much time in our examination, that we had some difficulty to finish propping our trees, and to arrive at home before it was dark. We found my wife somewhat uneasy.

“We have not come back empty-handed,” said Jack. “Look, mamma; here are a



beautiful pair of scissors, a large paper of needles, another of pins, and a thimble! How rich you are now! And when you get well, you can make me a pretty waist-coat and a pair of trousers, for I am in great want of them."

"And I, mamma," said Francis, "have brought you a mirror, that you may arrange your cap; you have often been sorry papa did not remember to bring one from the ship."

We now explained to my wife where we had found the presents. My offerings were a light axe, which she could use to cut her firewood with, and an iron kettle, smaller and more convenient than the one she had. Fritz had retired, and now came in dragging, with difficulty, his huge cassowary. "Here, mamma," said he, "I have brought you a little chicken for your dinner;" and the astonishment and laughter again commenced. The rest of the evening was spent in plucking the bird.

In the mean time, my three sons and I labored assiduously to get the garden in order again, and to raise the terraces. Fritz



had proposed to construct a stone conduit, to bring the water to our kitchen-garden from the river, to which we might carry it back, after it had passed round our vegetable-beds. This was a formidable task, but too useful to be neglected. All this, with inclosing the garden with palisades occupied us about a fortnight, in which time our invalids made great progress. After the whole was finished, Francis entreated me to begin his gallery. My boys approved my plan, and Fritz declared that the house was certainly comfortable and commodious, but that it would be wonderfully improved by a colonnade, with a little pavilion at each end, and a fountain in each pavilion. I agreed to this reasonable request, and only begged to know how they would procure water for their fountains. Fritz undertook to bring the water, if I would only assist them in completing this little scheme, to give pleasure to their beloved mother.

We took care to divert all inquiries at night, by discussing the subjects which our invalids had been reading during the day. Besides the voyages and travels, which in-



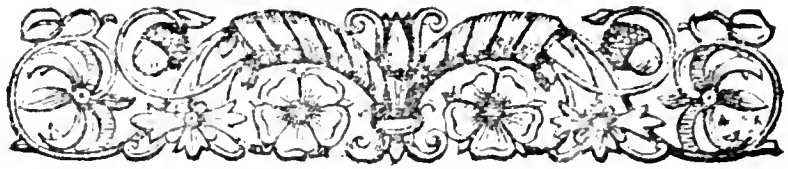
terested them greatly, there was a good collection of historians, and some of the best poets, for which Ernest had no little taste. However, he requested earnestly that he might be of our party next day, and Francis, good-naturedly, offered to stay with mamma, expecting, no doubt, Ernest's congratulations on the forward state of the *Franciade*.

As we approached Tent-House, next morning, we heard a most singular noise, echoing at intervals amongst the rocks. We soon discovered the cause; in a hollow of the rocks I saw a very hot fire, which Jack was blowing through a cane, whilst Fritz was turning, amidst the embers, a bar of iron. When it was red hot, they laid it on an anvil I had brought from the ship, and struck it alternately with hammers, to bring it to a point.

“Well done, my young smiths,” said I; “do you expect to succeed in making your auger?”

“Yes, father,” said Fritz; “we should succeed well enough if we only had a good pair of bellows.”

Now, Fritz had killed a kangaroo the



evening before; of the skin he determined to make a pair of bellows. He nailed it to two flat pieces of wood, and Jack, with his hand or foot, blew the fire, so that the iron was speedily red hot. I then showed them how to twist the iron into a screw—rather clumsy, but which would answer the purpose tolerably well. At one end they formed a ring, to enable them to turn the screw. We then made a trial of it. We placed a large pine tree on two props, and Fritz and I managed the auger so well, that we had our tree pierced through in a very little time. My young smiths next engaged in flattening the iron to make joints to unite their pipes. Leaving them to do this, I employed myself in covering my long colonnade. When my bamboo roof was solidly fixed, the canes as close as possible, I filled the interstices with a clay I found near the river, and poured gum over it; I had thus an impervious and brilliant roof, which appeared to be varnished, and striped green and brown. I then raised the floor a foot, in order that there might be no damp, and paved it with square stones. My boys



formed the pavilions very elegantly—something like a Chinese pagoda. They were exactly square, supported on four columns, and rather higher than the gallery. The roofs terminated in a point. The fountains were in the middle; the basins were formed of the shells of two turtles, from our reservoir. Ernest suggested the idea of ornamenting the end of the perpendicular pipe, which brought the water to the basin, with shells of the most brilliant colors. Ernest and Fritz often made excursions, sometimes lasting several days. Sometimes they brought a kangaroo; sometimes an agouti, the flesh of which resembles that of a rabbit, but is richer; sometimes they brought wild ducks, pigeons, and even partridges. These were contributed by Fritz, who never went out without his gun and his dogs. Ernest brought us natural curiosities, which amused us much—stones, crystals, petrifications, insects, butterflies of rare beauty, and flowers, whose colors and fragrance no one in Europe can form an idea of



CHAPTER XXX.

*The Ernestine Grotto.—The Mother's Holiday.—
Mills.—An Exploration.*

ONE day, having gone over with my younger sons to weed the garden, and survey our possessions, I perceived that the roof of the gallery wanted a little repair, and called Jack to get me the rope-ladder which I had brought from Falcon's Nest. Meanwhile, Francis and I walked into the garden, by the foot of the rocks. Since our arrival, I had been somewhat uneasy at a dull, continued noise, which appeared to proceed from this side. The forge we had passed, was extinguished, and our workmen were absent. Passing along, close to the rocks, the noise became more distinct, and I was truly alarmed. I stopped before that part of the rock where the noise was loudest; the surface was firm and level; but from time to time, blows and falling stones seemed to strike our ears. I was uncertain what to do; Jack was unwilling to go till he had discovered the cause of the phenomenon.



“For my part,” said he, “I believe it is only people come to collect the salt in the rock.”

“People!” said I; “where are the people to come from?”

At that moment, I distinctly heard human voices, speaking, laughing, and a clapping of hands. I was approaching the rock, when it appeared to me to be shaking; a stone soon fell down, then another. I seized hold of Jack, to drag him away, lest he should be crushed by the fragments of rock. At that moment another stone fell, and we saw two heads appear through the opening—the heads of Fritz and Ernest. Judge of our surprise and joy! Jack was soon through the opening, and assisting his brothers. As soon as I could, I stepped in, and found myself in a grotto, with a vaulted roof, divided by a narrow crevice, which admitted the light and air. It was, however, better lighted by two large large gourd-lamps. I saw my long ladder suspended from the opening at the top, and thus comprehended how my sons had penetrated into this recess, of which it was impossible to suspect the existence from the outside. But



how had they discovered it? and what were they making of it? These were my two questions. Ernest replied at once to the last. "I wished," said he, "to make a resting-place for mother, when she came to her garden.

"And after all," said Jack, "it will make a pretty dwelling for the first of us that marries."

"Silence, little giddy-pate," said I; "where do expect to find a wife in this island? Do you think you shall discover one among the rocks, as your brothers have discovered the grotto? But tell me, Fritz, what directed you here?"

Our good star, father," said he. "Ernest and I were walking round these rocks, and talking of his wish for a resting-place for my mother on her way to the garden. He projected a tent; but the path was too narrow to admit it; and the rock, heated by the sun, was like a stove. We were considering what we should do, when I saw on the summit of the rock a very beautiful little animal. I pursued it up the rock, and was hardly a hundred yards from it, when I was sud-



denly stopped by a crevice, which I could not cross, though the opening was not very wide. The pretty quadruped was on the rock opposite; but of what use would it have been to shoot it, when I could not secure it. I was obliged to defer it till a better opportunity offered, and turned to examine the opening, which appeared deep; still I could see that the bottom of the cavity was white. I called Ernest, and proposed to make this the retreat for mother. I told him that I believed the floor of the cave was nearly on a level with the path that led to the garden, and we had only to make an opening, and it would be exactly what we wished. Ernest was much pleased with the idea; he would not agree to my wish of beginning at the outside of the rock, as we had done in our former grotto. He had several reasons for wishing to work from within. In the first place," said he, "it will be so much cooler this summer weather; we should be soon unable to go on laboring before the burning rock; then our path is so narrow, that we should not know how to dispose of the rubbish; in the interior, it will serve us



to make a bench round the grotto ; besides, I should have such pleasure in completing it secretly, and unsuspected.

“ I immediately recollected your rope-ladder, father ; it was forty feet long, and we could easily fasten it to the point of the rock. Ernest was delighted and sanguine. We returned with all speed. We took, first, a roll of cord, and some candles ; then the rope-ladder, which we rolled up as well as we could. We first lighted some candles, which were not extinguished ; we then kindled a large heap of sticks and dried grass, which burned well, the smoke passing through the opening, like a chimney. Then we lighted the forge, and pointed some iron bars we found in the magazine ; these were to be our tools to break open the rock. We secured, also, your chisel, as well as some hammers, and all our tools were thrown down below ; we then arranged two gourds to serve us for lamps ; and when all was ready, and our ladder fixed, we descended ourselves ; and we have nothing more to tell you, except that we were very glad when we heard your voices outside, at the very



time when our work was drawing to an end. We were sure, when we distinguished your voices so clearly, that we must be near the external air; we redoubled our efforts, and here we are. Now, tell us, father, will you forgive us for making a mystery of it?"

I assured them of my forgiveness; and made Ernest happy, by declaring that it should always be called the *Grotto Ernestine*.

"Thanks to you all, my dear children," said I; "your dear mamma will now prefer Tent-House to Falcon's Nest. Fritz ascended to unfasten the ladder, and to convey it by an easier road to Tent-House; he then rejoined us, and we returned to our castle in the air, which was henceforward only to be looked on as a pleasure-house. We resolved, however, to establish here, as we had done at our farm, a colony of our cattle, which increased daily: we had now a number of young cows, which were most useful for our support.

In a few days we completed the *Grotto Ernestine*. We found a beautiful block of salt, which resembled white marble, of which Ernest formed a sort of altar, sup-



ported by four pillars, on which he placed a pretty vase of citron-wood, full of beautiful *erica*. The day for her visit to Tent-House being at last fixed, the boys all went over, the evening before, to make their preparations. Flowers were gathered to ornament the fountains, the altar, and the table, on which was placed an excellent dinner. Fritz supplied and roasted the game—a fine goose and a brace of partridges. Ernest brought pine-apples, melons, and figs; Jack supplied oysters, crabs, and turtles' eggs; Francis a dish of strawberries, honeycomb, and the cream of the cocoa-nut. I contributed a bottle of Canary wine, to drink mamma's health. All was arranged on a table in the middle of the *Franciade*.

The next morning was beautiful. My wife was anxious to set out, as she still walked feebly; she begged us to harness the cow and ass to the cart, and to lead them gently.

“I will only go a little way the first day,” said she, “for I am not strong enough to visit Tent-House yet.”

We felt convinced she wou'd change her



opinion when once in her litter. I wished to carry her down the staircase; but she descended very well, with the help of my arm. When the door was opened, and she found herself once more in the open air, surrounded by her children, she thanked God, with tears of gratitude. Then the pretty bamboo carriage arrived. They had harnessed the cow and young bull to it; Francis, answering for the docility of Valiant, provided he guided him himself. Accordingly, he was mounted before, his cane in his hand, and his bow and quiver on his back, very proud to be mamma's charioteer. My other three boys, mounted on their animals, were ready before, while I proposed to follow, and watch over the whole. My wife could not cease admiring her new carriage, which Fritz and Jack presented to her as their own work. Francis, however, boasted that he had carded the cotton for the cushion. I then lifted her in, and as soon as she was seated Ernest came to put her new bonnet on her head, which greatly delighted her; it was of fine straw, and so thick and firm as to be water-proof. She thanked all her



dear children, and felt so easy and comfortable in her new conveyance, that we arrived at Family Bridge without her feeling the east fatigue. Here we stopped.

“Would you like to cross here, my dear,” said I, “and look in at your Tent-House? And we should like to know, too, if you approve of our management of your garden?”

“As you please,” said she; “in fact, I am so comfortable in my carriage, that if it were necessary, I could make the tour of the island. I should like to see my house again, but it will be so very hot, that we must not stay.”

“But you must dine there, my dear mother,” said Fritz; “it is too late to return to Falcon’s Nest.”

“I would be very glad, indeed,” said she; “but what are we to dine on?”

“I will go and get some oysters,” said Jack; “and off he galloped on his buffalo. Fritz followed him, on some pretence, on Lightfoot. Mamma wished she had brought a vessel to carry some water from the river, for she knew we could get none at Tent-House. Francis reminded her we could

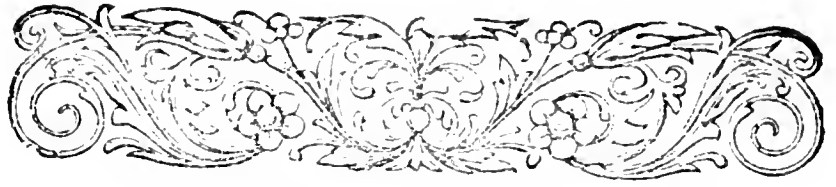


milk the cow, and she was satisfied, and enjoyed her journey much. At last we arrived below the colonnade. My wife was dumb with wonder.

“Where am I, and what do I see?” said she, when she could speak.

“You see the *Franciade*, mamma,” said her little boy; “this beautiful colonnade was my invention, to protect you from the heat; stay, read what is written above: *Francis to his dear mother. May this colonnade, which is called the Franciade, be to her a temple of happiness.* Now, mamma, lean on me, and come and see my brother’s gifts—much better than mine;” and he led her to Jack’s pavilion. Jack held a shell, filled with water, and drank “To the health of the Queen of the Island. Long live Queen Elizabeth, and may she come every day to *Jackia*, to drink her son Jack’s health.”

I supported my wife, and was almost as much affected as herself. She wept and trembled with joy and surprise. Jack and Ernest then joined their hands, and carried her to the other pavilion, where Fritz was



waiting to receive her, and the same scene ensued. She then drank some of the water of the fountain, and returned to seat herself at the repast, which was another surprise for her. We all made an excellent dinner; and at the desert, I handed my Canary wine round in shells; and then Ernest sung us some verses he had composed. None of us thought of the ship, of Europe, or of any thing that was passing in the world. The island was our universe, and Tent-House was a palace we would not have exchanged for any the world contained. This was one of those happy days that God grants us sometimes on earth, to give us an idea of the bliss of Heaven; and most fervently did we thank Him, at the end of our repast, for all his mercies and blessings to us.

After dinner, I told my wife she must not think of returning to Falcon's Nest, with all its risks of storms, and the winding staircase; and we agreed that this very evening she should take possession of her own pretty room, with the good felt carpet, on which she could walk without fear; and that the next day, I should go with my elder sons,



and the animals to bring the cart, utensils, and the poultry. I then prevailed on my wife to go into her room and rest for an hour, after which we were to visit the garden. She complied, and after her repose found her four sons ready to carry her in her litter, as in a sedan-chair. They took care to bring her straight to the grotto, where I was waiting for her. This was a new surprise for the good mother. She could not sufficiently express her astonishment and delight.

Ernest then conducted his mother to one of the benches, which he had covered with soft moss, as a seat for her, and there she rested at her ease to hear the history of the discovery of the grotto. It was now my turn to offer my present; the garden, the embankment, the pond, and the arbor. She walked, supported by my arm, to view her little empire, and her delight was extreme. After expressing her grateful feelings, she returned to the grotto, and seating herself in her sedan-chair, returned to Tent-House, to enjoy repose, after such a day of excitement.

“If I had been in Europe,” said my wife,



“on the festival of my recovery, I should have received a nosegay, a ribbon, or some trinket; here I have had a carriage, a colonnade, pavilions, ornamental fountains, a large grotto, a garden, a pond, an arbor, and a straw bonnet!”

The following days were spent in removing our furniture and property. We constructed a poultry-yard, at a sufficient distance from our house, as a continuation of the colonnade, and on the same plan, closed in front by a sort of wire trellis-work.

“What a difference,” said my wife, admiring the elegance of our buildings—“what a difference between this Tent-House and the dwelling which was our only shelter four years ago. What progress luxury has made with us in that time! Do you remember, my dear, the barrel which served us for a table, and the oyster-shells for spoons, the tent where we slept, crowded together on dried leaves, and without undressing, and the river half a mile off, where we were obliged to go to drink if we were thirsty! Compared to what we were then, we are now mighty *nobles*.”



“Kings, you mean, mamma,” said Jack, “for all this island is ours, and it is quite like a kingdom.”

“And how many millions of subjects does Prince Jack reckon in the kingdom of his august father?” said I.

Prince Jack declared he had not yet counted the parrots, kangaroos, agoutis, and monkeys.

“But, mamma,” said Fritz, on her opposing any more laborious undertakings, “you must let me make a mill under the cascade; it will be so useful when our wheat grows, and even now for the maize. I also think of making an oven in the kitchen, which will be very useful for you to bake your bread in.”

“These would indeed be useful labors,” said the good mother, smiling.

Not to lose any time, and to profit by this rainy day, he began by making sieves of different materials, which he fastened to a circle of pliant wood, and tried by passing through them the flour of the cassava; he made some with sail-cloth, others with the hair of the onager, which is very long and



strong, and some of the fibres of bark. His mother admired his work, which he continued to improve more and more; she assured him the sieve would be sufficient for her; it was useless to have the trouble of building a mill.

“You remind me,” said I, “that we brought from the vessel a hand-mill and a saw-mill, taken to pieces, to be sure, but numbered and labelled, so that they could be easily united; they must be in the magazine.”

The boys at once started to get them, and soon returned from the magazine loaded with work-tools. Those of the masons—the chisel, the short hammer, and the trowel, were not to be found; but they had collected a great number of saws, planes, rules, etc. And now that Fritz was a smith, he had no difficulty in making any tool he wanted. In each hand he brought a specimen of gun-powder; one sort was in good condition, and they had found a barrel of it; the other was much damaged by the water. Jack and Francis were also bending under the weight of various articles; among which I saw some



pieces of the hand-mill Fritz wished to examine. Ernest, always rather idle, came proudly on, with a leather belt across his shoulders, to which was suspended a large tin box for plants, and a leather portmanteau for stones, minerals, and shells. His brothers, even Francis, rallied him unmercifully on his immense burden; one offered to help him, another to go and bring the ass. Jack ran out; we soon saw him return with a huge screw-machine, which he placed before Ernest, saying, with an air of respect:

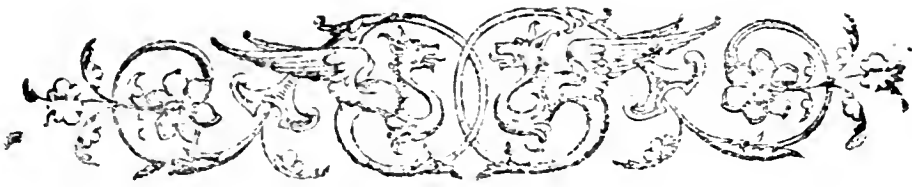
“I have the honor to bring for his Highness the Prince of the Idle Penguins, the press for his august plants, which his Highness doubtless found too heavy; and, truly, it is no little weight.”

Ernest did not know whether to thank him or be angry, but he decided to join in the jest, and, therefore, answered gravely “that he was distressed that his Highness the Prince of the Monkeys should have taken so much trouble to oblige him, that he ought to have employed some of his docile subjects to do it; after all, he confessed that the press, which he had not noticed, gave him



great pleasure," and he placed some plants in it immediately, which he had collected.

The rain ceasing for a short time, I went with Fritz and Jack to examine our embankment. We found it all right, and our garden looking beautiful after the rain. The Grotto *Ernestine* we found inundated from the opening. We proposed to make a trench, or little channel, to carry off the water. The rain continued some days, and the country was again a complete lake; we had, however, no storm or wind, and our possessions did not suffer. My wife was delighted to be in her comfortable abode, and to have us round her. Ernest finished the arrangement of his collection with his mother and Francis. Fritz and Jack, after setting up the hand-mill, prepared the tools to erect a saw-mill. A very large saw, which they had found amongst the tools, would serve their purpose. Fritz made several models of a water-wheel from the thin wood of our chests, and the wheels of our guns, but they were too small. In the mean time, his mind was exercised, his ideas enlarged and improved; and, as this science



was so necessary in our situation, I allowed him to go on with his experiments. Notwithstanding the rain, he went several times to look out for a place where his mills would have water. Ernest assisted him by his advice, Jack and Francis were helping their mother to card cotton, to spin for clothing, and I exercised my mechanical talents in turning a large wheel, which should revolve easily, her leg being still stiff; and a reel, by which four bobbins were filled at once.

These different occupations aided us to pass the rainy season, which visited us earlier this year, and did not remain so long. My wife knew something of dyeing; and she succeeded, with Ernest's help, in obtaining a very pretty blue to dye our clothes, and, also, a beautiful reddish brown, with which she had dyed herself a dress.

Ernest read to us from some amusing or instructive work every evening, and, when his collections were all put in order, he worked at his lathe, or at weaving.

When clear weather came at last, it was a question between Fritz and Jack, whether we should make the tour of the island by



sea or by land, and each was anxious for my support.

“After hearing all your arguments,” said I, “attend to mine; even Jack must yield to them. Our principal aim now being to search for the trees we are in need of, and to examine the productions of the island, our most sensible plan will be to walk.”

When clear weather came, we set out to explore the opposite sides of the island. I thought there might be a small space on the strand, between the rocks and the sea, round which we could pass; from my sons being able to distinguish from the summit the country on the other side, it was evident the chain of rocks could not be very broad.

“Why did we not,” said Fritz, “when we were working within our grotto, attempt to make the opening on the other side? If our tools had not been sufficient, a little powder would have made an opening.”

I proposed that we should defer our work till we had examined the nature of the ground on the other side; my sons agreed, and we proceeded with renewed courage when we were suddenly checked by the



sight of the sea beating against a perpendicular rock of terrific height, which terminated our island on this side. I saw the rock did not extend far; but how to get round it, I could not devise.

With some difficulty we arranged our encumbrances, and succeeded in reaching a range of outer rocks, without swimming, as the water was not above our shoulders. We rested here awhile, and, putting on some of our clothes, we commenced our walk over sharp stones, which wounded our feet. In many places, where the rocks lay low, we were up to the waist in the water. Happily, our march was not half a mile, and we gained the shore at last without any serious accident, but fatigued and foot-sore, and fully resolved never more to cross the coral reefs.

After dressing, resting, and taking a slight refreshment on the beach, we resumed our march more at our ease into the interior.

Fritz, with his head raised, went on examining the trees, keeping a lookout for his gazelle. Ernest examined plants and insects, and was filling his bag and plant-box



with various curiosities. Jack, lasso in hand, prepared to capture the first buffalo he met, and was vexed that he did not see any. I was surveying the chain of rocks which contained the grotto *Ernestine*. It was easy to recognize that rock by its summit cleft in two; and I wished to ascertain, as nearly as possible, if the cleft extended to the base of the rock, as this would render our work much easier. This side of the island did not resemble that near the Great Bay, with which Jack and I had been so much charmed. We were journeying through a valley, lying between the rocky wall which divided the island, and a chain of sandy hills, which hid the sea and sheltered the valley from the wind. Fritz and I ascended one of these hills, and perceived beyond a barren tract, stretching to the sea, where the coral reefs appeared to extend far into the sea. Any one sailing along the shore would pronounce the island inaccessible and entirely barren.

Fritz went to examine the trees, several of which were new to us. At last he came running out of breath, crying out, "The



bread-fruit tree! I have found the bread-fruit tree! Here is the fruit—excellent, delicious bread. Taste it, father; here, Ernest; here, Jack;” and he gave us each a part of an oval fruit, about the size of a melon, which really seemed very good.

“There are many of these trees,” continued he, “loaded with fruit. Would that we had our grotto opened, that we might collect a store of them, now that they are ripe.”

My boys pointed out to me exactly the situation of the grotto, judging from the rock above, and longed for their tools, that they might commence the opening directly. We proceeded to make our way through a border of trees and bushes, that separated us from the rock, that we might examine it, and judge of the difficulties of our undertaking. Jack preceded us, as usual, after giving Ernest his gun, and soon perceived a cave in the rock, but in a moment he ran back, crying: “Help! help!” We rushed forward, our guns ready, and saw at the entrance of the cave two large brown bears. He related to us, “that having entered the



cave, he saw two large bears coming towards him; he had barely time to call for help and hide behind a tree. As soon as we could cover them with our guns, we fired, and one fell dead; the other crawled into the cave. We approached, and with another volley finished it. We then took a lighted branch, and approached with great precaution. The cave did not extend far; the animal was lying on a heap of dried leaves, prepared for its young ones. I ascertained that it was really dead. I then, with the assistance of my sons, drew it out of the cave, which was too dark for work, and secured the rich and beautiful skins, which might be useful to us in winter.

The valley now began to expand, and presented a more varied appearance. It was intersected with beautiful plains or savannahs, of which the grass had evidently been eaten, and with more extensive woods, through which we had great difficulty in forcing a passage. Besides the fatigue of our journey, we were tormented with thirst, never having seen any water since we left the sea, when, to our great satisfaction, we



heard the murmur of waters, which I concluded was the river Jack and I had seen in our former expedition. It issued forth in its full width, rolling at first over a rocky bed; then forming a graceful bend, it took its course towards the great bay, and fell in a cascade into the sea. We remained some time here to fill our gourds, drinking moderately, and taking a bath, which refreshed us all greatly.

We followed the course of the river, on the opposite shore of which rose a wide plain, where we saw the herd of buffaloes quietly grazing, ruminating, and drinking, without paying the slightest attention to us. We thought we distinguished some other quadrupeds amongst them, which Fritz was certain were zebras or onagers; but certainly not his dear gazelle, for which he had incessantly looked round. Jack was in despair that the river separated us from the buffaloes, so that he could not cast his lasso round the legs of one of them, as he had promised Ernest. He even wished to swim across the stream, to have a hunt, but I forbade him. We were obliged to spend the night in the



open air. Fortunately, Fritz had collected a store of bread-fruit. These, with juicy steaks from our bears, formed our supper. We turned back a little way, to establish ourselves under a clump of trees, where we were in greater safety; we loaded our muskets, we kindled a large fire of dry branches, and recommending ourselves to the protection of God, we lay down on the soft moss. Fritz and I conversed on tunnelling the grotto, and the utility of such a passage as this side of the island was quite lost to us, from the difficulty in reaching it. "And yet," said I, "it is to this difficulty we owe the safety we have enjoyed. Who can say that the bears and buffaloes may not find the way through the grotto? I confess I am not desirous of their visits, nor even of those of the onagers. We have been very happy on our side of the island, without the productions of this. My dear boy, there is a proverb, 'Let *well* alone.'"

Fritz suggested strong bars of iron to place before the opening, which could be removed at will.

"But," said I, "they will not prevent the

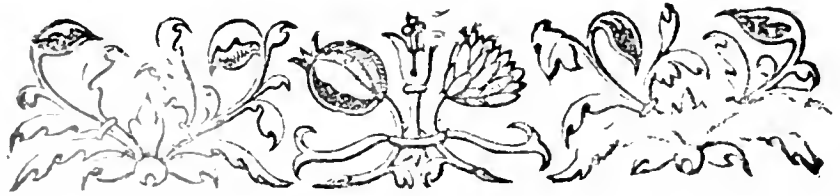


snakes passing. I have noticed some with terror, as they are animals I have a great antipathy to; and if your mother saw one crawl into her grotto, she would never enter it again, even if she did not die of fright."

"Well, we must give it up," said Fritz, "but it is a pity."

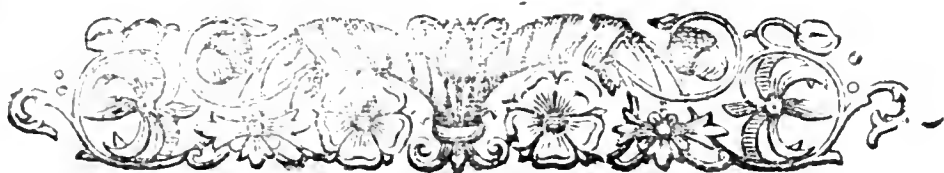
In the morning we returned to the pass, which now, by the light of day, seemed to us in a more hopeless state than in the dusk of evening. I was struck with consternation; it appeared to me that we were entirely enclosed at this side; and I shuddered to think of crossing the island again, to pass round at the other end, of the risk we should run of meeting wild beasts, and of the painful and perilous passage along the coral reefs. We therefore crossed the ridge of rocks with no little difficulty and danger, and at last came in sight of the place where we kept our canoe.

I was very glad to have the opportunity of conveying it back to the port of Tent-House. I had tied it firmly to one of the palms, that I had felt secure of it being there. We arrived at the place, and no



canoe was there! The mark of the cord which fastened it was still to be seen round the tree, but the canoe had disappeared. Struck with astonishment, we looked at each other with terror, unable to articulate a word. What was become of it?

Savages, evidently, had landed on our island, and carried off our canoe. We could no longer doubt it when we discovered on the sands the print of naked feet! It is easy to believe how uneasy and agitated I was. I hastened to Tent-House, from which we were now more than nine miles distant. I forbade my sons to mention our suspicions to their mother, as I knew it would rob her of all peace of mind. It was possible that chance had conducted them to the bay, and that, satisfied with their prize, they might not return. There was no trace of their proceedings further than the shore. We called at *The Farm*, on purpose to examine. All appeared in order; and, certainly, if they had reached here, there was much to tempt them: our cotton mattresses, our osier seats, and some household utensils that my wife had left here. Our geese and



fowls did not appear to have been alarmed, but were pecking about as usual for worms and insects. I began to hope that we might get off with the loss of our canoe. We were a sufficient number, being well armed, not to be afraid of a few savages, even if they penetrated further into the island, and showed hostile intentions. I recommended my sons to select from the chest some articles likely to please savages, and to carry them always about with them. "And I beseech you, once more," added I, "not to alarm your mother." We continued our road unmolested to Falcon's Nest. Jack preceded us, delighted, he said, to see our castle again, which he hoped the savages had not carried away. Suddenly, we saw him return, running, with terror painted on his countenance.

"There they are!" said he; "they have taken possession of it; our dwelling is full of them."

I was much agitated; but, not wishing to expose my children to danger before I had done all in my power to prevent it, I ordered them to remain behind till I called



them. I broke a branch from a tree hastily, which I held in one hand, and in the other some long nails, which I found by chance in the bottom of my pocket, and I advanced thus to my Tree-Castle. I had placed planks before the great opening; they were no longer there, and I heard such a noise in our house, that I could not doubt Jack's report. I advanced timidly, holding up in the air the branch and my offerings, when I discovered, all at once, that I was offering them to a troop of monkeys, lodged in the fortress, which they were amusing themselves by destroying. After dislodging them with a few shots, and making all secure, we pushed on to the Tent-House.

CHAPTER XXXI.

The Mother lost and found—The Savages and their Missionary—Madam Hirtel and her interesting family.

WE soon arrived at Family Bridge, where I had some hopes of meeting Francis, and



perhaps his mother, who was beginning to walk very well ; but I was disappointed ; they were not there. I expected, however, to find them in the colonnade—they were not there. I hastily entered the house ; I called aloud, “ Elizabeth ! Francis ! where are you ? ” No one answered. A mortal terror seized me—and for a moment I could not move.

“ They will be in the grotto,” said Ernest.

“ Or in the garden,” said Fritz.

“ Perhaps on the shore,” cried Jack.

These were possibilities. My sons flew in all directions in search of their mother and brother. I found it impossible to move, and was obliged to sit down. I trembled, and my heart beat till I could scarcely breathe. I was overwhelmed with a sad presentiment of the misfortune which impended over me. It was but too soon realized. My sons returned in fear and consternation.

Jack returned the last, and in the most frightful state ; he had been at the sea-shore, and, throwing himself into my arms, he sobbed out :

“ The savages have been here, and carried away my mother and Francis ; perhaps they



have devoured them; I have seen the marks of their feet on the sands, and the print of Francis's boots."

This account at once recalled me to strength and action.

"Let us fly to save them. God will pity our sorrow, and assist us. He will restore them. Come, come!"

They were ready in a moment. Jack, in his distress, had never thought of looking whether the pinnacle was still there; but the instant I named it, Fritz and he ran to ascertain.

A ray of hope seemed to visit my mind when I heard my boys cry out: "The pinnacle is here! they have not carried that away!"

I fervently thanked God—it was a kind of miracle; for this pretty vessel was more tempting than the canoe.

Before starting we made certain that they were not still on the island; and in my examination of the shore, I discovered a piece torn from an apron my wife wore, made of her own cotton, and dyed red. The first thing I thought of was the wrecked chest,



which would furnish me with means to conciliate the savages, and to ransom my loved ones. I added to it every thing likely to tempt them : utensils, stuffs, trinkets ; I even took with me gold and silver coin, which was thrown on one side as useless, but might be of service to us on this occasion. I took, in bags and gourds cassava-bread, manioc-roots, and potatoes ; a barrel of salt-fish, two bottles. of rum, and several jars of fresh water. We took, also, oil, candles, fuel, and a large iron pot to cook our provisions in. For our defence, I took two more guns, and a small barrel of powder, all we had left. I added, besides, some changes of linen, not forgetting some for my dear wife, which I hoped might be needed.

After asking God's assistance, we rowed out of the creek, and when we were in the bay, we held a council to consider on which side we were to commence our search. I thought of returning to the great bay, from whence our canoe had been taken ; my sons, on the contrary, thought that these islanders, coasting along the island, had seen their mother and brother, and carried them off.



At the most, they could but be a day before us ; but that was long enough to fill us with dreadful anticipations. Abandoning ourselves, in full confidence, to Almighty God, we spread our sails, and were soon in the open sea.

After two days' sail, we saw, in the distance, an island, to which we turned ; but, suddenly, such a thick fog arose, that it hid every object from us, even the sea itself, and we seemed to be sailing among the clouds. I thought it prudent to drop our anchor. It finally changed into a heavy rain, which we could with difficulty protect ourselves from ; there was, however, a half-deck to the pinnace, under which we crept. Day breaking, we decided to weigh anchor, and endeavor to reach the island, which we now distinctly saw, and which seemed uncultivated and rocky. I resumed my place at the helm, my sons took the oars, and we advanced cautiously, and looking for any canoe of the savages ; but we were not fortunate enough to discover any trace of our beloved ones, nor any symptom of the isle being inhabited. At last we found a small bay,



deep enough for our pinnace to enter. We rowed in, and began to consider the means of exploring the island.

I advised that two should remain to watch the coast, while the other two penetrated into the interior. The first thing necessary to ascertain was, if the island was inhabited, which might easily be done, by climbing some tree that overlooked the country. If the island was uninhabited, we were to search elsewhere. Ernest agreed to remain with me, and watch. Fritz and Jack, as the most active, were to visit the interior of the island, and to return with information as soon as possible. I gave them a game-bag filled with toys, trinkets, and pieces of money, to please the savages; I also made them take some food. Fritz took his gun, after promising me he would not fire it, except to defend his life, lest he should alarm the savages, and induce them to remove their captives. Jack took his lasso, and they set out with our benedictions, accompanied by the brave Turk.

As soon as they were out of sight, Ernest and I set to work to conceal our pinnace.



We lowered the masts, and hid the chest under the deck. We got our pinnace, with great difficulty, the water being low, behind a rock, which completely concealed it on the land-side, but it was still visible from the sea. Ernest suggested that we should entirely cover it with branches of trees, so that it might appear like a heap of bushes; and we began to cut them immediately.

I was strolling inward, to see whether Fritz or Jack was in sight, when I was suddenly recalled by a cry from Ernest—

“Father, a canoe! a canoe!”

“Rushing to the shore, I saw beyond the reefs a canoe, floating lightly, apparently filled with the islanders. This canoe did not resemble ours; it was longer, narrower, and seemed to be composed of long strips of bark, quite rough, tied together at each end. It was provided with out-riggers, and six savages, with a sort of oars, made it fly like the wind. When it passed, we hailed it; the savages answered by frightful cries, but showed no intention of approaching us or entering the bay; on the contrary, they went on with great rapidity, continuing their cries.



Either my fancy deceived me, or I faintly distinguished a form of fairer complexion than the savages. Ernest, more active than I, had climbed a sand-bank, and, with his telescope, had watched it round a point of land, and then came down almost as much agitated as myself. I ran to him, and said :

“ Ernest, was it your mother ? ”

“ No, papa ; I am certain it was not my mother,” said he. “ Neither was it Francis.”

“ But a thought strikes me : let us free the pinnace, and sail after the canoe. We can go quicker than they, with the sail ; we shall overtake them behind the cape, and then we shall, at least, be satisfied.”

I hesitated, lest my sons should come back ; but Ernest represented to me that we were *only* fulfilling the wishes of Fritz.

As on the whole his advice seemed reasonable, and as he urged it strangely, I consented. We set about removing the bushes and getting the pinnace ready to sail. It did not take us long, although we had spent hours in preparing it to elude discovery.

While at work, I saw a figure running up



in the twilight. I took it to be a savage, but, as the dark naked figure approached, conceive my surprise, when I heard him cry, in my own language :

“Don’t be alarmed, father, it is I, your son Fritz.”

“Is it possible?” said I. “Can I believe it? and Jack? What have you done with my Jack? Where is he? Speak”

Ernest did not ask. Alas! he knew too well; he had seen, with his telescope, that it was his dear brother Jack that was in the canoe with the savages; but he had not dared to tell me. I was in agony. Fritz, harassed with fatigue, and overwhelmed with grief, sunk down on the ground.

“Oh, father!” said he, sobbing, “I dread to appear before you without my brother! I have lost him. Can you ever forgive your unfortunate Fritz?”

“Oh yes, yes; we are all equally unfortunate.”

He assured me that he was not killed, but carried off by the savages; still he hoped he was safe. Ernest then told me he had seen him seated in the canoe, apparently



without clothes, but not stained black, as Fritz was.

“I am truly thankful to God that you have seen him, Ernest. Which way have the monsters gone?”

Ernest pointed out the cape, and Fritz was anxious to embark without delay.

“And have you learned nothing of mother and Francis?” said I.

“Alas! nothing,” said he; “though I think I recognized a handkerchief belonging to dear mamma, on the head of a savage. I will tell you all my adventure as we go.”

The wind was favorable for carrying us towards the cape the savages had doubled; we hoisted our sail; I took my place at the helm; the sea was calm, and the moon lighted our way. After recommending ourselves to the protection of God, I desired Fritz to commence his melancholy recital.

“We advanced,” said he, “quite a distance into the island, finding no dwellings, but many traces of the savages. Jack, with his usual rashness, climbed to the summit of one of the tallest trees, and suddenly cried out, ‘Fritz, the savages are landing. Oh!



what black, ugly creatures they are, and nearly naked! You ought to dress like them, to make friends with them. You can stain your skin with these,' throwing me down branches of a sort of fruit of a dark purple color. 'They have stained my fingers black; rub yourself well with the juice of this fruit, and you will be a perfect savage.'

“He descended from the tree while I undressed, and with his assistance I stained myself from head to foot, as you see me. Jack then helped to dress me in a sort of tunic made of large leaves. We went forward, Jack following me with my bundle of clothes under his arm. I had slung my kangaroo-skin bag of powder and provision on my shoulders, and I was glad to see that most of the savages wore the skin of that animal, for the most part spread out like a mantle over their shoulders; few of them had other clothes, excepting one, who appeared to be the chief, and had a tunic of green rushes, neatly woven. They paid me great attention, evidently taking me for a savage; only one of them wished to seize my



gun ; but I held it firmly, and on the chief speaking a word to him, he drew back. They spoke very rapidly, and I saw by their looks they spoke about us ; they looked incessantly at Jack, repeating, ‘ *To maiti tata.* I had observed a handkerchief twisted round the head of him who seemed the chief, that reminded me much of the one mother usually wore. I approached him, and touched the handkerchief. The chief thought I wished to rob him of his handkerchief, and repelled me roughly. I then wished to retire, and I told Jack to follow me ; but four islanders seized him. In an instant he was stripped, and his clothes and mine were put on by the savages. Jack began to dance, calling on me to do the same, and repeated, ‘ Make your escape, Fritz, while I am amusing them ; I will then run off and join you very soon.’ I recollected at that moment the bag you had given me ; we had thoughtlessly left it under the great tree. I told Jack I would fetch it if he could amuse the savages till I returned, which he might be certain would be very soon. I ran off with all speed, and what was my surprise to find our two faith



ful dogs, Turk and Flora, sitting over my bag."

"The meeting between Flora and me was truly joyful, for I was now convinced that mother and Francis were not far off.

"Taking up my bag, I ran off at full speed to the spot where my dear Jack was. As I approached, I heard cries for help; I flew till I reached the spot, and then I saw his hands were fastened behind his back, his legs tied together, and six men carrying him towards their canoe, while he was crying out, 'Fritz, Fritz, where are you?' I threw myself desperately on the men. In the struggle, my gun accidentally went off, and—O, father, it was Jack that I wounded! I cannot tell how I survived the cry of 'You have killed me!' And when I saw his blood flow, my senses forsook me, and I fainted. When I recovered, I was alone; they had carried him off. I rose, and following the traces of his blood, arrived, fortunately, at the shore just as they were embarking. God permitted me to see him again, supported by one of the savages, and even to hear his voice cry, 'Fritz, I am not dead; I am only



wounded in the shoulder; it is not your fault; go to papa, and you will both'—the canoe sailed away so swiftly, that I heard no more; but I understood the rest—'*you will both come and rescue me.*' But will there be time? Oh! father, what have I done!"

Overwhelmed with grief, I could only assure him I could not possibly blame him.

The shores of the strait we were navigating were very steep, and we had yet not met with any place where we could land; As the strait was narrow and shallow, I consented that Fritz should swim to reconnoitre a place which seemed to be an opening in the rocks, and we soon had the pleasure of seeing him on the shore, motioning for us to approach. Ernest and I stepped into the water up to the waist; and when we were aided by the vigorous arm of Fritz, we soon drew the pinnace near enough to fix it by means of the anchor.

There were neither trees nor rocks to which we could fasten the pinnace; but, to our great delight, we found, a short distance from our landing-place, a bark canoe, which



my sons were certain was that in which Jack had been carried off. Ernest discovered in the canoe part of a handkerchief, stained with blood, which he recognized as Jack's. This relieved our doubts, and caused Fritz to shed tears of joy. We resolved to continue our search into the interior. We could not find any traces of Jack's foot, which would have alarmed us, if Fritz had not suggested that they had carried him, on account of his wound. We were about to set out, when the thoughts of the pinnace came over us; it was more than ever necessary for us to preserve this, our only means of return, and which, moreover, contained our goods for ransom, our ammunition, and our provisions, still untouched, for some bread-fruit Fritz had gathered, with muscles and oysters, had been sufficient. It was fortunate that we had brought some gourds of water with us, for we had not met with any.

“The pinnace must not remain here unguarded, father,” Ernest said, “to be taken, or, at any rate, pillaged by the natives, who will return for their canoe. Either we must



all wait till they come, or you must leave me here to defend it. I see, Fritz, that you could not endure to remain here.”

This was so, and I decided to leave Ernest alone to protect the vessel. His calm and cool manner made it less dangerous for him to meet the natives. He promised me to be prudent, which his elder brother could not be. We took the bag of toys which Fritz had brought, and left those in the chest, to use if necessary.

After having traversed a sandy plain without meeting a living creature, we arrived at a thick wood, where we lost the traces we had carefully followed. We were obliged to direct our course by chance. We at last reached an arid plain extending to the shore. We again discovered numerous footsteps; and, whilst we were observing them, we saw a large canoe pass rapidly, filled with islanders; and this time I thought that, in spite of the distance, I could recognize our canoe. Fritz wished to swim after them, but I stopped him. I even proposed that we should return to Ernest, as I was of opinion that the savages would stop at the place



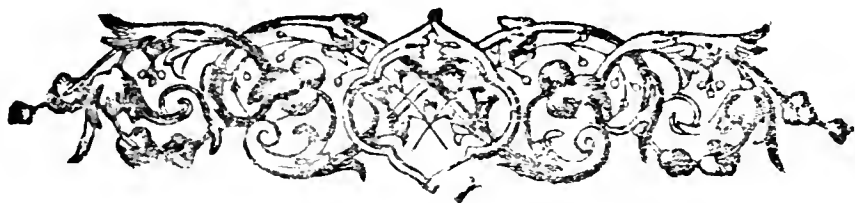
where we had disembarked, to take away the boat they had left, and we might then learn from them what had become of my wife and children. We were endeavoring to retrace our road, when, to our great astonishment, we saw, at a few yards' distance, a man clothed in a long black robe advancing towards us, whom we immediately recognized as a European.

“Either I am greatly deceived,” said I, “or this is a missionary, come into these remote regions to make Him known to the wretched idolators.”

I was not wrong; and met with joy one of my Christian brethren. Unable to speak, I silently embraced him. He addressed me in English, and his words fell on my soul like the message of an angel.

“Thank heaven I have met with you. This youth is Fritz, your eldest son, I conclude; but where have you left your second son, Ernest?”

“Reverend sir,” cried Fritz, “you have seen my brother Jack. Perhaps my mother? You know where they are. Oh! are they living?”



“Yes, they are living, and well taken care of,” said he; “I will lead you to them.”

I was so overcome with joy, that I should have fainted, but, supported by my son, I managed to walk. My first words were a thanksgiving to God for his mercy. My good friend assured me that an hour’s walk would bring me to my wife and sons.

I then told him where we had left Ernest.

“God orders all for the best,” said I to the good priest; “but for the road we took, we might not have met with you; we should have been without Ernest; you might have sought us all day in vain.

“But first,” interrupted Fritz, “pray tell me how Jack is?”

“The wound, which he confesses he owes to his own imprudence, will have no evil consequences; the savages had applied some healing herbs to it, but it was necessary to extract a ball, which I did. Since then he suffers less; and will be soon well, when his anxiety about you is relieved.”

“Did brother talk to you of us, sir?”

“He did,” answered his friend; “but I was acquainted with you before; your



mother talked continually of her husband and children. What mingled pain and delight she felt last night when the savages brought to her Jack, wounded! I was fortunately in the hut to comfort her."

"And Francis," said I, "how rejoiced he would be to see his brother again!"

"Francis," said the missionary, smiling, "will be the protector of you all."

We at last reached the wood. I was very anxious to know how my wife and Francis had been brought to this island, and how they met with the missionary. The five or six days we had been separated seemed to me five or six months. We walked too quickly for me to get much information.

"Thank God," said he, "I have already succeeded in giving this people some notions of humanity. After Francis was taken his playing and manners have so captivated them that the king is anxious to adopt him. But I hope to arrange all happily. A year ago, I could not have answered for the life of the prisoners; now I believe them to be in safety."

We were approaching the arm of the sea



where we had left our pinnace, and my heart, at ease about the rest, became now anxious solely for Ernest. Fritz, eager to join his brother, ran on.

As we reached the shore, I perceived my two sons on the deck of the pinnace, which was covered with the islanders, to whom they were distributing the treasures of the bag. At every new acquisition, the savages uttered cries of joy. The mirrors were at first received with the most delight, but this soon changed into terror, and they flung them into the sea. The colored glass beads had then the preference. When the voice of the missionary was heard, all left the pinnace, and crowded round him; he harangued them in their own language, and pointed me out to them. Some approached me, and rubbed their noses against mine, as a mark of respect. In the mean time, Ernest, learning that his mother and brother were safe, leaped from the pinnace and came to thank the missionary.

The pinnace was then loosened, the sails set, and we entered with thankfulness. Dreading the agitation of my wife if she saw



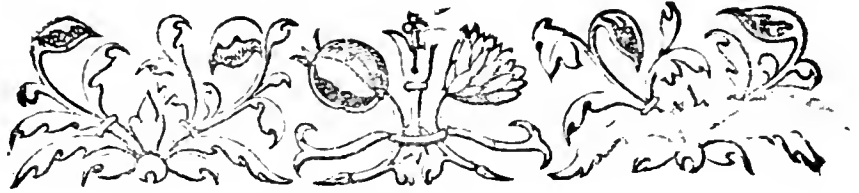
us suddenly, I entreated our new friend to precede us, and prepare her. He consented; but, as he was coming on board, he was stopped by one of the savages named Parabery. Mr. Willis then advised us to await the coming of the king. I selected some presents for him, when I saw our canoe ascending the strait; it was decorated with green branches, which the savages, who formed the king's guard, held in their hand; and the chief, wearing a red and yellow handkerchief, which had belonged to my wife, was seated at the stern, and a flaxen-haired boy near him. With what delight did I recognize my child. He was naked above the waist, and wore a tunic of leaves, a necklace and bracelets of shells; and a variety of colored feathers mingled with his bright curls.

“Have no fear,” said the missionary; “I promise you they shall restore him and his mother. Place yourselves at my side, with these branches of mimosa in your hands.”

The savage array advanced, the king and my youngest son each borne on the shoulder of two stalwart men. Francis soon recog-



nized us, and we could not restrain our feeling. Our first questions were for my wife and Jack. Francis, apparently under no fear, gave reassuring answers. The missionary now appealed to the king in our behalf, and such was his command over the tribe, that the king consented to restore my wife and sons. He wished, however, to enjoy a sail in our pinnace. This delayed somewhat the meeting we all desired so earnestly. A short sail brought us to the village, where all ran out to admire our little vessel. After making some presents to the king, his wives and daughters we sailed back, and, guided by the good missionary, soon reached the spot where the white captives were. A lady, about twenty-seven years of age, dressed in a palm-leaf robe, came forth to welcome us. My wife, overcome with joy and gratitude, had well nigh fainted, but Fritz and Ernest, after embracing and restoring her, hastened to poor Jack, who had, as we now perceived, a charming girl of twelve, as his nurse. A few words made us acquainted with the family, so strangely met amid savages. Madame Hirtel and her daughters



Sophia, aged twelve, and Matilda, two years younger, were, like ourselves, the victims of a wreck. As it was resolved that they should return with us to our island-home to enjoy the comforts we had procured, our preparations were rapidly made, and Parabéry offered to be our guide, the real distance being much less than our circuitous course led us to suppose.

We were to set sail the next morning; and that evening I learned the sad story of Madame Hirtel.

“My life,” she began, “passed without any remarkable events, till the misfortune occurred which brought me to this island. I was married, when very young, to M. Hirtel, a merchant at Hamburg, an excellent man, whose loss I have deeply felt. I was very happy in this union, arranged by my parents, and sanctioned by reason. We had three children, a son and two daughters, in the first three years of our marriage; and M. Hirtel, seeing his family increase so rapidly, wished to increase his income. An advantageous establishment was offered him in the Canary Islands; he accepted it, and



prevailed on me to settle there, with my family, for some years. My parents were dead: I had no tie to detain me in Europe. I was going to see new regions, those fortunate isles I had heard so much of, and I set out joyfully with my husband and children, little foreseeing the misfortunes before me.


“Our voyage was favorable; the children, like myself, were delighted with the novelties of it. I was then twenty-three years old; Sophia, seven; Matilda, six; and Alfred, our pretty, gentle boy, not yet five. Poor child; he was the darling and the plaything of all the crew.”

She wept bitterly for a few moments, and then resumed her narration.

“He was as fair as your own Francis, and greatly resembled him. We proceeded first to Bordeaux, where my husband had a correspondent, with whom he had large dealings; by his means my husband was enabled to raise large sums for his new undertaking. We carried with us, in fact, nearly his whole fortune. We re-embarked under the most favorable auspices—the weather delightful, and the wind fair; but we very soon had a



change; we were met by a terrible storm and hurricane, such as the sailors had never witnessed. For a week our ship was tossed about by contrary winds, driven into unknown seas, lost all its riggings, and was at last so broken, that the water poured in on all sides. All was lost, apparently; but, in this extremity, my husband made a last attempt to save us. He tied my daughters and myself firmly to a plank, taking the charge of my boy himself, as he feared the additional weight would be too much for our raft. His intention was to tie himself to another plank, to fasten this to ours, and, taking his son in his arms, to give us a chance of being carried to the shore, which did not appear far off. Whilst he was occupied in placing us, he gave Alfred to the care of a sailor who was particularly attached to him. I heard the man say, 'Leave him with me, I will take care to save him.' On this, M. Hirtel insisted on his restoring him, and I cried out that he should be given to me. At that moment the ship, which was already fallen on its side, filled rapidly with water, plunged, and disappeared with all on board.



The plank on which I and my daughters were fixed alone floated, and I saw nothing but death and desolation round me.”

Madame Hirtel paused, almost suffocated by the remembrance of that awful moment.

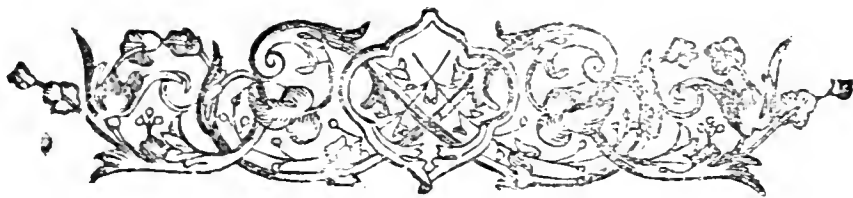
“Poor woman!” said my wife, weeping, “it is five years since this misfortune. It was at the same time as our shipwreck, and was doubtless caused by the same storm. But how much more fortunate was I! I lost none that were dear to me, and we even had the vessel left for our use. But, my dear unfortunate friend, by what miracle were you saved?”

“It was He who only can work miracles,” said the missionary, “who cares for the widow and the orphan, and without whose word not a hair of the head can perish, who at that moment gave courage to the Christian mother.”

“My strength,” continued she, “was nearly exhausted, when, after being tossed about by the furious waves, I found myself thrown upon what I supposed to be a sand-bank with my two children. I envied the state of my husband and son. If I had not



been a mother, I should have wished to have followed them; but my two girls lay senseless at my side, and I was anxious, as I perceived they still breathed, to recover them. At the moment M. Hirtel pushed the raft into the water, he threw upon it a box bound with iron, which I grasped mechanically, and still held, when we were left on shore. It was not locked, yet it was with some difficulty, in my confined position, that I succeeded in opening it. It contained a quantity of gold and bank-notes, which I looked upon with contempt and regret. But there was something useful in the box. In the morocco portfolio which contained the bank-notes, there were the usual little instruments—a knife, scissors, pencils, stiletto, and also a small bottle of Eau de Cologne, which was particularly serviceable in restoring my children. I began by cutting the cords that tied us. I then rubbed my dear children with the Eau de Cologne, made them inhale it, and even swallow a little. The wind was still blowing, but the clouds began to break, and the sun appeared, which dried and warmed us. My poor children



opened their eyes, and knew me, and I felt I was not utterly comfortless; but their first words were to ask for their father and brother. I could not tell them they were no more. I tried to deceive myself, to support my strength, by a feeble and delusive hope. M. Hirtel swam well, the sailor still better; and the last words I had heard still rung in my ears—‘Do not be uneasy, I will save the child.’ If I saw any thing floating at a distance, my heart began to beat, and I ran towards the water; but I saw it was only wreck, which I could not even reach. Some pieces were, however, thrown on shore, and with these and our own raft I was enabled to make a sort of shelter, by resting them against a rock. My poor children, by crouching under this, sheltered themselves from the rain, or from the rays of the sun. I had the good fortune to preserve a large beaver hat, which I wore at the time, and this protected me: but these resources gave me little consolation; my children were complaining of hunger, and I felt only how much we were in want of. I had seen a shell-fish on the shore, resembling the oyster



or muscle. I collected some, and, opening them with my knife, we made a repast on them, which sufficed for the first day. Night came—my children offered up their evening prayer, and I earnestly besought the succor of the Almighty. I then lay down beside my babes on our raft, as conveniently as we could, and they soon slept. The fearful thoughts of the past, and dreadful anticipations of the future, prevented me from sleeping. My situation was indeed melancholy; but I felt, as a mother, I ought not to wish for death.

“As soon as day broke, I went close to the shore, to seek some shell-fish for our breakfast. In crossing the sand, I nearly plunged my foot into a hole, and fancied I heard a crash. I stooped, and putting my hand into the opening, found it was full of eggs; I had broken two or three, which I tasted, and thought very good. From the color, form, and taste, I knew them to be turtles’ eggs; there were at least sixty, so I had no more care about food. I carried away in my apron as many as I could preserve from the rays of the sun: this I en-



deavored to effect by burying them in the sand, and covering them with one end of our plank, and succeeded very well. Besides these, there were as many to be found on the shore as we required; I have sometimes found as many as ninety together. These were our sole support while we remained there; my children liked them very much. I forgot to add, that I was fortunate enough to discover a stream of fresh water, running into the sea; it was the same which runs past this house, and which conducted me here. The first day we suffered greatly from thirst, but on the second we met with the stream which saved us. I will not tire you by relating day by day our sad life; every one was the same, and took away by degrees every hope from me. As long as I dared to indulge any, I could not bear to leave the shore; but at last it became unsupportable to me. I was worn out with gazing continually on that boundless horizon, and that moving crystal which had swallowed up my hopes. I pined for the verdure and shade of trees. Although I had contrived to make for my daughters little



hats of a marine rush, they suffered much from the extreme heat,—the burning rays of a tropical sun. I decided at last to abandon that sandy shore ; to penetrate, at all risks, into the country, in order to seek a shady and cooler abode, and to escape from the view of that sea which was so painful to me. I resolved not to quit the stream which was so precious to us, for, not having any vessel to contain water, I could not carry it with us. Sophia, who is naturally quick, formed, from a large leaf, a sort of goblet, which served us to drink from ; and I filled my pockets with turtles' eggs, as provision for a few days. I then set off with my two children, after praying the God of all mercy to watch over us ; and, taking leave of the vast tomb which held my husband and my son, I never lost sight of the stream ; if any obstacle obliged me to turn a little way from it, I soon recovered my path. My eldest daughter, who was very strong and robust, followed me stoutly, as I took care not to walk too far without resting ; but I was often compelled to carry my little Matilda on my shoulders. Both were delighted with the



shade of the woods, and were so amused with the delightful birds that inhabited them, and a pretty little sportive green monkey, that they became as playful as ever. They sang and prattled; but often asked me if papa and Alfred would not soon return to see these pretty creatures, and if we were going to seek them. These words rent my heart, and I thought it best then to tell them they would meet no more on earth, and that they were both gone to heaven, to that good God to whom they prayed morning and evening. Sophia was very thoughtful, and the tears ran down her cheeks: 'I will pray to God more than ever,' said she, 'that he may make them happy, and send them back to us.' 'Mamma,' said Matilda, 'have we left the sea to go to heaven? Shall we soon be there? And shall we see beautiful birds like these?' We walked on very slowly, making frequent rests, till night drew on, and it was necessary to find a place for repose. I fixed on a sort of thick grove, which I could only enter by stooping; it was formed of one tree, whose branches, reaching the ground, take root there, and soon



produce other stems, which follow the same course, and become, in time, an almost impenetrable thicket. Here I found a place for us to lie down, which appeared sheltered from wild beasts or savages, whom I equally dreaded. We had still some eggs, which we ate; but I saw with fear that the time approached when we must have more food, which I knew not where to find. I saw, indeed, some fruits on the trees, but I did not know them, and feared to give them to my children, who wished to have them. I saw also cocoa-nuts, but quite out of my reach; and even if I could have got them, I did not know how to open them. The tree under whose branches we had found protection was, I conjectured, an American fig-tree; it bore a quantity of fruit, very small and red, and like the European fig. I ventured to taste them, and found them inferior to ours,—insipid and soft,—but, I thought, quite harmless. I remarked that the little green monkeys ate them greedily, so I had no more fear, and allowed my children to regale themselves. I was much more afraid of wild beasts during the night; however, I

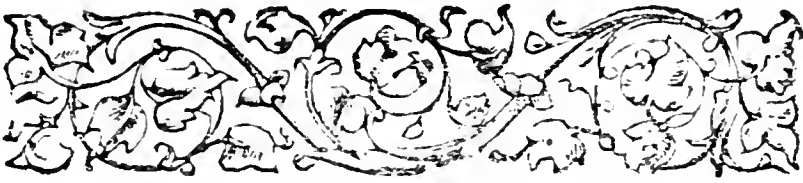


had seen nothing worse than some little quadrupeds resembling the rabbit or squirrel, which came in numbers to shelter themselves during the night under our tree. The children wished to catch one, but I could not undertake to increase my charge. We had a quiet night, and were early awaked by the songs of the birds. How delighted I was to have escaped the noise of the waves, and to feel the freshness of the woods, and the perfume of the flowers, with which my children made garlands, to decorate my head and their own! These ornaments, during this time of mourning and bereavement, affected me painfully, and I was weak enough to forbid them this innocent pleasure; I tore away my garland, and threw it into the rivulet. ‘Gather flowers,’ said I, ‘but do not dress yourselves in them; they are no fitting ornaments for us; your father and Alfred cannot see them.’ They were silent and sad, and threw their garlands into the water, as I had done.

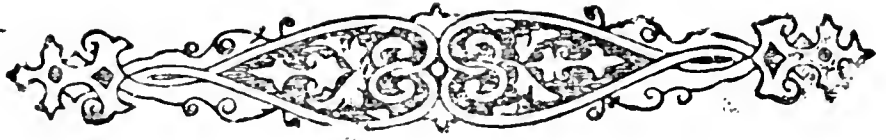
“We followed the stream, and passed two more nights under the trees. We had the good fortune to find more figs; but they did



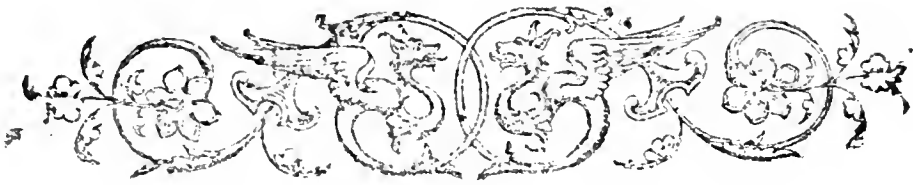
not satisfy us, and our eggs were exhausted. In my distress I almost decided to return to the shore, where we might at least meet with that nourishment. As I sat by the stream, reflecting mournfully on our situation, the children, who had been throwing stones into the water, cried out, 'Look, mamma, what pretty fishes!' I saw, indeed, a quantity of small salmon-trout in the river; but how could I take them? I tried to seize them with my hands, but could not catch them; necessity, however, is the mother of invention. I cut a number of branches with my knife, and wove them together to make a kind of light hurdle, the breadth of the stream, which was very narrow just here. I made two of these; my daughters assisted me, and were soon very skilful. We then undressed ourselves, and took a bath, which refreshed us much. I placed one of my hurdles upright across the rivulet, and the second a little lower. The fishes who remained between attempted to pass, but the hurdles were woven too close. We watched for them attempting the other passage; many escaped us, but we captured sufficient



for our dinner. We threw them out upon the grass, at a distance from the stream, so that they could not leap back. My daughters had taken more than I; but the sensible Sophia threw back those we did not require, to give them pleasure, she said, and Matilda did the same, to see them leap. We then removed our hurdles, dressed ourselves, and I began to consider how I should cook my fish; for I had no fire, and had never kindled one myself. However, I had often seen M. Hirtel, who was a smoker, light his pipe by means of the flint and steel; they were in the precious morocco case, together with tinder and matches. I tried to strike a light, and after some difficulty succeeded. I collected the fragments of the branches used for the hurdles, the children gathered some dry leaves, and I had soon a bright, lively fire, which I was delighted to see, notwithstanding the heat of the climate. I scraped the scales from the fish with my knife, washed them in the rivulet, and then placed them on the fire to broil; this was my apprenticeship in the art of cookery. I thought how useful it would be to give

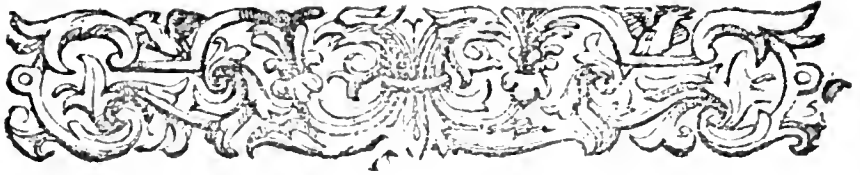


young ladies some knowledge of the useful arts; for who can foresee what they may need? Our European dinner delighted us as much as the bath and the fishing which had preceded it. I decided to fix our residence at the side of the rivulet, and beneath the fig-trees; my only objection being the fear of missing some passing vessel which might carry us back to Europe. But can you understand my feelings, when I confess to you that, although overcome by sorrow and desolation, having lost husband, son, and fortune, knowing that in order to support myself and bring up my children I must depend upon my friends, and to attain this having to hazard again the dangers of the sea, the very thought of which made me shudder, I should prefer to remain where Providence had brought me, and live calmly without obligation to any one? I might certainly have some difficulty in procuring the means of supporting a life which was dear to me for the sake of my children; but even this was an employment and an amusement. My children would early learn to bear privations, to content themselves with a simple and fru-



gal life, and to labor for their own support. I might teach them all that I knew would be useful to them in future, and above all, impress upon their young minds the great truths of our holy religion. By bringing this constantly before their unsophisticated understanding, I might hope they would draw from it the necessary virtues of resignation and contentment. I was only twenty-three years of age, and might hope, by God's mercy, to be spared to them some time, and in the course of years who knew what might happen? Besides, we were not so far from the sea but that I might visit it sometimes, if it were only to seek for turtles' eggs. I remained then under our fig-tree at night, and by day on the borders of the stream.

“After these reflections on my situation, I determined only to return to the seashore when our food failed us in the woods; but I acquired other means of procuring it. Encouraged by the success of my fishing, I made a sort of net from the filaments of the bark of a tree and a plant resembling hemp. With these I succeeded in catching some birds: one resembling our thrush, was very



fat, and of delicious flavor. I had the greatest difficulty in overcoming my repugnance to taking away their life; nothing but the obligation of preserving our own could have reconciled me to it. My children plucked them: I then spitted them on a slender branch and roasted them before the fire. I also found some nests of eggs, which I concluded were those of the wild ducks which frequented our stream. I made myself acquainted with all the fruits which the monkeys and parroquets eat, and which were not out of my reach. I found a sort of acorn which had the flavor of a nut. The children also discovered plenty of large strawberries, a delicious repast; and I found a quantity of honeycomb in the hollow of a tree, which I obtained by stupefying the bees with a smoking brand.

“I took care to mark down every day on the blank leaves of my pocket-book. I had now marked thirty days of my wandering life on the border of the river, for I never strayed beyond the sound of its waters. Still I kept continually advancing towards the interior of the island. I had yet met



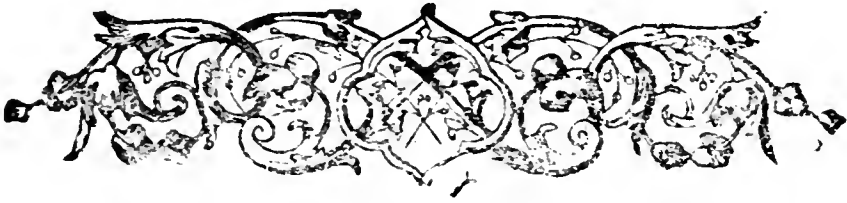
with nothing alarming, and the weather had been most favorable; but we were not long to enjoy this comfort. The rainy season came on: and one night, to my great distress, I heard it descend in torrents. We were no longer under our fig-tree, which would have sheltered us for a considerable time. The tree under which we now were had tempted me by having several cavities between the roots, filled with soft moss, which formed natural couches; but the foliage was very thin, and we were soon drenched completely. I crept near my poor children to protect them a little, but in vain; our little bed was soon filled with water, and we were compelled to leave it. Our clothes were so heavy with the rain that we could scarcely stand; and the night was so dark that we could see no road, and ran the risk of falling, or striking against some tree, if we moved. My children wept, and I trembled for their health, and for my own, which was so necessary to them. This was one of the most terrible nights of my pilgrimage. My children and I knelt down, and I prayed to our Heavenly Father for



strength to bear this trial, if it was his will to continue it. I felt consolation and strength from my prayers, and rose with courage and confidence; and though the rain continued unabated, I waited with resignation the pleasure of the Almighty. I reconciled my children to our situation; and Sophia told me she had asked her father, who was near the gracious God, to entreat Him to send no more rain, but let the sun come back. I assured them God would not forget them: they began to be accustomed to the rain, only Sophia begged they might take off their clothes, and then it would be like a bath in the brook. I consented to this, thinking they would be less liable to suffer than by wearing their wet garments.

“The day began to break, and I determined to walk on without stopping, in order to warm ourselves by the motion; and to try to find some cave, some hollow tree, or some tree with thick foliage, to shelter us the next night.

“I undressed the children, and made a bundle of their clothes, which I would have carried myself, but I found they would not



be too heavy for them, and I judged it best to accustom them early to the difficulties, fatigue, and labor which would be their lot, and to attend entirely on themselves. I, therefore, divided the clothes into two unequal bundles, proportioned to their strength, and having made a knot in each, I passed a slender branch through it, and showed them how to carry it on their shoulders.

“When I saw them walking before me in this savage fashion, with their little white bodies exposed to the storm, I could not refrain from tears. I blamed myself for condemning them to such an existence, and thought of returning to the shore, where some vessel might rescue us; but we were now too far off to set about it. I continued to proceed with much more difficulty than my children, who had nothing on but their shoes and large hats. I carried the valuable box, in which I had placed the remains of last night’s supper, an act of necessary prudence, as there was neither fishing nor hunting now.

“As the day advanced, the rain diminished, and even the sun appeared above the horizon.



“As soon as the sun had dried their dresses, we continued our walk, till we arrived at the grove before this rock. As I removed the branches to pass, I saw the entrance to this grotto. I was going to enter, when I was arrested by a plaintive cry, more like that of a child than a wild beast; I advanced with more caution, to find out what inhabitant the cave contained. It was an infant, too young to walk, tied up in leaves and moss, inclosed in a piece of bark, which was much torn and rent. The poor infant uttered the most piteous cries, and I did not hesitate a moment to enter the cave, and to take the innocent little creature in my arms; it ceased its cries as soon as it felt the warmth of my cheek; but it was evidently in want of food, and I had nothing to give it but some figs, of which I pressed the juice into its mouth; this seemed to satisfy it, and, rocking it in my arms, it soon went to sleep. I had then time to look round the cave. My two girls were charmed with it, and caressed it with great joy. I left them to rock it gently in its cradle of bark, till I went round this cave, which I



intended for my palace, and which I have never quitted.

“In a hollow I found, with surprise, a sort of bed, carefully arranged with moss, dry leaves, and small twigs. I was alarmed. Was this grotto inhabited by men or by wild beasts? In either case, it was dangerous to remain here. I encouraged a hope, however, that, from the infant being here, the mother must be the inhabitant, and that, on her return, finding me nursing her child, she might be induced to share her asylum with us.

“As I was considering whether I ought to remain, or leave the cave, I heard strange cries at a distance; stepping cautiously, I ventured to look out to discover what was passing, without being seen. The noise approached nearer, to my great alarm, and I could perceive, through the trees, a crowd of men armed with long pointed lances, clubs, and stones; they appeared furious, and the idea that they might enter the cave froze me with terror. I had an idea of taking the babe, and holding it in my arms, as my best shield; but this time my fears were groundless. The whole troop passed outside the



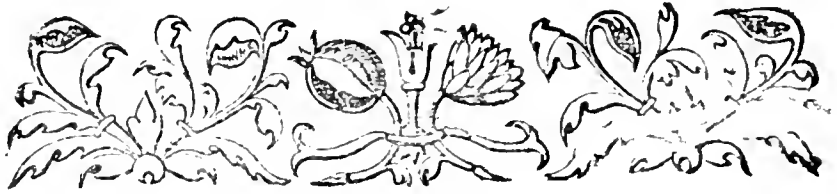
wood, without even looking on the same side as the grotto ; they appeared to follow some traces they were looking out for on the ground. I heard their shouts for some time, but they died away, and I recovered from my fears. Still, the dread of meeting them overcame even hunger. I had nothing left in my box but some figs, which I kept for the infant, who was satisfied with them, and I told my daughters we must go to bed without supper.

“ In the mean while I ran back to the cave, and found Sophia and Matilda very much delighted at a treasure they had found under the dry leaves in a corner. This was a great quantity of fruits of various kinds, roots of some unknown plant, and a good supply of beautiful honey, on which the little gluttons were already feasting. They came directly to give some on their fingers to their little doll, as they called the babe. This discovery made me very thoughtful. Was it possible that we were in a bear’s den ! I had read that they sometimes carried off infants, and that they were very fond of fruits and of honey, of which they generally had a



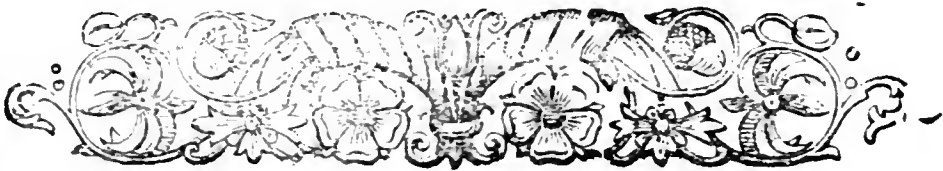
hoard. The animal would certainly return, and we were in the greatest danger; but where could we go? The sky, dark with clouds, threatened a return of the storm; and the troop of savages might still be wandering about the island. I had not courage, just as night set in, to depart with my children; nor could I leave the poor infant, who was now sleeping peacefully. His two nurses soon followed his example; but for me there was no rest. Day broke at last, without any thing terrible occurring. Then my little people awoke, and cried out with hunger. We ate of the fruits and honey, feeding, also, our little charge, to whom my daughters gave the name of *Minou*.

“Soon after I heard the cries of the savages again; but this time they seemed rather shouts of joy and triumph. They passed, as before, beyond the wood, armed, and two of them bore at the end of their lances something very large and dark, which I could not distinguish, but thought might be some wild beast they had destroyed; afterwards, I flattered myself it might be the bear, whose return I so greatly dreaded. Following the



train was a woman, naked, with her hair hanging down, uttering loud cries, and tearing her face and breast.

“That woman, my friends, was Canda, whom you have just seen, rendered frantic by the loss of her child, whom she believed was devoured by the bear. Parabéry, her husband, tried to console her, but was himself in great sorrow. These bears, as I have since learnt, for there were two of them, had come from a mountain, at the foot of which was Parabéry’s hut. They had only this son, and Canda, according to the custom of the country, tying it in a piece of bark, carried it on her back. One morning, after having bathed him in the stream, which has its source near their abode, she placed him on the turf a few moments, while she was employed in some household duties. She soon heard his cries, mingled with a sort of growl ; she ran to the spot, and saw a frightful beast holding her child in its mouth, and running off with it. It was then more than twenty yards off ; her cries brought her husband ; she pointed to the horrible animal and darted after it, determined to save her



child or perish. Parabéry, not less afflicted, but more composed, went to relate his misfortune to his neighbors, who, arming themselves, set out, with Parabéry at their head, following the track of the animal over the wet ground. They discovered it next morning with another bear, so busy devouring a swarm of bees and their honey, that Parabéry pierced one with his spear, and dispatched him with a blow of his club; one of his comrades killed the other, and Parabéry tasted the truly savage joy of vengeance. But the poor mother could not be so comforted. After wandering through the rain all night, she reached the party as they were skinning the bear and dividing the flesh. Parabéry only asked and obtained the skins, to recompense him for the loss of his son. They returned home in triumph, Canda following them with bitter cries, tearing her face with a shark's tooth. I had concluded that Canda must be the mother of my little *protégé*; and I even made some steps forward to restore him; but the sight of the savage crowd, with their tattooed bodies, filled me with such terror, that I retreated involuntarily to the



grotto, where my children, alarmed by the noise, were hiding.

“In an hour I heard cries again ; but this time I was not alarmed, for I distinguished the voice of the disconsolate mother, and I knew that I could comfort her. She advanced slowly, sobbing, and her eyes turned to the ground. She was so absorbed in her search, that she did not see us when we were but twenty yards from her. Suddenly, Sophia darted like an arrow to her, took her hand, and said, ‘Come, Minou is here.’

“Canda neither knew what she saw nor what she heard ; she took my daughter for something supernatural, and made no resistance, but followed her to the fig-tree. Even then she did not recognize the little creature, released from his bonds, half-clothed, covered with flowers, and surrounded by three divinities, for she took us for such, and wished to prostrate herself before us. She was still more convinced of it when I took up her son, and placed him in her arms ; she recognized him, and the poor little infant held out his arms to her. I can never express to you the transport of the mother ; she screamed,



clasped her child till he was half suffocated, rapidly repeating words which we could not understand, wept, laughed, and was in a delirium of delight that terrified Minou. He began to cry, and held out his arms to Sophia, who, as well as Matilda, was weeping at the sight. Canda looked at them with astonishment; she soothed the child, and put him to her breast, which he rejected at first, but finally seized it, and his mother was happy. I took the opportunity to try and make her comprehend that the great animal had brought him here; that we had found him, and taken care of him; and I made signs for her to follow me, which she did without hesitation, till we reached the grotto, when, without entering, she fled away with her infant with such rapidity, that it was impossible to overtake her, and was soon out of sight.

“I had some difficulty in consoling my daughters for the loss of Minou; they thought they should see him no more, and that his mother was very ungrateful to carry him off, without even letting them take leave of him. They were still weeping and



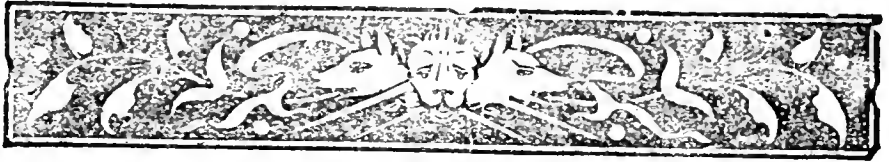
complaining, when we saw the objects of our anxiety approaching; but Canda was now accompanied by a man, who was carrying the child. They entered the grotto, and prostrated themselves before us. You know Parabéry; his countenance pleased and tranquillized us. As a relation of the king, he was distinguished by wearing a short tunic of leaves; his body was tattooed and stained with various colors; but not his face, which expressed kindness and gratitude, united with great intelligence. He comprehended most of my signs.

“After some words with Canda, she placed Minou-Minou in Sophia’s arms, and they both departed, making signs that they would return; but we did not see them for some time after. Sophia and Matilda had their full enjoyment of their favorite; they wished to teach him to walk and to speak, and they assured me he was making great progress. They were beginning to hope his parents had left him entirely, when they came in sight, Parabéry with two bear-skins, and a beautiful piece of matting to close the entrance to my grotto; Canda carried a bas



ket on her head filled with fine fruit ; the cocoa, the bread-fruit, pine-apples, figs, and, finally, a piece of bear's flesh, roasted at the fire ; but I enjoyed the fruits and the milk of the cocoa-nut, of which Minou had a good share. They spread the bear-skins in the midst of the grotto ; Parabéry, Canda, and the infant between them, took possession of one without ceremony, and motioned to us to make our bed of the other.

“From this moment we became one family. Canda remained with us, and repaid my daughters all the care and affection they bestowed on Minou. Parabéry was very little with us, but he undertook to be our purveyor, and furnished us abundantly with every thing necessary for our subsistence. Canda taught my daughter to make beautiful baskets,—some of a flat form, served for our plates and dishes. Parabéry made us knives from sharp stones. My daughters, in return, taught Canda to sew. At the time of our shipwreck we had, each of us, in her pocket, a morocco housewife, with a store of needles and thread. By means of these we had mended our linen, and we now



made dresses of palm-leaves. The bear-skins have been very useful to us in the cold and rainy season. We now spoke each other's language well enough to converse. She told me that a *black friend* had arrived in a neighboring island, to announce to them that there was a Being, almighty and all-merciful, who lived in Heaven, and heard all they said. Her comprehension of this truth was very confused, and I endeavored to make it more clear and positive.

“You left me little to do,” said Mr. Willis. “Parabéry came to hunt seals in the island where I was, and I was struck by his appearance. What was my astonishment to find, that when I spoke to him of the one true God, he was no stranger to the subject. He had even some ideas of a Saviour, and of future rewards and punishments.

“‘It was the white lady,’ said he, ‘who taught me this; she teaches Canda and Minou-Minou, whose life she saved, and whom she is bringing up to be good like herself.’

“I had a great desire,” continued Mr. Willis, “to become acquainted with my



powerful assistant in the great work of my mission. I told Parabéry this, who offered to bring me here in his canoe; I came and found, in a miserable cave, or rather in a bear's den, all the virtues of mature age united to the charms of youth; a resigned and pious mother, bringing up her children, as women should be brought up, in simplicity, forbearance, and love of industry.

“Parabéry soon built me a hut in the neighborhood of the grotto. I have by degrees formed my establishment, dividing with my worthy neighbor the few useful articles I brought from Europe, and we live a tranquil happy life.

“And now comes the time that brought about our meeting. Some of our islanders, in a fishing expedition, were driven by the wind on your island. At the entrance of a large bay, they found a small canoe of bark, which they brought away. I recognized at once that it was made by Europeans, and made particular inquiries; and all their answers confirmed my idea that it must be inhabited by a European, from whom they had perhaps taken his only means of leaving it.



“I tried to persuade them to return and discover if the island was inhabited. They set out, and you know the result of their expedition. I leave it to your wife to tell you how she was brought away, and pass on to the time of their arrival. My people brought them to me in triumph, and were vexed that they had only found one woman and a child, whom I might give to the white lady. This I did promptly. Your wife was ill and distressed, and I carried her immediately to the grotto.”

“My story,” said my wife, “will not be long. I might make it in two words,—*you have lost me, and you have found me.* I have every reason to thank Heaven for a circumstance, which has proved to me how dear I am to you, and has given me the happiness of gaining a friend and two dear daughters.

“When you and our three sons left, to make the tour of the island, I was very comfortable; and when the evening passed away without seeing you, I was not uneasy. Francis was constantly with me; we went together to water the garden, and rested in the



Grotto Ernestine; then I returned to the house, and took my wheel. Francis, seeing me at work, asked if he might go as far as the bridge to meet you; to which I readily consented. In a moment he ran back, crying out, ‘Mamma! mamma! there is a canoe full of savages.’

“‘Silly little fellow!’ said I, ‘it is your father and brothers. Now go and meet them on the shore: give me your arm, and I will go too;’ and we set off very joyfully. But, instead of my dear ones, there were six half-naked savages, with terrible countenances, who landed and surrounded us. I fell on the shore, nearly insensible; Francis clung to me, and held me with all his strength; at last my senses quite failed me, and I only recovered to find myself lying at the bottom of the canoe.”

Francis then continued, “We had a favorable passage—the sea was calm, and the boat went so smoothly, that both mamma and I went to sleep. You must have come a much longer round than necessary, papa, as your voyage lasted three days, and we arrived here the day after our departure.



Mamma was then awake, and wept constantly, believing she should never more see you or my brothers.

“At last we landed. They carried mamma, who was too weak to walk. About a hundred yards from the shore, we saw a large building of wood and reeds, before which there was a crowd of savages. One who was very tall came to receive us. He was dressed in a short tunic, much ornamented, and wore a necklace of pierced shells. He was a little disfigured by a white bone passed through his nostrils. But you saw him, papa, when he wanted to adopt me; it was Bara-ourou, the king of the island. I was presented to him, and he was pleased with me, touched the end of my nose with his, and admired my hair very much. He looked at mamma, who was seated in a corner, near her protector Parabéry. He called the latter, who obliged mamma to rise, and presented her to the king. Bara-ourou looked only at the red and yellow India handkerchief which she wore on her head; he took it off very unceremoniously, and put it on his own head,



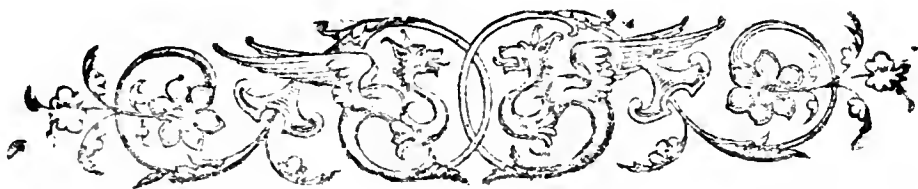
saying, *miti*, which means beautiful. He then made us re-embark in the canoe with him. After turning round a point which seemed to divide the island into two, we landed on a sandy beach. Parabéry and another savage proceeded into the interior, carrying my mother, and we followed. We arrived at a hut similar to the king's, but not so large. There we were received by Mr. Willis, whom we judged to be the *black friend*, and from that time we had no fears. He took us under his protection, first speaking to the king and to Parabéry in their own language. He knew nothing of you and my brothers; but, from what mamma told him, he promised to have you sought for, and brought as soon as possible to the island. In the mean time, he offered to lead us to a friend who would take care of us, and nurse poor mamma, who looked very ill. She was obliged to be carried to the grotto; but, after that, her cares were over, and her pleasure without alloy; for the *black friend* had promised to seek you. The *white lady* received us like old friends, and Sophia and Matilda took me at first for their own



brother, and still love me as if I was. We only wished for you all.”

“Now, my dear Jack,” said I, “it is your turn to relate your history.”

“When poor Fritz saw that I was wounded, he fell down as if he had been shot at the same time. The savages, thinking he was dead, took away his gun, and carried me into the canoe. I was in despair more for the death of my brother than from my wound, which I almost forgot, and was wishing they would throw me into the sea, when I saw Fritz running at full speed to the shore; but we pushed off, and I could only call out some words of consolation. The savages were very kind to me, and one of them held me up seated on the outrigger; they washed my wound with sea-water, sucked it, tore my pocket-handkerchief to make a bandage, and as soon as we landed, squeezed the juice of some herb into it. We sailed very quickly, and passed the place where we had landed in the morning. I knew it again, and could see Ernest standing on a sandbank; he was watching us, and I held out my arms to him. I thought I also



saw you, papa, and heard you call; but the savages yelled, and though I cried with all my strength, it was in vain. I little thought they were taking me to mamma. As soon as we had disembarked, they brought me to this grotto; and I thought I must have died of surprise and joy when I was met by mamma and Francis, and then by Sophia, Matilda, Mamma Emily, and Mr. Willis, who is a second father to me. This is the end of my story.”

The next day we embarked again, taking leave of the king. We were fourteen in number; sixteen, reckoning the two dogs. The missionary accompanied us, and a young islander, whom Parabéry had procured. Emily could not but feel deeply affected at leaving the grotto, where she had passed four tranquil, if not happy years. My wife promised her a far more beautiful grotto than the one she had left, and at last she became more reconciled.

After seven or eight hours' voyage, we arrived at Cape Disappointment, and we agreed the bay should henceforth be called the Bay of the Happy Return.



The distance to Tent-House from hence was much too great for the ladies and children to go on foot. My intention was to take them by water to the other end of the island, near our house; but my elder sons had begged to be landed at the bay, to seek their live-stock, and take them home. I left them there with Parabéry; Jack recommended his buffalo to them, and Francis his bull, and all were found. We coasted the island, arrived at Safety Bay, and were soon at Tent-House, where we found all, as we had left it, in good condition.

Notwithstanding the description my wife had given them, our new guests found our establishment far beyond their expectation. With what delight Jack and Francis ran up and down the colonnade with their young friends! What stories had they not to tell of all the surprises they had prepared for their mother! They showed them *Fritzia*, *Jackia*, and *Franciade*, and gave their friends water from their beautiful fountain. Absence seemed to have improved every thing; and I must confess I had some difficulty to refrain from demonstrating my joy as wildly as my



children. Minou-Minou and his parent, Parabéry, and Canda, were lost in admiration, My wife was busied in arranging a temporary lodging for our guests. The work-room was given up to Mr. Willis; my wife and Madame Emily had our apartment, the two little girls being with them, to whom the hammocks of the elder boys were appropriated. Canda was wonderfully comfortable on the carpet. Fritz, Ernest, and the two natives stowed themselves wherever they wished, in the colonnade or in the kitchen; all was alike to them. I slept in Mr. Willis's room, with my two young sons.



CONCLUSION.

I MUST conclude my journal here. We can scarcely be more happy than we are, and I feel no cares about my children. Fritz is so fond of the chase and of mechanics, and Ernest of study, that they will not wish to marry; but I please myself by hoping at some time to see my dear Jack and Francis happily united to Sophia and Matilda. What remains for me to tell? The details of happiness, however sweet in enjoyment, are often tedious in recital.

I will only add, that after passing a few days with us, Mr. Willis returned to his charge, promising to visit us, and eventually to join us. The Grotto Ernestine, fitted up by Fritz and Parabéry, made a pretty abode for Madame Hirtel and her daughters, and the two islanders. Minou-minou did not leave his young mammas, and was very useful to them. I must state also, that my son Ernest, without abandoning the study of natural history, applied himself to astronomy, and mounted the large telescope belonging



to the ship; he acquired considerable knowledge of this sublime science, which his mother, however, considered somewhat useless. The course of the other planets did not interest her, so long as all went on well in that which she inhabited; and nothing now was wanting to her happiness, surrounded as she was by friends.

The following year we had a visit from a Russian vessel, the *Neva*, commanded by Captain Krusenstern, a countryman and distant relation of mine. The celebrated Horner, of Zurich, accompanied him as an astronomer. Having read the first of our journal, sent into Europe by Captain Johnson, he had come purposely to see us. Delighted with our establishment, he did not advise us to quit it. Captain Krusenstern invited us to take a passage in his vessel; we declined his offer; but my wife, though she renounced her country forever, was glad of the opportunity of making inquiries about her relations and friends. As she had concluded, her good mother had died some years before, blessing her absent children. My wife shed some tears, but was consoled by the



certainty of her mother's eternal felicity, and the hope of their meeting in futurity.

One of her brothers was also dead; he had left a daughter, to whom my wife had always been attached, though she was very young when we left. Henrieta Bodmer was now sixteen, and Mr. Horner assured us, a most amiable girl. My wife wished much to have her with us.

Ernest would not leave Mr. Horner a moment, he was so delighted to meet with one so eminently skilful in his favorite science. Astronomy made them such friends, that Mr. Horner petitioned me to allow him to take my son to Europe, promising to bring him back himself in a few years. This was a great trial to us, but I felt that his taste for science required a larger field than our island. His mother was reluctant to part with him, but consoled herself with a notion, that he might bring his cousin Henrieta back with him.

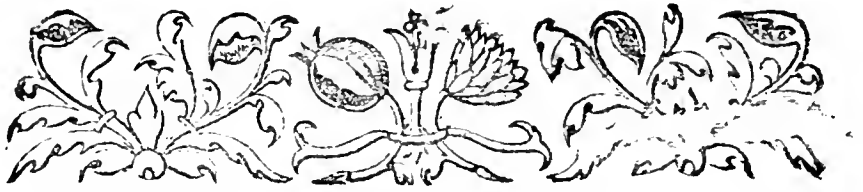
Many tears were shed at our parting; indeed, the grief of his mother was so intense, that my son seemed almost inclined to give up his inclination; but Mr. Horner made



some observations about the transit of Venus, so interesting that Ernest could not resist. He left us, promising to bring us back every thing we wished for. In the mean time Captain Krusenstern left us a good supply of powder, provisions, seeds, and some capital tools, to the great delight of Fritz and Jack. They regretted their brother greatly, but diverted their minds from sorrow by application to mechanics, assisted by the intelligent Parabéry. They have already succeeded in constructing, near the cascade, a corn-mill and a saw-mill, and have built a very good oven.

We miss Ernest very much; though his taste for study withdrew him a good deal from us, and he was not so useful as his brothers, we found his calm and considerate advice often of value, and his mildness always spread a charm over our circle, in joy or in trouble.

Except this little affliction, we are very happy. Our labors are divided regularly. Fritz and Jack manage the board of works. They have opened a passage through the rock which divided us from the other side of the island; thus doubling our domain and



riches. At the same time, they formed a dwelling for Madame Hirtel near our own, from the same excavation in the rock. Fritz took great pains with it; the windows are made of oiled paper, instead of glass; but we usually assemble in our large work-room, which is very well lighted.

Francis has the charge of our flocks and of the poultry, all greatly increased. For me, I preside over the grand work of agriculture. The two mothers, their two daughters, and Canda, manage the garden, spin, weave, take care of our clothes, and attend to household matters. Thus we all work, and every thing prospers. Several families of the natives, pupils of Mr Willis, have obtained leave, through him, to join us, and are settled at Falcon's Nest, and at the Farm. These people assist us in the cultivation of our ground, and our dear missionary in the cultivation of our souls. Nothing is wanting to complete our happiness but the return of dear Ernest.



POSTSCRIPT TWO YEARS AFTER.

WE are now as happy as we can desire—our son is returned. According to my wishes, he had made out Captain Johnson and Lieutenant Bell, our first visitors, whom the storm had driven from us, but who were still determined to see us again. My son found them preparing for another voyage to the South Seas. He at once seized the opportunity of accompanying them, impatiently desirous to revisit the island, and to bring us Henrieta Bodmer, now become his wife. She is a simple, amiable Swiss girl, who suits us well, and who is delighted to see, once more, her kind aunt, now become her mother.

My wife is overjoyed; this is her first daughter-in-law, but Jack and Francis, as well as Sophia and Matilda, are growing up; and moreover, my dear wife, who has great ideas of married happiness, hopes to induce Emily to consent to be united to Fritz at the same time as her daughters are married. Fritz would feel all the value of this change; his character is already softened by her so-



ciety, and though she is a few years older than he is, she is blessed with the vivacity of youth. Mr. Willis approves of this union, and we hope he will live to solemnize the three marriages. Ernest and Henrietta inhabit the Grotto Ernestine, which his brothers fitted up as a very tasteful dwelling. They had even, to gratify their brother, raised on the rock above the grotto a sort of observatory, where the telescope is mounted, to enable him to make his astronomical observations. Yet, I perceive his passion for exploring distant planets is less strong, since he has so much to attach him to this.

I give this conclusion of my journal to Captain Johnson, to take into Europe, to be added to the former part. If any of my readers be anxious for further particulars respecting our colony and our mode of life, let him set out for the Happy Island; he will be warmly welcomed, and may join with us in Ernest's chorus, which we now sing with additional pleasure :

All we love around us smile,
Joyful is our Desert Isle.



University of
Connecticut
Libraries

